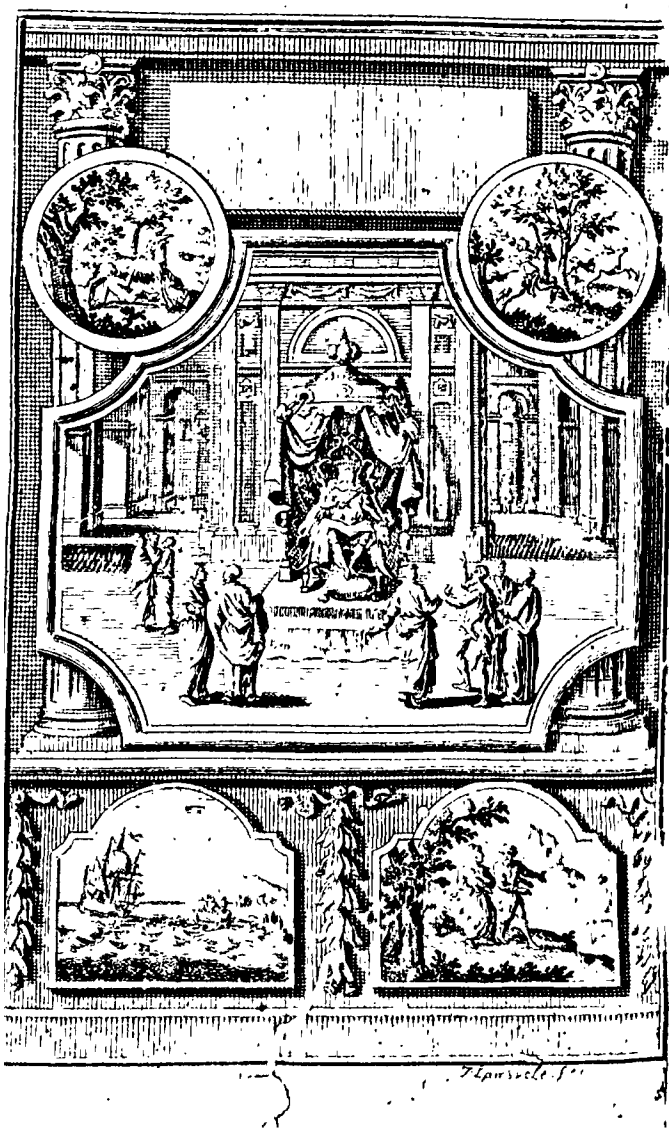
00046260

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY-400 023.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 16 June, 2016



THE HISTORY OF PERSIA.

CONTAINING,

The LIVES and Memorable ACTIONS of its KINGS from the first Erecting of that Monarchy to this Time; an exact Description of all its DOMINIONS; a curious Account of *India*, *China*, *Tartary*, *Kermon*, *Arabia*, *Nixabur*, and the Islands of *Ceylon* and *Timor*; as also of all Cities occasionally mention'd, as *Schiras*, *Samarkand*, *Bokara*, &c. MANNERS and CUSTOMS of those People, *Persian* Worshippers of Fire; Plants, Beasts, Product, and Trade.

WITH

Many instructive and pleasant Digressions, being remarkable Stories or Passages, occasionally occurring, as Strange Burials; Burning of the Dead; Liquors of several Countries; Hunting; Fishing; Practice of Physick; famous Physicians in the *East*; Actions of *Tamerlan*, &c.

To which is Added,

An Abridgment of the LIVES of the KINGS of *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*.

The *Persian* History written in *Arabick*, by *Mirkond*, a famous Eastern Author; that of *Ormuz*, by *Torumxa*, King of that Island, both of them Translated into *Spanish*, by *Antony Teixeira*, who liv'd several Years in *Persia* and *India*; and now render'd into *English*.

By Captain JOHN STEVENS.

LONDON: Printed for *Jonas Brown* at the *Black Swan* without *Temple Bar*. MDCCXV.

HH·cl·11

00900

Y.
915.5
Ste/His
46260

00046260

THE

PREFACE.

PERSIA *is at this time, and has been for ſeveral Ages, one of the great Eaſtern Monarchies, and yet the Accounts we have hitherto had of it in* Engliſh *have been no better than Fragments. Several Travellers have deſcrib'd the Country, and given us the Lives of ſome of their latter Kings; the* Turkiſh *Hiſtory here and there has ſomething of them occaſionally; other Books make mention of the Conqueſts of it by the* Tartars *and the* Sarazens. *A compleat Hiſtory of that Kingdom from its Foundation to this Time has been ſtill wanting, and is what the Publick is here preſented with, as a Work doubtleſs acceptable to all curious Perſons, the* Spaniſh *from which it is now tranſlated being*

ing very ſcarce, and the Arabick *from which that was taken very little underſtood. All Nations have their fabulous Originals, and therefore it is hop'd none will condemn this Work for what may appear Romantick in its remoteſt Antiquity; for it is but reaſonable to allow the* Perſians *the ſame Liberty we take our ſelves as to thoſe Primitive Times. Nor are we to conclude that all thoſe Things which may perhaps appear to us incredible are abſolutely falſe, ſince it is moſt certain that the* Aſiatick *Nations were civiliz'd, and had the uſe of Letters long before us, and conſequently their Hiſtories may with Truth extend much further than ours. The Judicious will not be apt to condemn Things ſlightly, being ſenſible that there is nothing perfect in this World, and for thoſe Ages which are ſomething remote from the firſt Original of that Kingdom, there does not appear to be the leaſt juſt Cauſe of Objection againſt what is here ſaid of them. Not to detain the Reader too long, we ſhall now give him as much of* Teixeira's Spaniſh *Preface to his Tranſlation from the Arabick, as is proper for the underſtanding of the Motives that induc'd him to write, and of his Performance. His Words are as follow.*

Having,

PREFACE.

Having, in my Youth, been addicted to reading of Hiſtory, I was often at a ſtand on Account of the Diſagreement there is among Authors about the ſame Things. This I more particularly obſerv'd in what has been variouſly and confuſedly tranſmitted to us in Writing by thoſe who went before us concerning the Kings of *Perſia* and their Succeſſion; among which Authors are *Procopius*, *Agathius*, *Genebrardus*, *Zonaras*, *Tornamira*, and ſeveral others; whoſe Relations are ſo uncertain, that they ſeldom agree in any Point. I labour'd under this Uneaſineſs for ſome time, 'till going over to *India*, and the Eaſtern Pars, and travelling there I came to *Ormuz*, and the Dominions of *Perſia*; where the ſame Curioſity ſtill poſſeſſing me, I laid hold of the Opportunity to reſolve my Doubts, and to that End, and to diſcover the true Hiſtory of thoſe Kings and Antiquities, I began to make Inquiry after them, but found my ſelf more perplex'd than before; for when I ask'd for *Cyrus*, *Artabanus*, *Ahaſuerus*, and others mention'd by our *Greek* and *Latin* Hiſtorians, I could hear nothing of them, or their Actions, agreeable to what theſe have related of them. At length, having acquainted ſome *Perſians*, Men of

Knowledge and well read, with my Deſire, after much Diſcourſe they adviſ'd me, ſince I deſign'd to know the Hiſtory of their Kings, to take up with what had been writ of them in their Chronicles, the Authors whereof being nearer at Hand, deliver'd their Actions with leſs Confuſion and more Certainty than thoſe of other Nations, who were often miſ-led either by Prejudice, or Diſtance, or both of them. I lik'd the Advice, and in order to make the true uſe of it, enquir'd and was inform'd, that the Hiſtory in greateſt Reputation among them was one they call *Tarik Mirkond*, that is, *Mirkond's Chronicle*, which I purchas'd, and having perus'd, and finding him very extenſive and univerſal as to the Affairs of *Perſia*, I extracted as much as the Publick is here preſented with, concerning the Number and Succeſſion of their Kings, from the firſt of them to him that is now reigning, which being altogether new and not publiſh'd by any other, I thought might be acceptable.

It is not my Deſign to argue upon doubtful Points, or to confute the Opinions of others, but only briefly to relate what the *Perſians* have preſerv'd by Tradition, and is confirm'd as Truth by

by their Writings; and ſince they look upon it as ſuch, it is reaſonable we ſhould do ſo too; for we ought rather to believe the Natives, who ſpeak like Eye-witneſſes, than Strangers in this Particular; ſo that this Hiſtory of ours may be of uſe for the perfecting of others, which have hitherto been very imperfect. The *Portugueſe* Hiſtorian, *John de Barros*, makes mention of *Mirkond*'s Chronicle in his Decads, but for want of underſtanding the Language, could give us no more than the Name.

Beſides the ſhort Account of the Kings, this Book contains ſome Curioſities, moſt of them taken notice of in the Margent, which I have inſerted, as believing them pat to the Purpoſe and diverting. I am ſenſible that ſome of them might have been more properly plac'd in the Second Book; but having at firſt deſign'd to publiſh only the Firſt, they were plac'd there, and I thought it not worth while afterwards to remove them; the Reader may give entire Credit to them, for they were either ſeen by my ſelf, or receiv'd from Perſons I believe as I would my own Eyes.

The Proper Names either of Men, or of Places, or of other Things, may per-

haps be thought harſh and difficult of Pronunciation, which I could eaſily have adapted to our Language; but thought it better to give them their own Sound, by reaſon the altering of them generally creates Confuſion; for had thoſe who have writ, or tranſlated Hiſtories, been always careful to give Men and Places their Proper Names, without any Alteration, there would be leſs Confuſion in reading of them. And in regard that this Book may happen to be read by ſome Perſon that has attain'd the Knowledge of the *Perſian* and *Arabick* Languages, who may call in Queſtion any of the Etymologies I produce upon Occaſion, I deſire ſuch to take Notice, that the more univerſal Languages are, the more they vary in their Terminations, according to the Provinces they are us'd in, whereof there are Inſtances enough in our own and in the *French*, *Latin*, and *Greek* Tongues.

The Calculation of Time, according to the *Perſians*, is to be ſeen in general in the Firſt Book; but much more particularly in the Second [illegible] argue [illegible] ethod being ſtill obſerv'd. [illegible] confuſe [illegible] ble I may have committed ſo[illegible] only [illegible] e in reducing the Years of [illegible] *Era*, to our Year of CHRIST, by reaſon of the

diffe-

difference of the Lunar Year us'd by them, and the Solar by us; I did my beſt, and if any other can and will reduce it to a greater Exactneſs, I ſhall be very well pleas'd, and return him now Thanks before-hand.

Together with the Kings of *Perſia*, I give a Relation of thoſe of *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*, &c.

Thus far our Author Teixeira; *to which I ſhall only add, that the ſhort Supplement made to his Kings of* Perſia, *to continue them down from his Time to ours, is collected from the* Turkiſh *Hiſtory, and the beſt Modern Travellers, as* Thevenot, Tavernier, Chardin, Gemelli, *&c. and that it was not made longer, leſt it ſhould be thought not to bear Proportion with the reſt of the Hiſtory.*

CON-

CONTENTS.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

OF *the Firſt King of* Perſia, *and his Original, according to* Mirkond, *the moſt Renowned Hiſtorian of that Nation.* Page 1

Chap. II. *Of the War in* Damaoand, *upon the Death of* Nacek *Son to* Kayumarras. 8

Chap. III. *The Birth of* Siamek, *Second King of* Perſia, *Grandſon to* Kayumarras, *to whom he reſigns the Government; and his Death.* 11

Chap. IV. *Of* Ouxangh, *third King of* Perſia, *and his Death.* 13

Chap. V. *Of* Tamurés Divband, *fourth King of* Perſia. ibid.

Chap. VI. *Of* Iambxed, *fifth King of* Perſia. 15

Chap. VII. Zoahk *uſurps the Crown of* Perſia, *and is the ſixth King, makes Search for* Frayhdun; Kaoah *riſes, and kills him, and puts* Frayhdun *into Poſſeſſion of the Kingdom.* 24

Chap. VIII. Frayhdun, *the ſeventh King of* Perſia, *being rais'd to the Throne of* Perſia, *entertains, and honours* Kaoah, *marries, and has Children, they make War among themſelves, and other Particulars till his Death.* 32

Chap. IX. *Of* Manucher *the eighth King of* Perſia. 38

Chap. X. *Of* Nauda[illegible] *the ninth King of* Perſia, *who is taken, and kill'd by* [illegible]ſiab. 41

Chap. XI. Afraſiab *ſubdues* Perſia; *the* Perſians *aſſiſted by his Brother* Agarires, *revolt againſt him, for which he puts him to Death.* 44

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XII. *Of* Bazab *the tenth King of* Perſia. Page 45

Chap. XIII. *Of* Kaykobad *the eleventh King of* Perſia; Afraſiab *overthrown in Battle, and Peace reſtored.* 46

Chap. XIV. Kaykaus *the twelfth King of* Perſia, *reduces* Mazandaron, *which had rebell'd; paſſes on into* Arabia, *where he marries; returns to* Perſia, *and what happen'd there, till his Death.* 48

Chap. XV. *Of* Kaykozrao, *the thirteenth King of* Perſia; *he makes War on his Grandfather* Afraſiab, *King of* Turkeſtam, *for which Reaſon his Son* Syavex *differs with him, and goes over to* Turon; *the End of* Afraſiab, *and two of his Sons.* 56

Chap. XVI. *Of* Loraſph, *the fourteenth King of* Perſia; *his Son* Guſtaſph *rebels, flyes into* Turkeſtam, *marries there, ſtirs up a War againſt his Father, is brought back into* Perſia, *and other Accidents till his Death.* 60

Chap. XVII. *Of* Guſtaſph, *the fifteenth King of* Perſia; *he Wars on the King of* Turkeſtam, *on Account of Worſhipping the Fire, with various Succeſs; his Son* Spandiar *kill'd by* Roſtam, *and other Accidents till his Death.* 65

Chap. XVIII. *Of* Bahaman Daraz Daz, *the ſixteenth King of* Perſia, *his Life and Death.* 70

Chap. XIX. Homay *Wife to* Ardxir, *and Queen of* Perſia, *after her Husband's Death is deliver'd of a Son, who is caſt into a River, and comes afterwards to be King.* 77

Chap. XX. *Of* Darab Kebar, *the ſeventeenth King of* Perſia, *he makes War on* Phaylacus, *or* Philip *of* Macedon, *and other Accidents till his Death.* 79

Chap. XXI. *Of* Darab Seguer, *or* Kucheck, *that is,* Darius *the Little, eighteenth King of* Perſia; Aſcander, *or* Alexander *the Great, invades his Dominions, defeats him, and is murder'd by his own Subjects.* 80

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XXII. Aſcander, *or* Alexander *the Great, nineteenth King of* Perſia, *ſubdues that Kingdom, and what elſe happened till his Death.* Page 87

Chap. XXIII. *Of the* Inter-regnum *in* Perſia. 113

Chap. XXIV. *Of* Schapur, *or* Sapor, *the twentieth King of* Perſia. ibid.

Chap. XXV. *Of* Ardxir Babar Khon, *the twenty firſt King of* Perſia. 114

Chap. XXVI. *Of* Schapur Zabel Ketaf, *the twenty ſecond King of* Perſia. 115

Chap. XXVII. *Of* Baharon Kermonxa, *the twenty third King of* Perſia. 116

Chap. XXVIII. *Of* Yazd Gerd, *the twenty fourth King of* Perſia. 120

Chap. XXIX. *Of* Baharon Gur, *the twenty fifth King of* Perſia. 123

Chap. XXX. *Of* Yazd Gerd, *the twenty ſixth King of* Perſia. 142

Chap. XXXI. *Of* Hormoz, *the twenty ſeventh King of* Perſia. 143

Chap. XXXII. *Of* Pheruz, *the twenty eighth King of* Perſia. 144

Chap. XXXIII. *Of* Belax, *the twenty ninth King of* Perſia. 148

Chap. XXXIV. *Of* Kobad *the thirtieth King of* Perſia. 160

Chap. XXXV. *Of* Keſere Anuxiron, *the 31ſt King of* Perſia. 163

Chap. XXXVI. *Of* Hormoz *or* Hormiſda, *the 32d King of* Perſia. 182

Chap. XXXVII. *Of* Khoſrao Parvez, *or* Coſroes, *the 33d King of* Perſia. 186

Chap. XXXVIII. *Of* Kobad Schirughe, *or* Siroes, *the 34th King of* Perſia. 190

Chap. XXXIX. *Of* Ardxir Schirughe, *the 35th King of* Perſia. 192

Chap. XL. *Of* Schareat, *or* Siahriar, *Uſurper of* Perſia, reckon'd the [illegible] ibid.

Chap. XLI. *Of* [illegible] *King of* Perſia. 193

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XLII. *Of* Turon Doct, *Queen of* Perſia, *the 38th in the Royal Deſcent.* Page 193

Chap. XLIII. *Of* Jaſancedah, *the 39th Monarch of* Perſia. 194

Chap. XLIV. *Of* Azarmy Doct, *Queen of* Perſia, *and the 40th Sovereign.* 195

Chap. XLV. *Of* Ceſeré, *the 41ſt King of* Perſia. ibid.

Chap. XLVI. *Of* Ferrogzad, *the 42d King of* Perſia. 196

Chap. XLVII. *Of* Yazdgerd, *the 43d and laſt King of* Perſia, *of this Race.* ibid.

BOOK II.

Chap. I. *Which of the* Arabs, *and at what Time they ſubdu'd* Perſia. 198

Chap. II. *Of* Mawya *the ſixth* Calif *and Sovereign of* Perſia. 201

Chap. III. *Of* Yhezid, *the ſeventh* Calif *and Sovereign of* Perſia. ibid.

Chap. IV. Mawya, *the eighth* Calif *and Sovereign of* Perſia, *ſoon depos'd,* 202

Chap. V. Marwan, *ninth* Calif. *The* Arabs *make War on him, and deſtroy* Cufa; *he marches againſt and overthrows them, and at his Return is murder'd by his Wife.* 203

Chap. VI. Abdel Malek, 10*th* Calif; *the* Schiahis *make War on him in* Perſia *with various Succeſs, and other Accidents till his Death.* 204

Chap. VII. Oelid, *the* 11*th* Calif, *extends his Empire in* Perſia; *he poſſeſſes himſelf of all the Lands of* Maurenahar, Kouarizm *and* Turkeſtan; *infeſts the Dominions of the* Roman *Empire; his and* Oiaſge's *Death.* 206

Chap. VIII. Solyman, 12*th* Calif, *ſubdues the Provinces of* Gerion *and* Tabariſtan *in* Perſia. 207

Chap. IX. Haimar, 13*th* Calif, *the Deſcendants of* Abas *make War on him, and he is impriſon'd.* 208

Chap. X. Yhezid *the* 2*d, and* 14*th* Calif. Abu Mocelem *makes War on him in* Karaſan, *in favour of* Aly Ben Abas, *which laſts till his Death.* 209

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XI. Oxon, 15*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Perſia. Page 209

Chap. XII. Oelid *the* 2*d*, 16*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Perſia. 210

Chap. XIII. Yhezid *the* 3*d*, 17*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Perſia. ibid.

Chap. XIV. Ebrahem, 14*th* Calif, *depos'd by* Marwan, *who uſurps, ſeizes and murders him.* 211

Chap. XV. Marwan *the* 2*d*, 19*th* Calif, *and laſt of the Tribe of* Ben Humya; *Affairs of* Perſia *during his Reign.* ibid.

Chap. XVI. Safah, 20*th* Calif, *and firſt of the Tribe or Race of* Eben Abas. 213

Chap. XVII. Abu-Jafar, 21*ſt* Calif, *puts to Death the Governor of* Karaſon, *for intending to rebel; reduces the Rebels of* Mecca *and* Bazora; *builds the City of* Bagdat *on the River* Tigris, *and dyes on the Way to* Mecca. 215

Chap. XVIII. Mahady Bila, 22*d* Calif, *and what happned in his Time.* 216

Chap. XIX. Elady Bila Muza Ben Mahady, 23*d* Calif. 218

Chap. XX. Araxid Bila Harun, 24*th* Calif. ibid.

Chap. XXI. Mahamed Amin, 25*th* Calif; *he makes War on his Brother* Mahamun, *by whom he is defeated and killed.* 219

Chap. XXII. Mahamun Ben Arun, 26*th* Calif. 220

Chap. XXIII. Abu Ezach Matacon, 27*th* Calif; *he builds the City* Samarrah; *Wars in* Perſia, *and other Accidenss till his Death.* 221

Chap. XXIV. Wacek, 28*th* Calif, *and all that hapn'd in* Perſia *till his Death.* 223

Chap. XXV. Almoto Wakel Bila Jafar, 29*th* Calif. 224

Chap. XXVI. Montacer Bila, 30*th* Calif. 225

Chap. XXVII. Abul Abas Hamed, 31*ſt* Calif, *murder'd by his Slaves.* ibid.

Chap. XXVIII. Moſta Hhin, 32*d* Calif. 226

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XXIX. Almater Bila, 33*d* Calif, *recovers some of the Lands that had been seiz'd by* Acem Ben Zeyd, *and is murder'd by his Soldiers.* Page 226

Chap. XXX. Motady Bila, 34*th* Calif. 227

Chap. XXXI. Almat Hamed Bila, 35*th* Calif; *and what happen'd under him in* Persia. ibid.

Chap. XXXII. Matazed Bila Hamed, 36*th* Calif, *the Affairs of* Persia *under him.* 236

Chap. XXXIII. Moktafy Bila, 37*th* Calif, *and Monarch of* Persia. 238

Chap. XXXIV. Moktader Bila, 38*th* Calif, *and Monarch of* Persia. 239

Chap. XXXV. Jafar Ben Matazed, 39*th* Calif; *Affairs of* Persia, *during his Reign.* 244

Chap. XXXVI. Kaher Bila Mahamed *the* 40*th*, Razy Bila Mahamed *the* 41*st*, *and* Moktafy Bila Ebrahim, *the* 42*d*, Califs. 246

Chap. XXXVII. Mostachfy Abdela, 43*d* Calif. 247

Chap. XXXVIII. Motyah Bila Fazele, 44*th* Calif. 250

Chap. XXXIX. Tayha Abdel Carim, 45*th* Calif. 254

Chap. XL. Kader Bila Hamed, 46*th* Calif. 267

Chap. XLI. Kahem, *or* Alkahem Beamaryla Abu Jafar Abdula, 47*th* Calif. 290

Chap. XLII. Almoktady Bila *the* 48*th*, Almostacer Bila *the* 49*th*, Almostarxed Bila *the* 50*th*, Raxet Bila *the* 51*st*, and Almoktafy Bila *the* 52*d* Calif. 301

Chap. XLIII. Almostanger Bila Issuf *the* 53*d*, Almostanzy Benur Elah Acen *the* 54*th*, Nacer, *or* Nacere Ladinla, *the* 55*th*, Alhazar, *or* Altaker Bila Mahamed *the* 56*th*, Almostancer Bila Mansur *the* 57*th*, *and* Almostacem Bila Abdula *the* 58*th*, *and last* Calif *of* Bagdat. 304

Chap. XLIV. *An Account of the* Mogols, *or* Tartars, *that Conquer'd* Persia. 305

Chap. XLV. *Of the* Turkish *Family of* Kara Kuyonlu, *that is, the Hord or Tribe of the* Black Sheep, *who were Sovereigns of* Persia. 323

Chap.

CONTENTS.

Chap. XLVI. *Of the* Turkish *Family, or Horde of* Akuyonlu, *which is, the Tribe of the* White Sheep, *by another Name, call'd* Bayonduryah, *who were Sovereigns of* Persia. Page 328

Chap. XLVII. *Of* Chinguyskan's *Successors, who Ruled in* Usbeck *and* Maurenahar. 335

Chap. XLVIII. *Of* Scha Ismael Sufy, *King of* Persia, *his Origin, and Progeny to this Time.* 337

The Supplement to Teixeira's *History of* Persia. 345

A brief Account of the most Remarkable Provinces, and which have continu'd longest under the Dominion of Persia. 361

A Chronological Table of the Sovereigns of Persia, *till the* Arabs *enter'd that Country, according to* Mirkond. 369

A brief Account of the Kingdom of Harmuz, *or* Ormuz, *and of its Kings, 'till it was subdu'd by the* Portugueses, *extracted from the History written by* Torunxa, *King of that City.* 376

THE

THE HISTORY OF PERSIA.

BOOK. I.

CHAP. I.

Of the First King of Persia, *and his Original, according to* Mirkond, *the most Renowned Historian of that Nation.*

WHen the Waters of the universal Deluge had ceas'd, and *Noah*, his Children and Posterity spread themselves over the Face of the Earth, and began to fill it, as they were enjoyn'd by God; many Families assembled themselves together in several Parts of the World, building Towns, and still multiplying, whilst every one endeavour'd to advance himself, tho' it were to the Detriment of his Neighbour, as will appear in the Sequel of this Work. Then did Pride,

Anarchy. and Ambition particularly take Poſſeſſion of the Inhabitants of the Province of *Aderbaion*, where this Hiſtory is to commence. The Natives of it for want of a Prince, or ſome Perſon to govern them, liv'd in continual Trouble and Uneaſineſs, every Man aſpiring to be Chief, and aiming by force to lord it o'er the reſt; ſo that ſome endeavouring to bear Sway, and others refuſing to ſubmit to it, they did one another great harm; theſe various Inclinations occaſioning Tumults, Wars, Rapin, Oppreſſion, Slaughter, and many other Miſchiefs; ſuch is, and was, even then in that naked, and ignorant Age, the Power of an inordinate Deſire of Rule. The Province of *Azerbaion*, or *Aderbaion*, as it is now call'd, and whoſe Capital is the famous City *Tabriz*, or *Tauris*, was the nobleſt, and moſt populous at that time, which made Men contend the more eagerly for the Dominion of it. The Natives conſidering their preſent Sufferings, and apprehending ſtill greater Misfortunes, conſulted about the means to redreſs the Grievances they then lay under, and prevent thoſe they fear'd might enſue, and reſolv'd to chuſe a Perſon among themſelves to whom the Government ſhould be committed. The Power of electing was given to ſuch as were thought the beſt qualified, who pitch'd upon four, and out of them choſe one, whoſe Name was *Kayumarras*, as being the moſt accompliſh'd of them, and known to be prudent, brave, generous, affable, and endu'd with all other Virtues, requiſite in a good Governor. The Choice was approv'd by all Perſons, with great Applauſe. He was not then preſent, but being attended, they unanimouſly intreated him to accept

A King choſen.

accept of what was offer'd, in return for having been choſen, and preferr'd above all the reſt. He endeavour'd long to excuſe himſelf; but at length yielding to Importunity, and preferring the publick Good before his own private Satisfaction, he conſented to take upon him the Government, and being conducted to a publick Place, was there in the Preſence of all the People, clad in a Sort of Garment different from what was commonly us'd, and as a particular Mark of Royalty, they put on his Head a kind of Cap, call'd in their Tongue *Tagè*, being equivalent to a Crown among us, and the ſame Name they ſtill give to the great Caps the Kings of *Perſia* now wear, and to any other high Covering for the Head; and the Cocks Comb is alſo call'd *Tage*, whence alſo the Herb our Botaniſts call *Criſta Gallinæ*, is by them nam'd *Tage Corus*, ſignifying the ſame. Thus was *Kayumarras* receiv'd as King, all Perſons kiſſing his Foot, in Token of Vaſſallage, a Cuſtom us'd to this Day in that Kingdom.

Tage *the Royal Diadem.*

According to *Tarik Mirkond*, the *Perſian* Hiſtorian, *Kayumarras* was the Son of *Aram*, the Son of *Shem*, the Son of *Noah*, whom the *Perſians* call *Adam aſſani*, that is, the ſecond *Adam*, for his being the ſecond Father of Mankind. As ſoon as *Kayumarras* was made King, he enjoyn'd all Men under ſevere Penalties, to call him *Adam*; whence ſprung an Error among the *Perſian* Pagans, which ſuch of them as yet remain hold to this Day, believing that this ſame was the firſt, and true *Adam*, firſt Progenitor of Mankind.

Kayumarras *the firſt King of* Perſia.

The Gentiles in the *Perſian* Tongue are called by three ſeveral Names, which are *Mayucy*, *Maurigy*, and *Gaor yazdi*, whereof the laſt is

Perſian *Gentils why call'd* Gaor yardi.

the moſt us'd for the following Reaſon. The *Indian* Gentiles of *Guzarat*, or *Cambaya*, commonly known by the Name of *Baneans*, among their other Superſtitions, obſerve one of worſhipping Cows, which the *Perſians* call *Gao*, and him that worſhips them *Gaor*, as they do the Cow-herd *Gaopon*, and the Herb we call Bugloſs, or Cows Tongue, they name *Gaorabon*, ſignifying the ſame Thing, from *Gao*, a Cow, and *Zabon* the Tongue, taken from the *Arabick*, which calls it *Lecen al Aſor*, which is the ſame, and hence it is that the *Perſians* ſignifie any Gentile by this Denomination of *Gaor*. Therefore they give the ſame Title to thoſe, who held this Opinion concerning *Kayumarras*, adding the Epithet of *Yazdi*, ſignifying the Gentiles of *Yazd*, a City in *Perſia*, the Chief Reſidence of thoſe Antient Natives, who adhering to their former Paganiſm, have to this Day refus'd to embrace either the Sect of *Mahomet*, or that of *Hali*: Theſe worſhip the Sun, and the Fire, which they have moſt carefully, and religiouſly kept lighted, without being once extinguiſh'd for a moment, above Three Thouſand Years, on a Mountain, a Days Journey from *Yazd*, call'd *Albors Kuyh*, that is, Mount *Abbors*, or by another Name *Atex quedah*, ſignifying the Houſe, or Manſion of the Fire, to attend the which many Perſons are continually employ'd. This Sect was formerly follow'd by all thoſe Nations comprehended under the general Name of *Perſia*, which were many, and very great; and they perſiſted in it, with very little Alteration, till the Conqueſt of the *Arabs*, who introduc'd theirs among moſt of them; and the other is preſerv'd among theſe few Gentiles; who are

ſo

ſo ſtrict Obſervers of it, that he is reckoned very unfortunate, who dies off that Mountain where the Fire is kept, and therefore they cauſe themſelves to be carry'd thither from Places very remote, for fear of loſing the Advantages they Hope to reap by dying there. They ſtill obſerve the Cuſtom of their Anceſtors in burying of the dead; and when any happen to live to a great Age; they do not ſtay ſtill they die naturally, but carry them to that, or ſome other Mountain, where they put them into certain Caves, they have there made in ſuch manner, that the old Wretches are there left ſtanding, and without any Proviſion but the Air, and ſo they are abandon'd and continue till they expire; and the Wind there blowing freſh, dryes up all their Moiſture; ſo that they are preſerv'd entire, without Corruption for many Ages; and thither they reſort to offer them ſweet Herbs, fragrant Flowers, and the like, having an extraordinary Opinion of thoſe that die ſo. When any one dies young, being in doubt of his Salvation, for they look upon it as moſt certain, that the old Men above ſpoken of muſt be ſav'd, they make faſt the dead Body on an Aſs, ſo as it may ſit upright, and on his Head tie a Veſſel, with a wide Mouth, full of ſour Cream, in the *Perſian* call'd *Maſt*, which alſo ſignifies, a Skin, ſuch as is us'd to carry Liquor in. With the ſame Cream they daub his Face, and Eyes, and then whipping the Aſs, make him run about the Fields, where abundance of Crows light on him, Cuſtom having made this familiar to them, and ſome peck at the Cream on his Head, others at that on his Face and Eyes, when thoſe who

Perſian *Superſtition touching the Dead.*

follow, obſerve whether the Eye they peck'd firſt was the right, and if ſo, they conclude he is ſafe; but if the left be firſt ſtruck at, they agree he is damn'd. The Heathens, who live in *Bengale*, along the River *Ganges*, which they call *Ganga*, do not much differ from theſe in their Opinion, and Practice; for when they grow weary of Life, either on Account of Age, or Sickneſs, they cauſe themſelves to be laid near the River, with a large Veſſel of Water cloſe ſtopp'd, ty'd to their Neck, to the End, that when the Flood riſes as far as that reaches, or the Current where that comes not, it may carry them off, and they may ſink immediately; and he whom the Water happens to leave, is look'd upon as a grievous Sinner. Thoſe who die upon Land, and are caſt into the River, which is the common Buryal Place of the devouter Sort; if they happen to be carry'd up and down by the Tide, without being devour'd by ſome Alligator, whereof there are great Numbers and monſtrous large, they are ill look'd upon, and ſuppos'd to be Perſons that ſuffer there for ſome grievous Sins. On the other ſide, if the Alligators ſnapt them as ſoon as caſt into the Water, they are judg'd, and reputed to have been good Livers. It is alſo well known, that the *Japoneſes* uſe to put themſelves into *Fones*, being a Sort of Veſſels, with Proviſions, and launch out into the Sea, where having great Stones ty'd about their Necks, they make a Hole in the Boat, and ſo ſink with it; believing they go to a better and eaſier Life, and take the Proviſion to ſerve them by the way. Some *Indians* in other Parts have a Cuſtom very oppoſite to that we have mention'd

The like of Indians.

And of Japoneſes

tion'd of *Bengale*, as at the River of *Cranganor*, near *Cochim*, on the *Malabar* Coaſt, where there are ſome monſtrous large Alligators; for here when any Man is to clear himſelf of ſome heinous Crime laid to his Charge, as Theft, Adultery, Murder, or the like, he is oblig'd to ſwim over the River, which is not very broad, and if in croſſing he meets no Alligator, or is not hurt by any, he is clear'd; but if he is devour'd, they conclude him guilty, tho' he never was ſo, and this Opinion is not to be remov'd. In a Parcel of Iſlands thinly inhabited, lying between thoſe of *Nicobar*, and thoſe of *Tanazarim* toward the Gulph of *Bengale*, there lives a People ſo barbarous, that they eat Man's Fleſh, and neither ſpare Father, or Mother, Brethren, or Relations, when grown old, and decrepit. They make them get up into a Tree, which they below ſhake, and move with all their Strength, to ſee whether thoſe above will fall down, which if they do, either through Weakneſs, or want of hold, they ſay, they are ripe and fit to eat, and accordingly devour them; but if they hold faſt, and will not drop, they leave them, alledging they are not come to Maturity. Many more ſuch extravagant Cuſtoms are to be found among the Eaſtern Nations, which I omit for Brevity ſake.

The contrary at Cranganor.

Barbarous Cuſtoms.

Mirkond and all the *Perſian* Hiſtorians agree, that *Kayumarras* was the firſt King of *Perſia*, and the firſt that ſettled the Exerciſe of Juſtice, and defended it againſt all Enemies, that offer'd to diſturb its Quiet.

Chap. II.

Of the War in Damaoand, *upon the Death of* Nacek *Son to* Kayumarras.

Kayumarras was married, and had Children, his Eldeſt Son *Nacek*, being addicted to Solitude, and the Study of Natural Philoſophy, liv'd retir'd, with his Wife, upon one of the Mountains of *Damaoand*, a City then ſtanding in the Province of *Aderbaion*, which gave Name to the Mountain, and at preſent in that of *Hierak*, and being a well meaning Man, and of a ſolid Judgment, his Father us'd ſometimes, when he had leiſure to go ſpend ſome time with him. One Day he went to viſit him paſſing into the moſt private Part of his little Houſe, he found him dead of many grievous Wounds, and tho' the ſtricteſt ſearch was made, the Occaſion of his Death could not be diſcover'd at that time, nor could his Wife, who was afterwards found, give any Account of it. His Funeral Rites were perform'd, with general Lamentation, which according to the Cuſtom of that Age, and Nation, conſiſted in putting the dead Body into a Hole, or Grave, and there burning it with a great Fire made over.

Racek Son to Kayumarras murder'd.

This Cuſtom of burning the Dead Bodies was much practic'd through all the World, and is ſtill kept up in *India*, and many other Eaſtern Parts, among the Gentiles. Nor do they only uſe to burn the Dead, but the Living alſo, it being very common for the Wives of the deceas'd to caſt themſelves into

Burning of the Dead.

to the ſame Fire with them, and ſuch as do it are reputed Women of Worth, and faithful to their Husbands; whereas thoſe who do not are contemn'd, and look'd upon as worthleſs, and void of all Senſe of Honour. And it is remarkable that when Princes die, not only their Wives, and beſt beloved Women, but even their Concubines are burnt with them; as happen'd whilſt I was in *India*, when the *Naique* of *Madure*, a Place between *Malabar* and *Coromandel*, dying, four Hundred of his Women were burnt with him. Tho' ſeveral have writ concerning it, the manner of burning them is this. They dig a Pit in the ground, the Depth of a tall Man, and a half, if need be, then the Body being laid in it, they pile abundance of Wood on it very orderly, that it may the better take Fire, and ſuch as are able to do this with Sanders, wild Eagle Wood, and ſometimes the better Sort, and other precious Trees; over which they pour a Quantity of Oyl, and Butter, that the Fire may take the better. All Things being thus prepar'd, they bring the Widow that is to be burnt, from her Houſe to that Place, attended by all her Kindred, and other People, clad, and adorn'd the beſt ſhe can afford, and to ſhow ſhe comes of her own Will, and is eaſy in her Mind, ſhe chews *Betle* by the way, being a certain Herb I ſhall ſpeak of hereafter, which they uſually chew upon ſolemn Occaſions, and at other Times. When in Sight of the Place, ſhe begins to take off thoſe Ornaments that are about her, as Rings, Bracelets, Chains, Pendants, Jewels worn about the Ankles, and Rich Silks, beſtowing them on whom ſhe pleaſes, and throwing ſomething

Women burnt with their Huſbands.

Four Hundred burnt with a Prince.

Manner of burning.

thing into the Pile, then taking leave with Expreſſions of Joy, and the great Love ſhe bore her Husband, caſts herſelf into the Fire, which immediately blazes upon all ſides, and conſumes her in a moment. Some do it much againſt their Wills, prevail'd on by Importunity, and almoſt compell'd; and others upon this occaſion, where there happned to be *Portugueſe* Soldiers, have told them, they would become Chriſtians, if they would reſcue them from that Danger. This is practis'd only among the Gentiles, of whom there are others who have very different Cuſtoms, which I paſs by, to return to *Kayumarras*.

He having perform'd *Nacek*'s Funeral Rites, return'd home diſconſolate, and very deſirous to know who had committed that barbarous Act; which at length he obtain'd, being inform'd, it had been done by the Robbers of the Adjacent Countries; who breaking into his Palace, found his Son there and murder'd him. *Kayumarras* letting ſlip no Opportunity to obtain his Revenge, at length compaſs'd it, upon Intelligence, that his Enemies had ſettled in the Country of *Macarek*, which ſignifies, the Lands to the Eaſtward. He ſet out with a good Force, and found them in the Country of *Tabraſtam*, where he fought, and overthrew them, killing many, and taking a great Number of Priſoners, whom he employ'd in building a City he there founded, to ſecure thoſe Parts, calling it *Balk*, for the following reaſon. *Kayumarras* had a Brother in the Land of *Mogareb*, which ſignifies Weſtward, who came as far as *Damavand*, from the Place of his Reſidence, to viſit him, and not meeting him

Murderers puniſh'd.

Balk City.

him there, went on to the Place where he heard he was. *Kayumarras* ſaw, and knew him, and after loving Embraces, to expreſs the Satisfaction he receiv'd in ſeeing him, call'd the City he was building *Balk*, which ſignifies a Hug, as it is call'd to this Day, being one of the beſt in the Province of *Uzbek*, populous, wealthy, and warlike, as are the reſt in thoſe Parts. Having put it into a good Poſture, and plac'd Inhabitants in it, with all Neceſſaries for a Defence, he return'd to *Damaoand*; and being afterwards at Peace, founded the Cities of *Stabbar*, which he made his Court, *Ardauel*, *Kabulſtan*, *Komuz*, *Macron*, *Naciben*, which is *Ninive*, *Gerion*, *Sagiſton*, and *Goms*; all of them Subject to the Crown of *Perſia*, but ſtanding in ſeveral Provinces, as ſhall be obſerv'd when Occaſion offers.

CHAP. III.

The Birth of Siamek, *Second King of* Perſia, *Grandſon to* Kayumarras, *to whom he reſigns the Government, and his Death.*

Siamek at his Death, left his Wife with Child, who was in due ſeaſon deliver'd of a Son, call'd *Siamek*, whom his Grandfather *Kayumarras* caus'd to be educated, and inſtructed, as became ſuch a Perſon, and when come to years of Maturity, by the Conſent of the People, reſign'd up the Government into his Hands, and withdrew himſelf to live at Eaſe. *Siamek* being enthron'd,

Kayumarras abdicates.

thron'd, marry'd; but very ſoon after, being inform'd that ſome Enemy ravag'd his Country, he went out to oppoſe them, and coming to a Battle, obtain'd the Victory, which coſt him very dear, being mortally wounded. He caus'd himſelf to be ſpeedily carry'd into his Tent, where his Wife was big with Child, and directing his Diſcourſe to the Infant ſtill in the Womb, deſir'd, if it prov'd a Man, to revenge his Death, having ſpoken which Words he expir'd, to the great Grief of all the Kingdom. *Kayumarras* took upon him the Government again, and ſoon after *Siamek*'s Wife was deliver'd of a Son, whom they call *Ouxangh*. At this time the Enemies again invaded the Lands of *Perſia*, againſt whom *Kayumarras* march'd, and overthrew them, taking many Priſoners, ſome of whom he burnt, being inform'd they had been guilty of the Death of the Princes. After this Victory obtain'd, he again retir'd, and dy'd, when he had reign'd Forty Years, leaving the Province of *Aderbaien*, and the others he had ſubdu'd in a flouriſhing and peaceable Condition. *Kayumarras* having been ſo much engag'd in Wars, is reputed the Inventor of moſt ſorts of Weapons us'd in thoſe Parts, and particularly of all Furniture for Horſes.

Siamek's *Death.*

Kayumarras *dies.*

CHAP.

Chap. IV.

Of Ouxangh, *Third King of* Perſia, *and his Death.*

Ouxangh, as ſoon as of Age, was plac'd on the Throne, and govern'd during his Life to the Satisfaction of all Men. He married, and had a Son call'd *Tamurés*. His Enemies breaking into his Dominions with an Army, ſurpriz'd him on a Mountain near *Damaoand*, where he was wounded on the Head with a Stone, whereof he dy'd, when he had reign'd Fifty Years.

Chap. V.

Of Tamurés Divband, *Fourth King of* Perſia.

Ouxangh being dead, his Son *Tamurés*, ſirnam'd *Divband*, that is, Devil Binder was ſet up in his Place. The *Perſians* call the Devil by theſe Three Names, *Div*, *Jandon*, and *Geyton*; and in regard, that *Tamures* gain'd many notable Victories over his Enemies, whom the *Perſians* dreaded, and hated, as they did the Devil, therefore they gave him the Title of *Divband*, ſignifying, a Subduer, and Impriſoner of Devils. The *Arabs* call the Devil *Beliz*, as alſo *Geitano*, which ſeems to be the ſame as *Satan*.

Tamurés Divband conſidering the Damages ſuſtain'd by his Subjects, during the late Wars,

Wars, remitted all Taxes for Three Years. He was bravé, and of a Martial Spirit; yet no leſs prudent, addicted to Peace, and a Favourer of wiſe Men, whom he ſought after, and caus'd to be brought from remote Parts, beſtowing great Favours on them, that by their Advice he might maintain Juſtice, and Peace in his Dominions; and he was very fond of hunting. He created the firſt *Wazir* in *Perſia*, whom we corruptly call *Vizier*, being the ſupreme Governor of the Kingdom, under the King; tho' all of them have not this Soveraign Power. By his Advice *Tamurés* plac'd Garriſons in all the Frontier Towns of *Aderbaion*, or to ſpeak more extenſively of *Perſia*. This Province of *Aderbaion*, as I hinted above, is one of the chiefeſt in *Perſia*, from which that Monarchy derives its Original. Some will have *Tauris*, its Capital, to have been formerly call'd *Ecbatana*, which was taken by the *Turk Selim* from *Scha Thamas* King of *Perſia*, as many have obſerv'd, and afterwards recover'd by *Scha Aba*'s. The many Victories obtain'd by *Tamurés* over his Enemies were the occaſion, that all the neighbouring Princes, who before acknowledg'd no Superior, as alſo others more remote, and powerful, ſubmitted themſelves to him, putting their Dominions under his Government, and Protection. This extraordinary Proſperity was follow'd by a tedious Dearth throughout *Perſia*, which deſtroy'd abundance of People, and Cattle; nor did *Tamurés* himſelf eſcape, for he fell ſick, and dy'd at the City of *Balk*, in the Province of *Uzbek*, when he had reign'd Thirty Years.

First Vizier.

Dearth.

CHAP.

Chap. VI.

Of Iambxed, *Fifth King of* Perſia.

Tamurés Divband was ſucceeded by *Iambxed*, who ſome ſay was his Son, others his Brother, or his Nephew; a Man of an extraordinary Judgment, and Prudence, and no leſs Reſolution. He extended his Empire over ſeven large Provinces, all govern'd by his Laws, and improv'd by his Care, which he continually employ'd, to maintain them in Peace, and free from contagious Diſtempers. To this purpoſe he made uſe of the Learning of *Faelaſuf Rabony*, and *Faeyxa Gorrés*, two famous Phyſicians, that flouriſh'd in his time; and calling to mind the great Calamity, and Famine under *Tamurés*, he reſolv'd to provide againſt the like Misfortune, cauſing many large Granaries to be built, in which he laid up great Store of Proviſions, againſt a time of need. He invented Coats of Mail, Ponyards, and other Weapons; as alſo the uſe of Gold Ornaments, Precious Stones, and ſundry Jewels; caus'd Silks of ſeveral Colours to be wove, and wore Garments of them; took Delight in Aromatical Odours, and ſweet Scents, which he caus'd to be brought from remote Parts, with much Expence; and drank Wine moderately, as reckning it good, and wholſome in a ſmall Quantity, and ſome will have him to be the Inventor of it in *Perſia*. *Iambxed* had a Woman Slave, whom he entirely lov'd, for her extraordinary Beauty; ſhe happen'd to be taken with a violent Pain in the Head, which

Famous Phyſicians.

Inventions of Arms, Jewels, Silks, and Wine.

which no Remedies could remove; ſo that, deſpairing of any Relief, ſhe ſhut herſelf up privately in a Room, where *Iambxed* kept his Wine very chearily, whereof ſhe drank a good Doſe, and finding herſelf more at Eaſe ſome Hours after, repeated it ſo often, till ſhe was perfectly cur'd. She told the King what ſhe had done, who from that time valu'd Wine much the more, for its Virtue, and having reſtor'd her to Health.

Of Wine. The Uſe of Wine is very Antient, and therefore no Wonder it ſhould be now ſo univerſal throughout the World, for I believe there is no Nation but what delights in it; and thoſe who have not the true Wine made of Grapes, either through Want of Induſtry, or becauſe the Soil or Climate will not produce it, have ſome other Sort of Liquor, inſtead of it, to make merry upon their Feſtivals. There is Plenty of excellent Wine in *Perſia*, which in their Language they call *Scharab*, and the Natives drink it extravagantly, carrying great Quantities of it conceal'd in Bottles, put up in Cheſts, as if it were *Perſian* Roſe Water, to *Labor*, in the Great *Mogol's* Country. At *Ormuz*, and *Mogoſtan*, and all along the Coaſt of *Arabia*, on the *Perſian* Gulph, they make Two Sorts of Liquors; the one, whereof the Principal Ingredients are Dates, and Liquorice Leaves, they call *Arequi*, from *Areca*, a *Perſian* Word, ſignifying Sweat, which Name they give it by way of Preference before all others. This is the ſtrongeſt, and moſt dangerous Liquor that ever was invented, and ſuch as it is, there are very notable Drinkers of it. Another Sort is made of Raiſins infuſ'd in cold Water, to a fixt Quantity and Proportion,

Arach Liquor.

Wine of Raiſins.

tion, which ferments of it self, and then settles, and is us'd, being reckned good and wholsome; and I have seen it made in *Syria*. In *India* they draw Wine from the Substance of the *Coco*, call'd a Palm Tree, from the Resemblance there is between them, and this is done two ways. *Sura* flows of it self from the Branches, cut for that purpose, into Vessels, plac'd to receive it. This they distil, and call the Spirit *Orraca*, or according to us Arack, which is also very strong, and sometimes they put Raisins into it, which takes off much of the Harshness, and makes it softer, and the older it is, the better, which is not so in the Liquor made of Water and Raisins. There is another Sort drawn by distilling, from another Species of Palm Tree, call'd *Nipa*, growing in marshy Grounds; this is much softer, pleasanter, as clear as Water, and said to be very wholesome. Abundance is made, and Ships loaded with it in *Pegu*, *Tanasarim*, *Malaca*, and the *Philippine Islands*; but that of *Tanasarim* is better than all the rest. In *Arracam*, and *Pegu*, they make a Liquor of rotten Rice, and call it *Pamplis*, [but we Arack] and it is us'd at *Manila*, and in *China*, where there are several Sorts of Liquors. The chiefest of these is that made of *Lechyas*, a kind of Fruit like Strawberries, but larger, and for its Excellency they call it *Mandarine* Wine, so we call all Persons having any Command in *China*. In the Country of the *Cafres*, or Blacks of the South Part of *Africk*, next to *Mozambique*, they make Drink of Millet, and call it *Huyembe*, or *Pembe*. In *Bengale*, about the *Ganges*, they make another Liquor of Rice, call'd *Modo*, [and by us as the

Sura.

Orraca.

Nipa.

Pamplis.

Huyembe, or Pembe.

others above Arack.] In *Mexico* they make Drink of *Maguey*, a Plant very like that the *Aloes* comes from, but much larger and thicker; other *Indians* do it with *Yuca*. In short, there is an almost infinite Number of Wines, or Liquors, us'd by several Nations; besides other Customs grown so habitual, that they cannot live without them.

Betle Herb. For instance, the *Betle* in the East, so call'd in *Malabar*; in the *Canara*, and *Guzarat* Languages *Pam*; in the *Persian*, and *Arabick Tambul*; in the *Malayan*, *Sire*, and at *Manila*, *Buyo*, being a Leaf well known, not unlike the Plantain, which generally all Sorts of Persons, from the Prince to the Peasant, chew all Day, mix'd with a Nut they call *Areca*, but by the *Persians* and *Arabs Fufel*, and a little Oft Lime, made of Oyster Shells. With it they treat Friends at their coming in, and going away; Princes give it as a Token of their Favour, and Lovers to express their Affection. It is good against all Pains in the Stomach, preceding from Cold; for the Teeth and Gums, strengthning, and preserving them, and causing a sweet Breath; and for these and other Reasons, they carry it to other Countries, where it does not grow, and they put a great Value upon it.

Opium. Next follows the *Opium*, by the Eastern Nations generally call'd *Afion*, most universally us'd by the *Mahometans*. The *Persians* by way of Preference call it *Teriaca*, that is, Treacle, so highly do they esteem this Gum, which naturally flows from the Stems of the Poppies without any other Mixture, or Composition. The Poor make use of the Rhinds, and a Decoction of them instead

ſtead of *Opium*; and therefore becauſe the ſaid Rhinds are call'd *Puſt*, they give thoſe that make uſe of it the Name of *Puſti*, as they do that of *Aſioni*, to thoſe that uſe *Opium*; both which being ſpoken in Anger, are reproachful and injurious Words. According to the *Perſians*, the uſe of this Gum was firſt brought up by Princes, and great Commanders, whoſe Reſt is diſturb'd by weighty Cares, and therefore they took it to ſleep; and the common Sort being ſo apt to follow their Example, they ſoon fell into the ſame Practice; by which means it became ſo univerſal, that there are very few but what take it; and I have ſeen ſome die in ſeveral Parts for want of it, and others by taking more than they were us'd to; for it is a deadly Poiſon. There are two principal Sorts of it in the Eaſt, the *Malwy* growing at *Malve*; and the *Mecery*, brought from *Mecere*, that is, the City *Cairo* in *Egypt*.

There is another Liquor much us'd throughout all *Turky*, *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and *Syria*, which they call *Kaoah*; and we Coffee, which being ſo univerſally known, needs not be deſcrib'd; but thoſe Nations reckon it good for the Stomach againſt Wind, and the *Hemorrhoids*, and that it creates an Appetite. The *Cha*, or Tea is as common in *China*, and no leſs known in our Parts; as is alſo the Chocolate, firſt brought from *New Spain*. *Coffee*, *Tea*, and *Chocolate*.

In the Kingdoms of *Guzarat*, and *Cambaya*, the Natives Seaſon every thing they eat with, *Aſſa fetida*, whereof I ſhall ſpeak hereafter, and they reckon no Meat palatable without it, and therefore they rub the Veſſels they dreſs their Diet in with *Aſſa fetida*.

it, and tho' it be unſavory, and of a loathſome ſcent to ſuch as are not us'd to it, to them Cuſtom has made it pleaſant and reliſhable, and the want of it is very grievous to them, becauſe they reckon it preſerves their Health. Others generally drink hot Water, as on the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, and in *China*, where they make a Sort of Tin Veſſels, with Cloth Caſes and Coverings, where it keeps hot a whole Day, or longer. Others commonly chew Maſtick, particularly in *Perſia*, where they call it *Maſtaguy*, and with it ſcent the Water they drink; as the great Men do with Amber, which they call by this ſame Name, and Abundance of it is us'd in *Perſia*, and *Arabia*, brought from *India*; but much more from the Coaſt of *Melinde*, and all that of the Blacks in *Africk*, along the *Indian* Sea, which they call of *Zanguybar*, that is, the Sea of the Blacks, from *Zanguy*, Black, and *Bar*, the Sea. The *Portugueſes* corruptly call it *Zanzibar*, and we *Zanguebar*: On the Shore of this Coaſt, near the Town of *Brava*, in the Year 1593, was found a Piece of Ambergreece, of ſuch a monſtrous Magnitude, that a Man ſitting upon a Camel on the one ſide of it, could not be ſeen on the other. *Tabacco* is much us'd in moſt Parts of the World, either in Smoke, or Snuff, and ſome pretend to commend it. Thus we find there is no enumerating the Inventions of Men to pleaſe themſelves in eating, drinking, and the like.

Hot Water drunk.

To return to *Iumbxed*, he reſided for the moſt Part in the Province, and City of *Sagiſtam*; and that he might be the nearer to take care of all Parts of his Dominions upon occaſion,

Schiraz City.

occaſion, he founded a City in a moſt convenient Place, being almoſt the Center of them, and gave it the Name of *Schiraz*. This is the Metropolis of the Kingdom properly call'd *Perſia*, whoſe Name is communicated to all the reſt that are ſubject to it. The Natives call this Kingdom *Parz*, as do the *Arabs*, bating that they having no Letter P, make uſe of F, and pronounce it *Farz*. I could never learn the Etymology, and Original of this Name, tho' I have endeavour'd it; and tho' I am not ignorant of the great Difference Antient Authors make between the *Perſians*, and the *Parthians*; I ſhall not think it any Preſumption in me to affirm, they were both the ſame People, comparing the Name they retain of *Parz*, with that of *Parthian*; and beſides the Reſemblance of the Names, they differ not much from the *Parthians* in manners, and their Way of living and fighting. Beſides, after I was acquainted with that Country, enquiring among Perſons in our Parts, who were well vers'd in Hiſtory, for the Situation of *Parthia*, they could never aſcertain it, but after taking all their Dimenſions, at laſt concluded placing it in *Perſia*. However it be, the Kingdom is call'd *Parz*, and the Natives, or any thing belonging to it *Parzy*, that is of *Perſia*; for the *y* at the End ſignifies of, as if we ſhould ſay of *Spain*. *Schiraz*, as I ſaid before, is the Capital of this Kingdom, founded by *Iambxed*, being Twelve *Farſanghes* in Compaſs, and each *Farſangh* is Three Thouſand Paces. It is cold, as lying to the Northward; tho' *Tauris* is much colder, being the Metropolis of *Aderbaion* before ſpoken of. The Inhabitants of *Schiraz*,

Perſia, *and* Parthia, *the ſame.*

are a fair People, for the moſt Part beautiful, and well ſhap'd. It abounds in all things neceſſary for the Support of Life, and Delight. The Language is eaſy, of no difficult Pronunciation; beſides that it is univerſal, not only through the Dominions of *Perſia*, but in others remote; there being few Parts in the Eaſt, where the *Perſian* Tongue is unknown. This Language is divided into Three Sorts call'd *Schirazy*, *Roſtâhi*, and *Harmuſi*. The firſt is the politeſt and moſt regular, ſpoken at *Schiraz*: The ſecond the vulgar, not ſo much refin'd and embelliſh'd; The third has many very improper Expreſſions, and is more coarſe and unpoliſh'd, us'd in the Iſland of *Ormuz*. Beſides this univerſal Language, common to all Countries under the Dominion of the King of *Perſia*, every Province has its peculiar Tongue, as we in *Europe* have beſides the *Latin*. This is none of the largeſt Kingdoms the King of *Perſia* rules, but rather the leaſt of them, and yet it contains ſome conſiderable Towns, and Cities, which I ſhall ſpeak of in particular as they occur: From *Schiraz* they carry to other Parts Proviſions, Wool, Hides, and other Commodities it abounds in, as alſo vaſt Quantities of moſt excellent diſtill'd Roſe Water, I ſay diſtill'd, to diſtinguiſh it from that which is made by Decoction. The Quantity made here is ſo great, that all the Eaſt is plentifully furniſh'd with it from *Schiraz*. Here is alſo found that ſecond Sort of bittter *Coſtus*, by the *Perſians*, and *Arabs* commonly call'd *Koſt*; but by the firſt of them more parcularly *Koſt talk*, that is, bitter *Coſtus*, to diſtinguiſh it from the ordinary Sort brought from

Perſian *Language.*

Coſtus.

from *India*, which they name *Koſt Scherin*, that is, ſweet *Coſtus*.

When *Iambxed* had built the City *Schiraz*, and ſettled his Court in it, he apply'd himſelf to regulate the Government, which till then had been confuſe, and diſorderly. He committed the general Care of it to Men of known Wiſdom; gave a diſtinct Juriſdiction to Soldiery; order'd the Husbandmen, and Peaſants not to intermeddle with other Affairs, and preſcrib'd Bounds to Handicrafts, giving Rules, and Methods to them all, ſo that each Condition might be ſatisfy'd in their Calling. He enacted wholeſome Laws, and ſtudy'd the Good of all his People, by which means *Perſia*, in his Days, enjoy'd Peace, Plenty, and Health, till all this Proſperity was converted into Miſery, and Trouble, for *Iambxed*, puff'd up with Succeſs, and Proſperity, and attributing all to his own Wiſdom, and Power, caus'd himſelf to be ador'd as a God, ordering his Statues to be ſet up in publick Places, and all Perſons to pay him divine Honours under Pain of Death. This his Folly, and Preſumption was not long unpuniſh'd; for a famous General, call'd *Ahad*, Kinſman to *Iambxed*, revolting in the Province of *Sagiſtam*, rais'd a powerful Army, and gave the Command of it to his Nephew *Zoahk*, who march'd to *Schiraz*, where he found *Iambxed* ready to receive him, with no leſs numerous Forces, whom he fought, and routed. *Iambxed* fled, but was taken, and brought to *Zoahk*, who caus'd him to be kill'd in his Preſence; leaving a very young Son call'd *Frayhdun*, by a

Government regulated.

Iambxed ador'd as a God.

Is kill'd.

Woman whoſe Name was *Framak*; who hearing of *Iambxed*'s Diſaſter, abſconded with her Son, where ſhe could not be found.

Chap. VII.

Zoahk uſurps the Crown of Perſia, *and is the Sixth King, makes Search for* Frayhdun; Kaoah *riſes, and kills him, and puts* Fraydhun *into Poſſeſſion of the Kingdom.*

Zoahk the Uſurper took Poſſeſſion of the Throne, being Nephew to *Iambxed*, deſcended from *Kayumarras*, and Son to *Helwan*, a Renowned Man, lineally deſcended in a direct Line from the Kings of *Arabia*.

Zoahk Learned, but baſe. This *Zoahk* was much addicted to the Study of Natural Philoſophy, and well skill'd in it; but in other Reſpects of a perverſe Inclination, paſſionate, deform'd, of a dreadful Countenance, and hated by all Men. He had a long Life, and much of it healthy; but after he had been ſome time ſetled in the Government, he fell ſick of a Diſtemper, the Phyſicians could never find any Cure for. Being in Deſpair of recovering, and mov'd by the Inſtigation of the Devil, at the Perſwaſion of ſome Sorcerer, he fancy'd nothing could cure him, but an Oyntment made freſh every Day, with Men's Brains, and was ſo poſitive in this Conceit, that he immediatley

Falls Sick.

His inhuman Cure.

put

put it in Execution, cauſing many Perſons of both Sexes, and all Ages to be kill'd. This horrid Practice was the occaſion of much Slaughter throughout the City; which mov'd the wiſer ſort to ſpeak to *Zoahk*, and perſwade him, not to make uſe of ſo inhuman a Medicin; and they prevail'd that he ſhould ſupply it with Sheeps Brains, inſtead of thoſe of Men, alledging many Reaſons, why they were more proper for the end he deſign'd them. Yet neither did theſe, nor the others afford any Relief to his Diſeaſe, which is ſaid to have been caus'd by Two Worms, or Snakes that gnaw'd his Vitals. In this Miſery he liv'd ſome Years, during which time, he is reported one Night to have Dreamt, that Three Men came up to him, one of which kill'd him with a ſtroke of a Club on the Head, and the other Two, taking off his Girdle, ty'd his Feet with it, and dragg'd him to the Mountains of *Damaoand*. *His Dream*

Girdles, or Saſhes ever were, and ſtill are Badges of Honour, and Dignity in *Perſia*, and by their Workmanſhip, and the matter they are made of, the Quality of each Perſon is known, and therefore we make mention of them. The Golden is Nobler than that which is of Silver, that which is adorn'd with precious Stones, more honourable than either, and others of ſmaller value proportionably leſs. Thus every Man at Court wears a Saſh, or Girdle ſuitable to his Poſt; but new marry'd People, during the Wedding Solemnity, are allow'd to wear Saſhes, or Feathers, which are alſo Tokens of Nobility, and I have ſeen ſome of them. Theſe Girdles are generally *Girdles, or Saſhes Badges of Honour, in Perſia.*

nerally like those formerly worn by the Women in *Spain*, and *Portugal*. Nor is this only us'd in *Persia*; for in *China*, the principal Distinction of the *Mandarines*, who are the Magistrates, and Officers, to denote their Post, and Authority, is a Girdle and a particular sort of Cap, without which they cannot sit in Judgment, or give any Orders; nor whilst they have them on can they be Try'd, or Punish'd; but must first be stripp'd of these Ornaments. To this purpose I will here tell what hap'ned in *China*, to a *Portugueſe*, that was made a *Mandarine*, when first that Nation Traded thither. He was by that King rais'd to the Dignity of a Judge, and happen'd to Convict a *Chineſe Mandarine*, his Inferior, of some Offence, which deserv'd Punishment, which generally among the People of that Country consists in Bastinadoing, with a sort of Cudgels they call *Hupos*. The *Portugueſe* was so hot, and hasty, that he caus'd him to be Bastinado'd with the Ensigns of his Dignity on; which was so highly resented, that he was depos'd, and all his Nation declar'd incapable of any Employment ever after. This was afterwards confirm'd upon Experience of their Injustice, which hap'ned in this manner. A Slave belonging to a *Portugueſe* having kill'd a *Chineſe*, was taken by those People, and proceeded against to Conviction; then they carry'd the Prisoner before the *Portugueſe* Judge, residing at *Macao*, a *Portugueſe* Colony in an Island, on the Coast of *China*, near the City of *Canton*. They brought the Criminal, and laid the Process before the said Judge in Court; for him to give Judgment,

The same in China.

Portugues Injustice.

ment, according to the Laws of *Portugal*. He to ſave that Man, and for his own Intereſt acquitted him, for it was affirm'd, that the Maſter of the Slave had corrupted him, with the Promiſe of a *Bahar* of Silk, which is Three Hundred Weight. The *Chineſes* being ſenſible of this inſolent Proceeding, deliver'd the Slave; but for the future were more upon their Guard. They behav'd themſelves after a quite different manner, in a Caſe, which is a great Demonſtration of their Integrity, and I will briefly recount, as well worthy to be known. A Butcher was accus'd of Fraud, in the Weight of the Meat he Sold, as being an Ounce ſhort in every *Caſe*, conſiſting of Twenty Ounces, upon Conviction, it was adjudg'd that for as long a time as he had practis'd that Cheat, he ſhould in every *Caſe*, or Twenty Ounces allow as much more as he had before given ſhort, to the end that thus the Publick might receive Satisfaction the ſame way it had been wrong'd. The Judgment was executed, and when the time was expir'd, they hang'd the Butcher for the Offence he had been guilty of, and thus he ſuffer'd the Puniſh'd, and made Reſtitution. Such is the Government of the *Chineſes*, who among the reſt have this Law, that if a Merchant Breaks, the Creditor that truſted him laſt with Goods, or Mony, has the Preference before all others, and is firſt Paid. The Reaſon they alledge for it is, becauſe ſay they, it's moſt juſt that the Goods found ſhould belong to the laſt that dealt with him, and not to thoſe before, all whoſe Stock is ſpent, and gone. To return to the

Juſtice of Chineſes.

Notable Chineſe Law.

the Girdles, or Saſhes, it appears they denote ſome Preheminence among the *Javaneſes*, tho' they are a barbarous, and unpoliſhed People, and they look upon them as principal Ornaments, and ſigns of Gentility; for the beſt Commodity that can be carry'd among them is, a ſort of Girdles, made at *Cambaya*, in *India*, thence tranſported to *Malaca*, and ſo to *Java*, being made of Silk, curiouſly wrought, call'd *Patolas*, well known among the *Indian* Merchants, ſome whereof are for Kings, and Princes, others for Noblemen, and others for the common Sort. We alſo read in the Book of *Maccabees* Chap. 10. That *Alexander*, King of *Egypt*, intending to honour *Jonathan*, ſent him a Gold Girdle, then uſually worn by the Kings Kindred, Relations, and Favourites; and thus much may ſuffice touching Girdles.

Girdles in Java.

In Egypt.

To return to *Zoahk*, he wak'd out of his Dream, crying out aloud; call'd together all his Wiſe Men, and told them his Dream. They declar'd, it was their Opinion he would be depriv'd of his Kingdom, and Life. He apprehended that Diſaſter might be brought upon him by *Frayhdun*, the Son of *Iamxed*; for whom he caus'd ſtrict ſearch to be made, was inform'd where he was, and went himſelf to find him; but his Mother *Framak* hid him. *Zoahk* inrag'd that he could not find him, vented his Malice upon *Aſpeon*, Father to *Framak*, and kill'd him. When he was gone, *Framak* to remove all Suſpition there might be grounded on her continuing in that Place, went away, recommending the Care of her Son to a Herdſman. *Zoahk* made a ſecond ſearch for *Frayhdun*,

Zoahk's Dream expounded.

Searches for Frayhdun.

Frayhdun, whom, and himself the Cow-herd hid in a Cave, he had made for that purpose, and not being to be found, *Zoahk* reveng'd himself on the Cows, causing many of them to be Slaughter'd. In the City *Hisphaon*, or *Ispahan*, as we call it, being the Capital of the Province of *Hierak*, in *Persia*, and sometimes the Residence of it's Kings, liv'd a powerful, and brave Man, call'd *Kaoah*, with the Additon of *Angar*, which in the *Persian*, signifies a Smith, and for his living in *Hisphaon*, they farther gave him the Name of *Hisphaony*. *Zoahk* had kill'd Two Sons of his, Men of Worth, and Note, and he thirsting after Revenge, conspir'd with others that were disgusted at *Zoahk*, to surprize *Zoahk*'s Garrison at *Hisphaon*, as accordingly they did, killing, and taking many Prisoners, so that they made themselves Masters of the City. Having provided for the Security of the Place *Kaoah* rais'd all the Forces he could, and began to overrun the Lands of *Persia*, taking several Cities, which surrend'red without any Opposition. *Zoahk*'s Forces attack'd him several times, and were as often overthrown. He encourag'd by Success, regulated his Army, and march'd directly towards *Damaoand*, the Residence of *Zoahk*, in his way taking the City *Hrey*, formerly Capital of the Kingdom of the same Name, adjoyning to *Korason*.

Kaoah *rises against* Zoahk.

This City of *Hrey* is Famous, both for it's Greatness, and for some things it is stor'd with, among which I shall only speak of the *Manna*, in regard it is the best, and purest hitherto known in the World, and great Quantities of it are transported thence to *Ormuz*, and from that City throughout all the

Hrey *City has the best Manna.*

the Eaſt. *Manna* in the *Perſian* Tongue is called *Schir queſt*, ſignifying the Milk of the Tree *Queſt*, from *Schir*, which is Milk in their Language; tho' it alſo ſignifies a Lion, and *Queſt* is the Name of the Tree it flows from. There is alſo much of it gather'd about another City of *Perſia*, call'd *Rey Scharear*, in the Province of *Hierak*, but not ſo good. There is another Sort of *Manna* in ſeveral Parts of *Perſia*, which they call *Toraniabin*, very like the Seed of dry Coriander, growing upon a ſort of Plant like wild Thiſtles, and this is extraordinary fine, and ſafe; and as ſuch the *Perſians* commonly give it to Infants, and Women with Child, when out of order, and double the Quantity of what they adminiſter of the other. On the Coaſt of *Africk*, towards the *Indian* Sea, near *Mozambique*, are Two Iſlands, *Aniza*, and *Querinba*, where there is alſo a conſiderable Quantity of Manna gather'd; but much inferior to all that above mention'd in Goodneſs; for whereas that of *Perſia* is White, Soft, Sweet, well Taſted, and in Grains, like thoſe of Frankincenſe, or Maſtick; that of the ſaid Iſlands is hard, in Lumps, of a browniſh Red, hot in the Mouth, and not ſo Laxative, tho' it's Operation is good. From *Bazora*, a City at the bottom of the *Perſian* Gulph, on the Rivers *Tigris*, and *Euphrates*, is brought a ſort of *Manna* in Skins, being like thick Honey. All *Manna* whatſoever is the Gum of a Tree, produc'd as others are; and what they tell of the Dew, and other Stories relating to it, are all Inventions, or Miſ-informations.

Other Sorts of it.

What it is.

As ſoon as *Kaoah Angar Hiſphaony* had poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Hrey*, he took a Review of his

his Forces, and acquainted them, that all he had done till then, proceeded from his Zeal for the Liberty of his Country; that now the Enemy was before them, at a ſmall Diſtance, and therefore before he came to a Battle, he thought it convenient to find out a Perſon that ſhould govern them, in caſe it pleas'd God to give him the Victory. They all unanimouſly ſaluted him King, alledging, that Honour was due to none but him for his Valour, and Worth. He excus'd himſelf, declaring he would not ſully all his Actions with the Title of an Uſurper. *Frayhdun* was propos'd, he caus'd him to be found out, brought into the Army, and Proclaim'd King, delivering up to him all the Treaſure he had. Then ranging their Battle, they March'd towards *Zoahk*, who advanc'd to meet them. The Battle prov'd Bloody, but *Zoahk* was routed, and taken; and being brought before *Frayhdun*, they daſh'd out his Brains with a Club, then taking off his Girdle, ty'd his Feet with it, and dragg'd him to the Mountains of *Damaoand*, as he had Dreamt. *Zoahk* by the *Perſians* extolling his Knowledge in natural Philoſophy, by his long Life, and the Similitude of the Names, may be ſuppos'd to be the ſame as *Zoroaſtes*.

Kaoah *refuſes the Crown.*

Kills Zoahk, who is thought to be Zoroaſtes.

CHAP.

Chap. VIII.

Frayhdun, *the Seventh King of* Persia; *being rais'd to the Throne of* Persia; *entertains, and honours* Kaoah, *marries, and has Children, they make War among themselves, and other Particulars till his Death.*

THE aforesaid Victory being obtain'd over *Zoahk*, upon whose Death *Frayhdun* was seated on the Throne of *Persia*, he apply'd himself to the Government of it, and having settled all things at Home, sent *Kaoah*, whom he appointed General of all his Forces, with a considerable Army towards *Mogareb*, that is, the Western Countries; and his own Kinsman *Garracef*, with another towards *Maxarek*, that is, the East, to Conquer. *Kaoah* spent 20 Years abroad, during which time he subdu'd several Kingdoms, and Provinces, and at the end of it *Frayhdun* call'd him home, and made him Lord of *Hisphaon*, and *Aderbaion*. He was well receiv'd by those People, whom he govern'd to theirs, and the Kings liking for Ten Years, and then dy'd, much Regretted by *Frayhdun*, who left his Goods to his Relations, and sent for his Children to Court, whom he Honour'd and Preferr'd.

Kaoah *General.*

Frayhdun took to Wife a Daughter of *Zoahk*, whom he had kill'd, and besides an elder Son call'd *Irege*, by a Noble *Persian* Woman, had Two by this, whom he nam'd *Salur*, and *Tur*, which Two prov'd Wicked, and

Frayhdun's *Wives, and Children.*

F. Lamsvelt. fec

and of their Grandfather *Zoahk*'s Disposition. *Irege* was Courteous, and Affable, and therefore belov'd, honour'd, and respected by all Men, which was a great Satisfaction to his Father, who lov'd him better than the others. *Persia* at that time flouriſh'd in Peace, and Power, and *Frayhdun*, who labour'd under Age, and Infirmities, intending to ſettle the Affairs of his Kingdom, Aſſembled the Nobility, and propoſing to them the Affair of the Succeſſion, ask'd their Advice about it. They all unanimouſly Voted for *Irege*, which was pleaſing to *Frayhdun*; yet believing it might be a means to prevent Troubles, he divided his Dominions among them after this manner. To *Salm* he gave *Magareb*, that is, the Weſtern Countries; to *Tur*, *Maxarek*, or the Eaſtern, and to *Irege*, *Perſia*, *Aſſyria*, and *Meſopotamia*, with the Title of King, and Soveraignty over his Brothers. Having aſſign'd each of them the Limits of their Juriſdiction, he ſent the Two, with each an Army, into their Dominions, that is *Salm* into the Weſt, and *Tur* to the Eaſt. *Divides his Dominions among them.*

Tur being come into the Dominions his Father had given him, pitch'd upon a Place he thought moſt convenient, where he founded a City, from his Name call'd *Turon*, as was that whole Kingdom, and Country *Turkeſtam*, which it ſtill retains. The City is ſeated above the *Caſpian* Sea, at a ſmall diſtance Eaſtward, in the Lands call'd *Maurenahar*. This was the firſt Riſe, and Original of the *Turks*, and hence they came and poſſeſs'd themſelves of what they now hold. So that the City, and Kingdom of *Turon* and *Turkeſtam*, ſignifying the Province, *Turon City built by Tur.* *Original of Turks.*

or Country of *Tur*, had their Names from this *Tur*, and not from the *Teucri*, nor *Thracians*, and in the ſame manner they call the Lands, or Region of *India*, *Induſtan*; that of *Arabia*, *Arabiſtam*; and that of the *Rumes*, or *Romans*, *Rumeſtam*; and the Men of *Turon*, or *Turkeſtam*, the *Perſians*, and *Arabs* call, *Turk*, or *Turkmans*. This ſhows how ridiculous, and groundleſs any other Original aſſign'd to the *Turks* is; and for as much as theſe Two Names of *Turk*, and *Rume*, are generally confounded, eſpecially by the *Portugueſes* in the Eaſt, as not knowing the difference there is between them, I will here briefly give an Account of it. Tho' there are ſeveral Nations ſerving in the *Turkiſh* Armies, they are commonly reduc'd to theſe Two Sorts of *Turks*, and *Rumes*. The firſt are thoſe, we have but now ſpoken of, or their Of-ſpring, who leaving the Country of *Turkeſtam*, invaded *Perſia*, as they had done ſeveral times before, and will appear in the Sequel of this Hiſtory. Theſe in proceſs of time, advancing ſtill forward, at laſt poſſeſſed themſelves of the Empire of *Conſtantinople*, which they ſtill hold, and is by us call'd *Turky*, becauſe ſubject to the *Turks*, and their chief Place of Reſidence. The *Perſians*, *Arabs*, and other Eaſtern Nations, call all thoſe *Rumes* who ſerve under the *Turkiſh* Banners, and came not from *Turkeſtam*, nor are deſcended from thoſe that did, and the Word ſignifies the ſame as *Romans*, for when *Conſtantine* the Great tranſlated the Empire from *Rome* to *Bizantium*, calling it *Conſtantinople*, that is, the City of *Conſtantine*, by the *Perſians* nam'd *Conſtantinea*, and

by

by the *Turks*, and *Arabs* corruptly *Iſtambol*, the *Greeks* call'd thoſe that came with him *Romi*, importing *Romans*; and the *Turks* and *Perſians* pronouncing the Word amiſs, ſay *Rumy*; and by this Denomination they always did, and ſtill do diſtinguiſh all that are of thoſe Parts, whether *Greeks*, or of any other Nation formerly ſubject to the *Grecian* Empire, but more properly the *Greeks* themſelves. Thus *Turk*, or *Turkman* ſignifies a Man come from *Turkeſtam*, and *Rumy* as it were a *Roman*, ſignifies a *Greek*; and the Name of *Frangue* denotes any Chriſtian whatſoever, becauſe the *French* were the firſt known in thoſe Parts, which they enter'd with their Arms. Hence it is that as we call the Venereal Diſeaſe, the *French* Pox, ſo the *Perſians* call it, *Doney Franguy*, ſignifying the ſame. The *Canarines*, an Eaſtern Nation in *India*, with ſome ſmall corruption, name the *Portugueſes*, and white *European* Chriſtians *Franguy*, and the Pox *Fringuy*. I ſay the white and *European* Chriſtians, to diſtinguiſh them from the Black ones of the Eaſt, whom they call by the Name of *Naſarah*, being an *Arabick* Word, which the *Portugueſes* pronounce *Naſaranes*, (and doubtleſs comes from *Nazareth*.) By what has been ſaid, it will be eaſy for the future to underſtand, that when we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak of *Turon*, or *Turkeſtam*, it ſignifies *Turky*; not that Country we now call ſo, on account of it's being ſubject to the *Turks*, but that properly ſo call'd above the *Caſpian* Sea, whence thoſe People came. So when we mention *Rumeſtan*, it imports the *Roman*,

Frangue *any* European.

or *Constantinopolitan* Empire, and by the King of the *Rumes*, or of *Rumestan* is meant the *Roman*, or *Greek* Emperor, and at present the *Grand-Seignior*; tho' they also give him the Title of *Cayſar Rumy*, that is, *Roman Cæſar*, as ſhall be obſerv'd in it's Place.

Salm, and *Tur* rebel.

To return to *Salm*, and *Tur*, they were both diſſatisfy'd to be Subject to a Baſtard Brother, reſolv'd to caſt off the Yoke, and having advis'd together by Letter, took the Field with each of them an Army. They joyn'd in the Province of *Aderbaion*, and thence writ to their Father *Frayhdun*, complaining of the wrong he did in preferring their Baſtard Brother before them, which was the Occaſion of their advancing to that Place, yet as ſoon as he was depos'd from that Honour, and Soveraignty, they would immediately return peaceably from whence they came, otherwiſe they ſhould be oblig'd to maintain their Right. This was a great Surprize to *Frayhdun*, who order'd *Irege* to prepare to meet them with all poſſible Speed. *Irege* was for compoſing this Difference by fair means without Bloodſhed, and therefore propos'd to his Father, to go treat with them, who would not conſent, but reprov'd him ſeverely. Yet he being zealous for the Peace, and Welfare of the Kingdom, and hoping to prevail upon his Brothers, went away to them, taking along with him ſeveral of the wiſeſt, and graveſt Men about the Court. They having obtain'd their Wiſh, as ſoon as they had him, chopp'd off his Head, and ſent it to his Father, who,

Behead their Brother Irege.

who being touch'd at that dismal Sight, rent his Garments, expressing most grievous Sorrow. *Irege* left a Son, call'd *Manucher*, whom *Frayhdun* substituted in his Father's Place, and he made War on *Salm*, and *Tur*, never desisting till he had overthrown them in Battle. They, to save their Lives, lay down among the Dead, but being carefully sought after, were found, and brought before *Manucher*, who as he sate on Horseback cut off *Tur*'s Head, with his Sword; and *Salm* drop'd down Dead with Fear. Thus they both ended their Days, and of their Armies, above 200000 Men were made Prisoners, besides those that fled and were kill'd. *Frayhdun* was now become Blind, and very Sickly, so that when *Manucher* came to him, after his Victory, not seeing, he ask'd who he was? He answer'd, I am your Grandson *Manucher*, the Revenger of *Irege*'s Blood, and Slayer of *Salm*, and *Tur*. *Frayhdun* hearing these Words, embrac'd, and kissing him often, with extraordinary Tokens of Affection, and Joy, took the *Tage*, or Golden *Cap*, which was the same as the Crown among us, from his own Head, and put it on his, as a Confirmation of his bestowing the Kingdom on him. Then appointing *Som*, the Son of *Narimon*, a brave, and wise Man, his *Wazir*, or *Prime Vizier*, he died well pleas'd. *Frayhdun* was a good King, Wise, and a favourer of such as were so; very Resolute, and Generous, and there are many honourable Stories told of him, which I pass by for Brevity sake. According to the *Persian* Computation, they

Manucher Irege's Son routs them.

Frayhdun dies.

tell us, that *Abraham* liv'd in the Days of this King *Frayhdun*.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Manucher *the Eighth King of* Perſia.

Manucher, the Son of *Irege*, and Grand-ſon of *Frayhdun*, having taken upon him the Government of his Kingdoms, and conſidering the great extent thereof, ſent his *Wazier*, or *Vizier Som Narimon* to rule the Eaſtern Parts. During his Reſidence there he had a Son Born to him, who came into the World cover'd all over with thick white Hair. *Som Narimon* was much ſurpriz'd, and concern'd at this unuſual Birth, gave the Infant the Name of *Zal*, and took Care of his Education. *Manucher* hearing of this Child, ſent for him, he was carry'd to Court by his Father, and the King having ſeen him, conſulted his Wiſe Men about that ſtrange Accident, who all aſſur'd him, the Boy would prove a renowned Warrior. The King took a Kindneſs to him, and order'd he ſhould be left at Court, where he was bred up, till of Age to be aſſiſtant to his Father *Som Narimon*, to whom he then went, and being found of a pregnant Wit, was by him appointed Governor of the Lands of *Nimrues*, that is, the Southern Country, where *Zal* reſided, ſpending what leiſure time he had in Hunting. He hap'ned once

Strange Birth of Zal.

once to be ſo intent upon that Sport, that paſſing beyond his own Limits, he enter'd upon the Government of *Kabulſtam*, which was alſo ſubordinate to his Father, who had put it under the Direction of one of his Commanders call'd *Merahb*. This Man being inform'd of his coming, went out to meet and receive him, with Preſents of very great Value, and having kiſſ'd his Hand, ſet up Tents for him in the Field, according to his Quality, and return'd home himſelf, where he never ceas'd extolling *Zal*'s Virtue, good Qualities, and Bravery, before his Wife, and a moſt beautiful Daughter he had, call'd *Rudabah*. This ſo far prevail'd upon the Maiden, that ſhe fell in Love, without ſeeing him, which ſhe contriv'd to let him know, and to that purpoſe ſent many beautiful Women Slaves ſhe had into the Fields, to gather Flowers, with Orders in their Return home, to paſs by *Zal*'s Tent, who ſaw them, and ask'd, who they were? Anſwer was made, that they were Slaves belonging to the beautiful *Rudabah*, Daughter to *Merahb*, whoſe Form and Perfections were highly extoll'd. *Zal* ſoon found himſelf inclin'd to love, and contriv'd to have ſome Meſſages paſs between them, till at length they had a private Interview, joyn'd Hands, and made a ſolemn Engagement to marry one another. This done, *Zal* took his leave of *Merahab*, and return'd to *Numruz*, where he was ſo melancholy, and reſtleſs, for the Want of *Rudabah*'s Company, that not being able any longer to bear it, he went away to his Father *Som Narimon*, whom he acquainted with his Paſ-

Amours of Zal *and* Rudabah.

sion, begging they might both go to Court, to obtain the King's Leave for him to marry, which his Father could not refuse him. Accordingly they repair'd to the King's Presence, who, tho' with some Reluctancy, gave his Consent. They return'd to *Kabulstam*, where the Nuptials of *Zal*, and *Rudabah* were celebrated, the Fruit whereof was a Son call'd *Rostam*, for whose sake this is so particularly mention'd, because we shall have much occasion to speak of him hereafter.

Afrasiab rebells.

Manucher had now govern'd his Dominions in Peace, for the space of Fifty Years, when a Commander call'd *Afrasiab*, the Son of *Paxangh*, King of *Turquestam*, rebell'd in that Country, on Pretence of revenging the Death of *Tur*, raising Men, and forming an Army, to invade *Persia*. *Manucher* met, and gave him Battle, but was overthrown, and pursu'd by *Afrasiab* to the Fortress of *Amal*, where he shut himself up, and was besieg'd by his Enemy, who having in vain summon'd him to surrender, resolv'd not to depart till he was Master of the Place. His Commanders were of another Opinion, because the Fort was impregnable, and well provided with all Necessaries, besides, that Winter was at Hand, and they wanted Provisions. However *Afrasiab* was positive, not to depart, and they no less resolute not to stay, which he understanding, and apprehending some ill Consequence, he propos'd some Accommodation with *Manucher*. The Treaty was manag'd by one *Arexe*, a wise and experienc'd Man, who brought it to a Conclusion, appointing the famous River *Jehun*, the

Routs Manucher.

Boundary

Boundary between *Perſia*, and *Turqueſtam*. The Peace being ratify'd on both ſides, *Afraſiab* went away to *Turon*, or *Turqueſtam*, and *Manucher* departing the Fortreſs of *Amal*, took his way through the City *Rey*, to *Sagiſtam*, where he kept his Court. No ſooner had *Afraſiab* left *Perſia*, than *Manucher* began to raiſe Forces againſt him, and he hearing of it return'd, and waſted that Country; but *Manucher* fell upon him with ſuch Fury, that he was routed, and many of his Men taken. *Manucher* having reign'd many Years, and being grown old and ſickly, dy'd, leaving the Crown to his Son *Naudar*, with much prudent and wholeſome Advice for the Government of his People.

They make Peace.

Manucher dies.

CHAP. X.

Of Naudar, *the Ninth King of* Perſia, *who is taken, and kill'd by* Afraſiab.

THE News of *Manucher's* Death, and *Naudar's* ſucceeding in the Throne, was ſoon brought into *Turkeſtam*, where *Paxangb* the King of that Country, and Father to *Afraſiab*, calling together his Sons, adviſ'd them not to let ſlip ſuch an Opportunity. *Afraſiab*, as beſt acquainted with the Affairs of *Perſia*, was the forwardeſt, and gathering an Army of Four Hundred Thouſand Horſe and Foot, march'd towards *Sagiſtam*. *Naudar* hearing of it, immediately ſent Orders to *Som Narimon*, Father to *Zal*, who ſtill govern'd *Kabulſtam*, tho' very old,

to

to joyn him as ſoon as poſſible, with all the Forces he could gather, which he did, and they conſulted together what was beſt to be done. *Som* advanc'd to meet *Afraſiab*, but dy'd by the way of Age, which much rejoyc'd *Afraſiab*. *Naudar* thinking *Som* was before him, marched with the reſt of the Troops, by the way of *Mazandaron*, and when he leaſt thought of it, met with the Enemy, halted, and encamped. It was an Antient Cuſtom in the Wars between the *Perſians*, and their Neighbour Nations, to begin their Battles by ſingle Combats, after which the Armies engag'd. Thus both Parties being in Sight, a Soldier call'd *Bazmon* come forward from among the *Turks*, to give the Challenge, and was anſwer'd on the *Perſian* Side by one *Kabad*, Grandſon to *Kaoah Angar*, before ſpoken of in the Life of *Frayhdun*. They fought, and *Kobad* kill'd *Bazmon*, returning to the Camp with his Spoils. The *Turks* provok'd by this Diſgrace, immediately drew out and fell upon *Naudar*. In the Heat of the Battle there fell ſuch a heavy Rain, and it grew ſo dark, that the Two Armies were parted. *Naudar* was ſufficiently convinc'd by this firſt Shock, that he was not able to withſtand *Afraſiab*; and therefore calling Two Sons he had with him, the one call'd *Thus*, and the other *Goſtam*, he bid them go away to *Sagiſtam*, with *Caren* Brother to that *Kobad*, who fought in ſingle Combat, where gathering their Family and Treaſure, they ſhould convey them to *Abbors Kuh*; which as was ſaid before is the Mountain, where the Heathen *Perſians* to this Day keep, and worſhip the Fire. *Afraſiab* was inform'd of the

New War with Afraſiab.

Single Combat.

the Orders *Naudar* had given, and ſent after them one of his Commanders call'd *Karahbon*, who overtook and engag'd them. *Caren* was kill'd, but the Princes eſcap'd. In the mean while, *Afraſiab* perceiving that *Naudar* diſmay'd, attack'd him again, and overthrew him, killing abundance of *Perſians*, and taking all that eſcap'd alive contrary to his own Inclination; for he order'd they ſhould be all put to the Sword, but his Brother *Agarirés* obſtructed it. *Naudar* and moſt of his Commanders were made Priſoners, whom *Afraſiab* caus'd to be ſecur'd in a Fort. After this Victory, *Afraſiab* ſent away one of his Commanders with Thirty Thouſand Men to *Sagiſtam Naudar*'s Court, which he eaſily gain'd. The Fame of this Victory was ſoon ſpread abroad, and being brought to *Merahb*, Father in Law to *Zal*, he ſpeedily made up a conſiderable Preſent, of valuable Things, and ſent it to *Afraſiab*, giving him to underſtand, that he was deſcended from the Family of *Zoahk* his Kinſman, and Subject to the Kings of *Perſia* by Compulſion; but that ſince there was Kindred between them, he was more willing to ſerve him, and pay the ſame he had done to the others. At the ſame time, he gave Advice very privately, and with all Expedition to his Son in Law *Zal*, of what was tranſacting. He hearing it, gather'd ſome Forces, and making all poſſible haſte came to *Sagiſtam*, which being unprovided, he eaſily poſſeſs'd himſelf of. *Afraſiab* was much concern'd at this Accident, and in a Rage order'd *Naudar*'s Head to be cut off, who dy'd thus, when he had reign'd Seven Years.

Naudar *routed and taken.*

His Death.

CHAP.

Chap. XI.

Afrasiab *subdues* Persia; *the* Persians *assisted by his Brother* Agarires, *revolt against him, for which he puts him to Death.*

Afrasiab having subdu'd *Persia*, his Father *Paxangh* became King of it, and *Turkestam*; but *Afrasiab* govern'd tyrannically, which provok'd the *Persians* to conspire against him, imploring the Assistance of *Agarires*, by the Interposition of one *Kaharen*, a wise and brave *Persian*. He directed them to call *Zal*, and begin the War, and they should soon see how much he would do for them. *Zal*, who was then at *Sagistam*, was sent to, who came speedily, and having provided all Things, commenc'd the War, sending *Ghexuad*, a famous Commander towards *Tabrastam*, to stir up those Countries. This could not be done so privately, but that *Afrasiab* had notice of it, who being thoroughly inform'd of what was in hand, and that his Brother *Agarires* held Intelligence with the *Persians*, caus'd him to be kill'd. *Zal* was much concern'd at his Death, and made use of it to incense the *Persians* against the *Turks*, marching towards them with his Forces, and tho' they were stronger, did not refuse to come to a Battle; which having lasted all the Day with great Slaughter, Night parted them, without any visible Advantage on either side. They both return'd to their Camps, where they continu'd

Zal makes War on Afrasiab.

Agarires kill'd.

tinu'd Seven Months with many Skirmishes, wherein abundance of Men were destroy'd. Both Camps suffer'd equally through Want, and contagious Distempers, which oblig'd them to propose some Accommodation, and *Afrasiab* was content to retire to *Turon*, quitting *Persia*, after he had been possess'd of it Twelve Years.

Chap. XII.

Of Bazab *the Tenth King of* Persia.

After *Frasiab* being expell'd, the *Persians* put the Government into the Hands of *Bazab*, of the Blood Royal, and above Eighty Years of Age when he enter'd upon it; and being so old took his Nephew *Garxacef* for his Associate in the Throne. This *Bazab* taking into Consideration, the Miseries and Hardships the *Persians* lay under, by reason of the late Wars, endeavour'd to preserve Peace, during his Reign, which he did, and for his Life, which was not long, generously remitted all Taxes, that the People might recover their Losses. For the Improvement of the Country he brought into it Two Rivers from afar off, the Names whereof were *Habyn*, and *Raz Habyn*. He never had any Treasure, nor endeavour'd to have it; but as soon as any considerable Sum of Mony came into his Hands, distributed it among his Officers, and Soldiers; yet was a great Epicure, and much

His good Governments.

much addicted to eating, and drinking, ſo that he invented ſeveral ways of dreſſing Meat; and this is all that *Mirkond* ſays of him, worth obſerving.

Chap. XIII.

Of Kaykobad *the Eleventh King of* Perſia; Afraſiab *overthrown in Battle, and Peace reſtor'd.*

Kaykobad, the Grandſon of *Naudar*, ſucceeded *Bazab* in the Throne, and appointed *Roſtam*, the Son of *Zal*, and Grandſon of *Som*, General of his Army. Forces were rais'd, and the King march'd, attended by *Merahb*, Grandfather to *Roſtam*, *Ghexuad*, *Kabaren*, and other famous Commanders. *Afraſiab* met him with a more numerous Army, and they came to a Battle, in which *Roſtam* perform'd ſuch Feats, that *Afraſiab* in a Fear, demanded a Truce for Two Days, which was granted, he propos'd in Council to treat of Peace, and offer'd it to *Kaykobad*, who would have accepted of it, but that the *Perſians* were averſe. The Fight was renew'd, and *Afraſiab* routed in this ſecond Engagement. In the Heat of the Action, *Roſtam* deſir'd to have *Afraſiab* ſhown him, whom as ſoon as he ſaw, he encounter'd, and being wonderful ſtrong, eaſily forc'd him out of his Saddle, and binding his Feet with a Rope, which all *Perſian* Soldiers did then, and ſtill uſe

to

to carry about them, to draw Water out of Wells, and for other Purpoſes, dragg'd him along among the dead, as he gallop'd. But *Afraſiab* being ſubtle, loos'd himſelf, and made faſt a dead Body in his ſtead, ſo dexterouſly, that he was not perceiv'd, and by that means made his Eſcape at this time. *Roſtam* came before the King, well pleas'd, believing he had brought *Afraſiab*, and preſented him as ſuch; but diſcovering his Miſtake, was out of Countenance, and begg'd his Pardon, promiſing he would not be ſo impos'd upon another time. *Afraſiab* made his way into *Turkeſtam*, whence he ſent an Embaſſador to *Kaykobad*, ſuing for Peace, which was granted. Then *Kaykobad* generouſly diſtributed his Treaſure among his Men, and drew back into his own Country, where he behav'd himſelf as became a juſt, and good Prince, during the reſt of his Life. At length, he grew blind, and other Diſeaſes coming on, dy'd at *Hiſphaon*, or *Iſpahan*, the Capital of *Hierach*, where he kept his Court, leaving his Son *Kaykaus* to ſucceed him.

Roſtam deceiv'd by Afraſiab.

Peace concluded.

CHAP.

Chap. XIV.

Kaykaus *the Twelfth King of* Persia, *reduces* Mazandaron, *which had rebell'd; passes on into* Arabia, *where he marries; returns to* Persia, *and what happen'd there, till his Death.*

Kaykaus, as was said above, ascended the Throne, after his Father *Kaykobad's* Death. A *Persian* Commander, taking the Advantage of the late Broils, had rebell'd, with the City, and Province of *Mazandaron*. *Kaykaus* march'd against him, and laid Siege to the Place, which was strong, and well stor'd with Men, and Provisions, so that he attack'd it in vain. Hereupon he pretended to be in Want, and held Intelligence with the besieged, who being inveigh'l by the great Price he gave for all Sorts of Food, sold it without any Consideration, and the Quantity being great, soon felt the Want, which made them fall into the Hands of *Kaykaus*, who could never have reduc'd them any other way.

Policy of Kaykaus.

Where Mazandaron *is.*

This City of *Mazandaron* is one of the famousest in those Parts, seated beyond the Country of *Gueylon* Northwards, near the *Caspian* Sea. The Natives are a robust warlike People, and reckned among the other Subjects of the King of *Persia*. In the Year 1597, when I was that way, one *Malek Sultan Mahomet*, a *Persian* of singular Courage, and Bravery, was Governor of that City, and Province. He had one Arm con-

conſiderably longer than the other, ſo that it reach'd below his Knee, and about that time gave a notable Teſtimony of his Valour; for an Enemy making an Inroad into his Country, with Seven Thouſand Men, he oppoſed him with only Three Hundred, fought, and defeated him in open Field, killing a great Number of his Men. To this purpoſe I remember, that in the City of *Cochim*, there was a Citizen that I convers'd with many times, whoſe Right Arm was very remarkably bigger than the Left; and the Gentiles of *Coromandel*, where he was born, in the City of St. *Thomas*, paid him extraordinary Reſpect, as a wonderful Creature; for the Eaſtern Heathens do great Honour to any thing that is out of the common Courſe of Nature, looking upon it as ſupernatural; as among Trees to any that is remarkably bigger than the reſt of that kind; ſo as an Ox with Two Heads, as I ſaw once at *Goa*; or a Stone of any extraordinary Shape, or Figure. For this Reaſon, that the Pagans might not have the Occaſion offer'd them, that Citizen was forbid travelling through thoſe Countries, without ſpecial Leave.

Bravery of a Perſian.

Indian Superſtition.

Mazandaron being reduc'd, *Kaykaus* took a Progreſs through his Dominions, till he came into *Arabia*, between which and *Perſia* was that great Limb of the Sea call'd the Gulph of *Perſia*. An *Arabian* King, whoſe Name was *Zoulzogar*, met him, they fought, the *Arabian* was routed, and fled, abandoning his Country, and the beſt Fortreſs he had, where his whole Family was, and with it a moſt beautiful Daughter. A Treaty of

Kaykaus routs the Arabians.

Peace was set on foot, and concluded, on Condition, that *Zaulzogar*, should give his Daughter *Saudaba*, that was her Name, in Marriage to *Kaykaus*. She was brought by one of her Brothers, with a Thousand beautiful Women Slaves, and the Nuptials were celebrated, with general Satisfaction.

Marries their King's Daughter.

Whilst this was doing in *Arabia*, *Afrasiab* enter'd the Dominions of *Persia* with an Army, doing much Harm; but was repuls'd by *Kaykaus*'s Garrisons. He having settled the Affairs of the Kingdom of *Ammon*, and the other Lands he possess'd in *Arabia*, return'd to *Persia*, with his Wife *Saudaba*, where he bestow'd the Governments of *Sagistam*, and *Kabulstam*, on *Rostam*, with very great Privileges, and Immunities. Before *Kaykaus* went into *Arabia*, he had a Son, call'd *Syavex*, carefully educated by *Rostam*, virtuous, and belov'd by all Men, which was not pleasing to *Saudaba*, who resolv'd to set him at Variance with the King. To this Purpose, she pretended to love, and made him acquainted with it, whereupon he shunn'd her as much as possible. She waited her Opportunity, when the King had very much Company, and ran in weeping, tearing her Hair, and shrieking, declaring that *Syavex* would have ravish'd her. *Syavex* was secur'd, but upon Examination came off clear. The King would have had her burnt, had not Intreaties, and the Love he bore her prevail'd.

Saudaba's Practices against Syavex.

Afrasiab invades Persia.

News was brought that *Afrasiab*, taking a Compass above the River *Jehun*, was marching towards *Balk*, a City of Note, in the Province of *Uzbek*. *Kaykaus* sent his

Son

Son *Syavex* againſt him, with Twelve Thouſand Horſe, and the ſame Number of Foot, and Orders to paſs by *Sagiſtam*, and take *Roſtam* along with him, with all the Forces he could gather. *Syavex* did ſo, and was honourably receiv'd by *Roſtam*, whence they march'd together, and encamp'd within Two Leagues of the Enemy. Whilſt they lay thus expecting to ingage, it is reported, that *Afraſiab* dreamt Three Nights following, that if he fought, he ſhould be defeated, and dangerouſly wounded. This repeated Dream terrify'd him, and he had Thoughts of making Peace, which he communicated with his Brother *Garceres*, who manag'd the Affair ſo well with *Syavex*, *Roſtam*, and their Council, that they conſented to it. *Kaykaus* being acquainted with it, was much offended, and immediately ſent away his Unkle *Thus*, the Son of *Naudar*, with Letters of Reproof to *Syavex*, and Orders to purſue *Afraſiab*, and give him Battle, whereſoever he could be found, and in Caſe of Refuſal, to deliver up the Army to the Conduct of *Thus*. *Roſtam* took it ill, that the King did not approve of what had been done by *Syavex* and himſelf, and therefore left the Army, and went away to *Kabulſtam*. *Afraſiab* had a Commander in his Army, call'd *Pirond Vayſa*, with whom *Syavex* was acquainted, and entertain'd a friendly Correſpondence, to whom he went, and was by him joyfully conducted to *Afraſiab*. He went out a conſiderable way to meet, and lead him to his Tent, where in Token of Affection, he gave him a Daughter of his own, call'd *Franguys*, to Wife. *Garceres*, Brother

Syavex *goes over to the Enemy.*

Brother to *Afrasiab*, did not approve of this Match, as neither the other great Men of his Court, who thought their Honour concern'd, and conspir'd to murder *Syavex*, and he being inform'd of it, acquainted his Wife *Franguys*, then with Child by him, desiring that in Case he dy'd, and she was deliver'd of a Son, she would give him to any *Persian* that should desire it. Many Days did not pass before the Conspirators slew *Syavex*, and would have done the same by *Franguys*, to destroy the Infant she had in her Womb, but *Pirond Vaysa* secur'd her, and she was deliver'd of a Son, whom they call'd *Kaykozrao*, and by the same *Pirond Vaysa* caus'd to be privately brought up in the Country, till *Guyu*, the Son of *Gudarz*, afterwards carry'd him into *Persia*.

Is kill'd by the Turks.

Kaykozrao *his Son born.*

The Death of *Syavex* was much lamented throughout all *Persia*, and more particularly by his Father, who resolv'd to revenge it, and therefore sent *Rostam* with a considerable Army, and positive Orders to fight *Afrasiab*, which he did, and routed him, killing his Brother *Garceres*, and the same Fate would have befallen him, had he not fled in time. *Rostam* was returning victorious, when News was brought him, that *Schaydah Afrasiab*'s Son, march'd after him, with a fresh Army; *Rostam* halted to expect him, with *Frayborz*, Son to King *Kaykaus*, and Brother to the murder'd *Syavex*. This Prince knowing *Schaydah* in the Battle, ran at him with his Launce, and bore him down to the Ground dead. The *Turks* fled, and he pursu'd his Victory as far as *Turon*, *Afrasiab*'s Court, and Capital of *Turkestam*, which was plunder'd

Afrasiab *routed by* Rostam.

plunder'd by the *Perſians*, of all the vaſt Treaſures laid up in it. *Franguys* Widow to *Syavex*, was in that Place, to whom *Roſtam* ſent to deſire ſhe would ſhow him her Son, ſhe excus'd herſelf, ſaying, ſhe knew not what was become of him. *Roſtam* return'd into *Perſia*, where he was honour'd, and rewarded by the King, and went back to his Government.

King *Kaykaus* was very deſirous to bring his Grandſon *Kaykozrao*, Son to *Syavex*, and *Franguys*, who was at *Turon*, into *Perſia*, and to this Effect, ſent *Guyu*, the Son of *Gudorz*, a noble *Perſian*, very well qualify'd, into *Turqueſtam*. He manag'd ſo well, that coming to *Turon*, he ſaw *Franguys* and *Kaykozrao*, and prevail'd with them to go away into *Perſia*, without any other Attendance, but *Guyu* himſelf, and *Pirond Vayſa*, who being inform'd of their Departure, overtook them on the Road, and went on to Court, where they were receiv'd, and entertain'd by the King, as became ſuch Perſons. Some time after, *Kaykaus* being ſenſible of the great Worth, and many Virtues of his Grandſon *Kaykozrao*, appointed him General of his Army, and beſtow'd ſignal Favours on *Guyu* for his good Service. *Thus*, Unkle to *Kaykaus*, and *Frayborz* his Son, were much offended, that *Kaykozrao* who was his Grandſon, and had the Blood of the greateſt Enemies of *Perſia*, ſhould be preferr'd before them. This occaſion'd Factions, the one for *Frayborz*, ſupported by his Unkle *Thus*; the other for *Kaykozrao*, which *Guyu* took Part with. The King could not reconcile theſe Enmities, and therefore to

Kaykozrao *Grandſon to* Kaykaus.

Factions at Court.

prevent ill Conſequences did thus. One *Bahaman* was Governor of the City *Ardavel*, and being in Rebellion, ravag'd the Lands of *Perſia*. *Kaykaus* form'd Two Armies, equal in Numbers, and Experience, and putting one of the Pretenders at the Head of each, told them, that he who firſt reduc'd that Enemy ſhould have the Preference. They were both ſatisfy'd, and ſet forward. *Frayborz* going foremoſt, did nothing worth ſpeaking of; but *Kaykozraō* fighting *Bahaman*, overthrew him, and reduc'd the City *Ardavel*, then returning to Court was declar'd King, and *Guyu* his General, *Kaykaus* retiring, when he had reign'd many Years.

Ardayil City.

Ardabel, or *Ardavil*, for it is call'd by both Names, is a City in the Province of *Aderbaion*, in *Perſia*, a few Days Journey from *Tabris*, or *Tauris*, not large, but well known, on Account of its being the Birth Place of *Scheque Aydar*, Father to *Scheque*, *Scha* or *Iſhmael Suphy*, who govern'd *Perſia*, when the *Portugueſes* began to trade, and conquer in thoſe Parts, and it was he that *Alfonſo de Albuquerque* correſponded with by Letters. Now in regard that in *Portugal*, and throughout all *Spain*, they vulgarly call all the Kings of *Perſia*, *Sophys*, tho' they are not ſo, I will briefly declare the Signification of this Name, and its Original. All the *Mahometan* Sects which have been, and ſtill continue numerous, are reduc'd to Two Heads. That of the *Sunys*, follow'd by the *Turks*, and *Arabs*, and others who obſerve *Mahomet*'s *Alcoran*, without any Comments, or Expoſitions; and that of the *Schyahys*, being the *Perſians*, and all the Followers of *Morts Aly*. Of this laſt

Sophy *whence, and its Signification.*

Sunys *and* Schyahys Mahometan *Sects.*

was

was *Scheque Aydar*, Father to *Scheque Iſhmael*, who held as his Father had done, being always extraordinary zealous of his vain and curſed Sect; on which Account he practis'd inhuman, and incredible Cruelties on the Profeſſors of the other Sect, in his Conqueſt of *Perſia*, pretending to aim at nothing, but the Salvation of Souls. Now for as much as in *Perſia*, they commonly give the Name of *Sufy* to one that forſakes the World, and devotes himſelf to the Service of God, therefore this Man's Party gave him the Title of *Sufy*, for his Zeal towards his Sect. Not long before him, *Hhalila* had revolted in *Perſia*, and for the ſame Reaſon was call'd *Sufy Hhalila*. So that *Sufy* is no proper Name, nor belonging to every King, but an Adjective, ſignifying, a Religious Man, or one that has left the World, and wholly applies himſelf to ſerve God, which plainly appears, in as much as none, after him above mention'd, bore that Sirname; and there is a great Number of *Sufys* throughout all *Perſia*, who are all Religious Men. I have made this Digreſſion on Account of *Ardavel*, the Place where *Scheque Iſhmael* was born, of whom more ſhall be ſaid in its Place. According to the *Perſian* Computation, this King *Kaykaus* was contemporary with *Solomon*, whom they call *Soleimon ben Davd*, that is, *Solomon* the Son of *David*. Kaykaus Solomons *Contemporary.*

Chap. XV.

Of Kaykozrao, *the Thirteenth King of* Persia; *he makes War on his Grandfather* Afrasiab, *King of* Turkestam, *for which Reason his Son* Syavex *differs with him, and goes over to* Turon; *the End of* Afrasiab, *and Two of his Sons.*

Kaykozrao *makes War on* Turkestam.

Kaykozrao succeeded his Grandfather *Kaykaus* in the Throne of *Persia*, and reconcil'd past Differences by his Generosity, and Affability. He restor'd Justice, which had been much laid aside, call'd an Assembly of his chief Men, to whom he propos'd his Design of making War upon the *Turks*, in Revenge for their murdering his Father, which they all approv'd, and promis'd to stand by him. He presently sent his Unkle *Frayborz*, Brother to his Father, and his Unkle *Thus*, the Son of *Naudar*, with Thirty Thousand Horse to ravage the Country of *Turkestam*. *Kaykozrao* had a Son call'd *Syavex*, who being offended that his Father should make War on his Great Grandfather, went away from him to *Turon*. *Pirond Vaysa*, who, as has been said, came into *Persia* with *Guyu*, when he brought *Kaykozrao*, and his Mother *Franguys*, was marry'd there, and had a Son he call'd *Ferud*, whom when of Age he sent into *Turkestam*, and follow'd after himself. The King lov'd this Youth, as if he had been his own Child, and therefore when he sent *Frayborz* into

into *Turkeſtam*, underſtanding that *Ferud* kept Garriſon in a Fortreſs, he earneſtly charg'd his Commanders to keep at a diſtance from it; yet they, upon ſome occaſion, paſs'd cloſe by it, and *Ferud* ſallying out, was kill'd in Fight. The King being inform'd of it, was very much concern'd, and underſtanding that *Thus* had been the cauſe of it, ſent for him to Court, where he was diſgrac'd, and thrown into Priſon. *Frayborz*, and *Gudarz* proſecuted the War againſt the *Turks*, wherein they were unſucceſsful; for *Piroud Vayſa* meeting, overthrew them, with a great Slaughter of *Perſians*, and among them of Seventy Gentlemen of the Family of *Gudarz*, who, with *Frayborz*, fled haſtily into *Perſia*. The King ſent *Gudarz* again, with another Army, and *Thus*, who was again receiv'd into Favour. He march'd towards *Turon*, but met the Enemy ravaging *Perſia*, whom he ingaged, and not being able to ſtand their Shock, retir'd haſtily to the Mountain *Damaoand*, where he Intrench'd, and the *Turks* Beſieg'd him, ſecuring all the Paſſes. The Fame of this Siege brought Two other Kings, neighbouring upon the *Turks*, with their Armies to aſſiſt them. The one of them was call'd *Hhabbon*, and the other *Schangol*, which made the *Perſians* look upon themſelves as loſt. *Kaykozrao* hearing the Danger his Troops were in, made haſt to relieve them, ſent for *Roſtam*, who advanc'd with what Forces he could gather, marching inceſſantly till he came up with the Enemy. The *Perſians* had notice of his coming, and perceiving he was near, came

Ferud kill'd.

Perſians defeated.

Again, and Beſieg'd.

Roſtam routs the Turks.

came down from the Mountain; but being attack'd in Front, and Rear, were entirely defeated, most of them slain, and among them *Hhakhon*, one of the confederate Kings. This did not satisfy *Kaykozrao*, who forming Four several Armies, sent them as many ways to invade *Turkestam*, the greatest, which went by the way of *Balk*, being commanded by *Gudarz*, whom *Pirond Vaysa* oppos'd, with the best of Four *Turkish* Armies, *Afrasiab* sent to oppose the *Persians*. They ingag'd, the *Turks* were quite routed, and *Pirond Vaysa* slain, whose Head was sent to *Kaykozrao*, and he much lamented at the sight of it, because he had been bred by him. Above 100000 *Turks* were taken in this War, with 11 Prime Commanders. *Frayborz* rewarded all those who had serv'd upon these occasions, giving *Frayborz* the Lands of *Kyche*, by the *Portugueses* call'd *Cache*, and those of *Macron*, which are Kingdoms lying between *Goadel*, and the *Abindos*, at the Mouth of the Gulph of *Persia*.

They are again defeated.

Afrasiab recruited his Army, and put it under the Command of another of his Sons, who march'd with it to *Kaorrasm*, the Boundary of the *Turkish* Dominions, where the *Persian* Forces lay, by whom they were overthrown, and *Afrasiab's* Son kill'd. He not thinking himself safe in a Fortress, where he lay, fled, and that Place fell into the Hands of *Kaykozrao*, with his Wife and Daughters, who were by him honourably receiv'd, and entertain'd. Some Months after *Afrasiab* was taken, and put to Death. This tedious War being thus happily

Third overthrow of them.

pily ended, and all things well ſettled, *Kaykozrao* retir'd from Court, and having no Sons, transferr'd the Crown to *Loraſph*, Grandſon to a Brother of *Kaykaus*, and his own ſecond Couſin, contrary to the Inclination of ſome Great ones. Not long after he dy'd, having firſt reſtor'd all the Lands, and Poſſeſſions his Predeceſſors had taken from his Subjects, and paid all his Debts. He favour'd the Poor, adminiſtred impartial Juſtice, maintain'd the Soldiers at his own Charge; and never undertook any important Affair without mature Advice. In his Days there were two famous Philoſophers in *Perſia*, the one call'd *Hhores*, the other *Lokman*. Of this laſt the *Perſians* ſtill have ſome Works of an extraordinary Wit, and among the reſt a Book of Compariſons, and Examples, very like *Eſops*, and I am of Opinion he was the ſame Man, for ſpeaking of his Life, they ſay he was a great Philoſopher, Slave to another, Deform'd, but very Witty, and that he was condemn'd to Death; all that heſitates me is their affirming that he was a *Jew*; and when they would commend a Man's Wiſdom, they ſay, *there is no need of teaching* Lokman.

Kaykozrao *dyes.*

Two Philoſophers.

Eſop.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Loraſph, *the Fourteenth King of* Perſia; *his Son* Guſtaſph *rebels, flyes into* Turkeſtam, *marries there, ſtirs up a War againſt his Father, is brought back into* Perſia, *and other Accidents till his Death.*

LOraſph aſcended the Throne, for want of any other nearer ally'd to it, being as has been ſaid, Grandſon to a Brother of *Kaykaus*, and ſecond Couſin to *Kaykozrao*. His Promotion was oppos'd by ſome, and particularly by *Zal*, Father to *Roſtam*, becauſe he was known to be of a harſh, and cruel Temper; yet he prevail'd, and was proclaim'd King. He ſet out from *Hiſphaon*, or *Iſpahan*, and took a Progreſs through his Dominions, as far as *Balk*, whence he ſent *Gudarz* with an Army, into *Meſopotamia*, *Syria*, and *Paleſtine*; who behav'd himſelf ſo well upon that Expedition, that he ſoon ſubdu'd the Country of *Babel*, that is *Babylon*, *Dimesk*, and *Scham*, being that of *Damaſcus*, and then marching to *Beyt almocadas*, ſignifying *Jeruſalem*, an *Arabick* Name, from *Beyt*, a Houſe, and *almocadas*, of the Holy ones, the King of that Place ſubmitted himſelf, ingaging to become Tributary, and delivering up ſome Men of Note, as *Hoſtages*, for the performance. Theſe *Gudarz* ſlew a few Days after, upon Intelligence, that the *Jews* had rebell'd againſt their King, on Account

Babylon, Damaſcus *and* Paleſtine *ſubdu'd by the* Perſians.

count of the Agreement made with him, and design'd to make War on him. Hereupon *Gudarz* returning, attack'd the City, and took it by Storm, at which time the *Persians* exercised great Cruelty, carrying away a great Number of *Jews* Captives into *Persia*. *Gudarz* having obtain'd these, and other Victories, return'd into *Persia*. *Jerusalem taken by them.*

King *Loraſph* had Two Sons, the elder call'd *Gustaph*, and the younger *Zarir*. *Gustaſph* was Haughty, high Minded, and Turbulent, and some restless Spirits finding he was well dispos'd, perswaded him to Rebel against his Father, and Usurp the Crown, being Seconded by a considerable Part of it. His Father took the Field, with what Forces he could gather, and oblig'd him to quit the Kingdom, as being too weak to maintain his Ground. The better to compass it he went off alone in a Disguize, and fled into *Turkestam*, where he married that Kings Daughter, without being known, which hap'ned after this manner. It was an antient Custom in *Turkestam*, when the King was to marry a Daughter, for all the People then residing about the Court, to meet in a Field appointed for that purpose, in the best Dress they were able, and being drawn up in Order, the Father led the Bride by one Hand, and in the other she carry'd a Gold Ball, of the shape and bigness of an Orange, set with Precious Stones. Being come to the Place, where the People waited, she walk'd all over it, very particularly observing every Person in it, and at last gave the Ball to him she lik'd best, and he was by Law her Husband. *Gustaph Son to Loraſph Rebels.* *Flies to Turkestam, and marries the King's Daughter.* *Strange Customs.*

band. It hap'ned, that a Daughter of the Kings was going to chuſe a Husband, juſt as *Guſtaſph* came to the Court, and he, out of Curioſity went away, as he was in his riding Apparel, to the Place appointed, only to ſee Faſhions. Fortune ſo order'd it, that the Bride took a Fancy to, and gave him the Ball. The King her Father, was very much concern'd at it, becauſe *Guſtaſph* was not known, and the great Men there preſent complain'd, however the Cuſtom was obſerv'd, and they were marry'd. To prevent the like for the future, a Law was enacted, that the King's Daughters ſhould not from that time be given to any but ſuch as had Parts, and Quality to deſerve them. The King had ſtill Two others, extraordinary Beautiful, who were ſu'd for by Two Sons of a neighbouring King, to whom he promis'd them, in caſe each of them would deliver up to him one of Two Rebels, who did great Harm in his Dominions. They thought this a very difficult Condition, and Enterprize; but *Guſtaſph*'s Valour beginning now to be known, they ſo far prevail'd with him, by the Mediation of Friends, that he alone undertook that Affair, and pretending to go abroad a Hunting, with a ſuitable Retinue, ſoon took, kill'd, and deliver'd them to the Two Brothers, who were in his Company, and they preſented them to the King, who thereupon gave them his Daughters. Some few Days after, the King Riding at Tilt, *Guſtaſph* did it ſo dexterouſly, and with ſuch a Grace, that the King highly commended him, and he anſwer'd, it was

Tilting us'd in Perſia.

no

no wonder he ſhould manage a Lance ſo dexterouſly a Horſeback, who had been able to rid the Country of thoſe Rebels, that infeſted it. The King heard it, and being aſſur'd of the Truth, was better ſatiſfy'd; tho' he knew ſo well how to diſſemble that none thoroughly knew him. This Tilting is much us'd in thoſe Countries, and I have ſeen it done ſeveral times by King *Ferrogafxa*, at *Ormuz*, with all his Nobility, ſo regularly, that it could not have been better perform'd on Foot.

What has been ſaid concerning the Cuſtom of Marrying in *Perſia*, will not be ſurprizing to ſuch as are acquainted with the ſeveral Rites obſerv'd by the Eaſtern Nations in Matrimony, ſome of which I do not mention, as not thinking it lawful to write them; it is enough to know, that the World being ſo wide, there muſt needs be various Cuſtoms, and Manners in it, which being ſtrange to us, appear unaccountable. *Guſtaſph* held in mind the unkindneſs his Father *Loraſph* had always ſhown him, and meditated Revenge; herein much differing from his Father, who was very much concern'd at his Abſence, and could not gueſs what was become of him. The undutiful Son, being thus bent, perſwaded his Father in Law, to forbear paying Tribute to his Father *Loraſph*, and make War on him. The *Turk* did it, but with no good Will, and ſent an Embaſſador to declare the War. *Loraſph* was ſomewhat ſurpriz'd at it, and inquiring of the Embaſſador into the occaſion of it, becauſe he did not think that which he alledg'd ſufficient

Guſtaſph perſwades the Turks to War on his Father.

ficient, was inform'd, that it was caus'd by a Stranger, being a Man of Valour, who through an unexpected Accident had marry'd the King's Daughter; and inquiring into the matter, was perswaded, that must be his Son *Gustasph*, which being fix'd in his Mind, he sent his younger Son *Zarir*, Brother to *Gustasph* along with the Embassador, and by him a *Tage*, or Royal *Diadem*, to the end that when he had receiv'd it, he might come away, and take Possession of the Throne. *Gustasph* had notice of what was doing, and went out to meet them, long before they came to the Court, without acquainting his Father in Law. He met his Brother *Zarir*, put the *Tage* on his Head, and was by all the Company proclaim'd King of *Persia*. This done he sent for his Father in Law, who seeing him in that Posture, was much surpriz'd, thinking it had been some Treason, and that he intended to Usurp the Crown; but being inform'd of the Truth, rested satisfy'd, and embrac'd him. *Gustasph* took his leave, and went away into *Persia*, taking his Wife *Katabun*, so the King's Daughter that gave him the Gold Ball was call'd, a great Retinue, and many Camels richly loded, along with him. His Father *Lorasph* receiv'd him with singular Tokens of Affection, which afterwards increas'd, on Account of the many Services he did him; and a few Years after resign'd up the Crown to him, retiring from Court, to live a solitary Life, in which he continued some time, and dy'd, giving his Son much wholesom Ad-

Is call'd home to Reign.

Returns to Persia.

Lorasph dyes.

vice;

vice. *Loraſph* had the Surname of *Balkah*, becauſe he reſided for the moſt Part at *Balk*.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Guſtaſph, *the Fifteenth King of* Perſia; *he Wars on the King of* Turkeſtam, *on Account of Worſhipping the Fire, with various Succeſs; his Son* Sphandiar *kill'd by* Roſtam, *and other Accidents till his Death.*

WHEN *Loraſph*, or according to others *Loraſeph*, withdrew from Court, *Guſtaſph*, or *Guſtaſef* was already receiv'd as King, being a Man brave in War, and diſcreet in Peace; but much addicted to the Worſhip of Fire, and ſo zealous in that Superſtition, as to wage War on thoſe that would not follow it; as he did on *Ariaſph*, or *Ariaſef*, King of *Turon*, becauſe he ſent him a Reproof, in Anſwer to a Letter, wherein he perſwaded him to embrace the Sect of *Zarduxt*, or *Zoroaſtes*, which is that of the Fire Worſhippers. In ſpeaking above of the City *Tabris*, or *Tauris*, I ſaid it was the Capital of the Province of *Aderbaion*, or *Azarbaion*, which in the *Calange* Language, being what is ſpoken in that Country, ſignifies, the Province of Fire, and as has been already mention'd, this Sect took it's Original there, giving it's Name to the Country, and that of *Zarduxt*, ſignifying, Friend of the Fire, to him

Aderbaion, *ſignifies, Province of Fire.*

that follows it; tho' *Zar*, in the univerſal Language of *Perſia*, which is very different from thoſe of particular Places, ſignifies Mony, and *Azar*, a Thouſand, and *Zahar*, Poyſon, or Gaul; and they call the Fire, *Attex*. *Guſtaſph* being offended at the little Reſpect *Ariaſph* had ſhown in reproving him, took the Field, attended by his Brother *Zarir*, and his Son *Sphandiar*, and march'd with the greateſt Force he could raiſe towards *Turon*. *Ariaſph* met him, and was overthrown, with the Slaughter of all his Sons, and Brothers; after which *Guſtaſph* took *Turon*, plunder'd it, and return'd to *Perſia*. There upon ſome Jealouſy conceiv'd, he ſecur'd his Son *Sphandiar*, in a Fortreſs, call'd *Guerdkuh*, that is, round Mountain, in the Country of *Rudbar*.

Guſtaſph routs the Turks, and takes Turon.

Whilſt this was doing in *Perſia*, *Ariaſph* gather'd a conſiderable Army, and entering it, took the City *Balk*, plunder'd it, carry'd off ſome of *Guſtaſph*'s Daughters, and not ſo ſatisfy'd, pierc'd farther in, with ſuch Celerity, that *Guſtaſph* not daring to expect him, retir'd in haſt. A Council was call'd, and reſolv'd that *Sphandiar* ſhould be releas'd, and have the Charge of the War, both which he refus'd; but at length, at the earneſt intreaty of his Brother *Jamaſph*, and his Father promiſing, in caſe he return'd Victorious, to reſign up the Kingdom to him, he ſet forward, with a numerous Army; met *Ariaſph*, fought him, obtain'd a compleat Victory, and returning home was met by his Father, who after Congratulating his Succeſs, repreſented to him, how little his Victory was to

Turks invade Perſia.

Defeated by Sphandiar.

be

be valu'd, whilſt his Siſters ſtill remain'd in Captivity. Shame, and his Duty prevailing, he pick'd 24000 Men out of all his Army, 12000 Horſe, and as many Foot, and taking his younger Brother *Buxutan* along with him, purſu'd the Enemy to a certain Place, where the Road divided it ſelf into Three ſeveral Branches, all of them leading to *Turon*. He choſe the longeſt, but moſt paſſable of them, which had plenty of Paſture, along which he ſent the Forces, under his Brother *Buxutan*'s Command, with Orders, that when they came to a certain Place, near *Parvindez*, they ſhould lay themſelves ſo ſecretly in Ambuſh, that no notice might be taken in *Turon*; and when he diſcover'd many great Fires lighted near the City, he ſhould aſſault it, with all poſſible Fury. *Buxutan* march'd along that way, with the Forces, and *Sphandiat*, with a few Companions, diſguiz'd like Merchants, took another call'd *Aphtkhon*, ſignifying, Seven Kings, or Lords, which was Seven, or Eight Days Journey, taking along with him all the Jewels, and other Things of Value there were among them, being very conſiderable; for it was, and ſtill is the Cuſtom of the *Perſians*, to carry all the Jewels, and other coſtly Ornaments they have, with them to the Wars. The *Uzbeks* do juſt the contrary, for being a Warlike People, they take nothing with them, but lean ſwift Horſes, ſtrong Bows, and Quivers full of Arrows, with which Equipage, and flying as they Fight, they have gain'd much Land from the *Perſians*, in our Days, whereof I have often heard them complain, ſaying, they can never obtain

Perſians *carry their Wealth to the Wars.*

Uzbeks *the contrary.*

tain any considerable Victory over the *Uzbeks*, because they carry so little abroad with them, besides their Arms, whereas they the *Persians*, practice the contrary; which has been the occasion of this Hint. *Sphandiar* soon came to *Turon*, with his Companions, all representing Merchants, and as such appear'd before *Ariasph*, with the Jewels he carry'd, and manag'd that Prince so dexterously, that he caus'd him to be lodg'd in his own Palace. Advice being brought *Sphandiar*, that his Brother *Buxutan* was in the Place he had appointed, with his Troops, he desir'd leave of the King to give him, and his Court an Entertainment, in the Field the next day, which was admitted, and under colour of preparing for it, he had the opportunity of making great Fires, near the Wall. *Buxutan* seeing them, secur'd the Avenues, and assaulted the City, making a dreadful Slaughter of the Inhabitants, and plundering the Place, of all the Booty reserv'd only Two Rarities, which he sent to his Father. The one, a Royal Throne of Gold, set with Precious Stones, of exquisite Workmanship; and the other a white Elephant. Next he releas'd his Sisters, and having deliver'd them to his Brother *Buxutan*, to be conducted home, he took a compass about the Mountains, to see the *Indian* Sea, where he compell'd some Nations to embrace his vain Superstition of Worshipping the Fire.

Sphandiar plunders Turon, and rescues his Sisters.

Is sent against Rostam.

This done he return'd into *Persia*, and was well receiv'd by his Father, who instead of resigning the Kingdom, put him upon very dangerous Enterprizes, yet still he always came off well. At last he would have

him

him go ſeek out *Roſtam*, who was withdrawn to *Siſton*, and had not been to pay his Reſpects to him ſince his Acceſſion to the Throne. He did ſo, much againſt his Will, in Obedience to his Father, whom he told, thoſe were all delays to put off the performance of his Promiſe, and an Injuſtice towards *Roſtam*, who had deſerv'd ſo well. However he ſet out for *Siſton*, where *Roſtam* reſided, taking along with him a Son he had, call'd *Bahaman*; who when they came near, went before, and from a Hill ſaw *Roſtam*, who was then a Hunting, perform ſuch Feats of Strength, and Dexterity, that he was aſtoniſh'd, and fully perſwaded, there would be no carrying him away, againſt his Will. He went up to him, diſcover'd who he was, and that his Father *Sphandiar* was coming. *Roſtam* went to meet him, they Saluted, the occaſion of his coming was handled, and *Roſtam* excus'd himſelf, alledging, that he had been exempt from that Duty; but that in any caſe of neceſſity, they ſhould always find him very ready. *Sphandiar* inſiſted upon his going, and *Roſtam* poſitively refus'd, ſo that they came to Words, and challeng'd one another. *Sphandiar* was reckon'd one of the braveſt Men of *Perſia*, and conſequently put *Roſtam* hard to it: but was at laſt overcome, and ſo deſperately Wounded, that he ſoon dy'd. Before his end, he recommended his Son *Bahaman* to *Roſtam*, and his Body to his Brother *Buxutan*, who caus'd it to be afterwards convey'd into *Perſia*, where he was honourably bury'd. *Kill'd by him.*

His Father *Guſtaſph* was much troubled at this Misfortune; but not knowing how to

Gustasph help himself, at present, march'd with his Army against the King of *Turkestam*, then ravaging his Country, whom he Fought, and Vanquish'd. Returning to his Court, he sent for his Grandson *Bahaman*, the Son of *Sphandiar*, who was still at *Siston*, to whom he surrender'd the Kingdom, and retir'd himself, to lead a solitary Life, in a Place call'd *Ghozghzar*, that is, the costly Pleasure House, which being very delightful, and artificial, the *Persians* say was contriv'd by *Soleyman ben Daud*, or *Solomon* the Son of *David*, adding other such Fables, for the more Grandeur. This Place is Ten *Farsanghes*, that is Thirty Miles from *Schiras*. *Gustasph* founded the City *Asuartah*, in the Province of *Maurenahar*; had himself the Surname of *Herbod*, and dy'd a few Years after his Resignation.

routs the Turks.

Resigns the Crown and dies.

Chap. XVIII.

Of Bahaman Daraz Daz, *the Sixteenth King of* Persia, *his Life, and Death.*

Bahaman *King.*

Gustasph, as he has said, left the Throne to his Grandson *Bahaman*, surnam'd *Daraz Dast*, which signifies, of the long Hand, for *Dast* in the *Persian* Language, is a Hand, and *Daraz*, Long. They also give him the Name of *Ardxir*, which they use most commonly in the *Persian* Chronicles, but not being his proper Name, and only given him on account of a pleasant Accident, before he was born, I will here briefly relate it. Whilst he was yet in his Mothers

thers Womb, a famous Aſtrologer came to wait upon his Grandfather *Guſtaſph*, and his Father *Sphandiar*, who being both together, after the uſual Salutation, he directed his Diſcourſe to *Sphandiar*, and preſenting him with a little Basket, ſaid, he knew nothing more proper to offer his Son that would be born, than what he there brought. When uncover'd, it appear'd to be a Veſſel with Milk, and a little Meal. They were very well pleas'd with the Wiſe Man's Prediction, valuing the Offering, and form'd him a Name of thoſe they call'd ſuch things by, being *Ardxir*, and he was better known by it, than by his own, which was *Bahaman*; for in the *Perſian*, *Ard* is Meal, and *Xir* Milk, both of them making *Ardxir*, whence the *Greeks*, and *Latins*, call'd him *Artaxerxes*; and from *Daraz Daſt*, came *Longimanus*, ſignifying the ſame Thing; and hence ſome of his Succeſſors had *Ardxir* for their proper Name. *Why call'd* Ardxir, *or* Artaxerxes.

This *Bahaman Daraz Daſt*, or *Ardxir*, was of a graceful Preſence, his right Hand, and Arm were conſiderably longer than the left, and he had all the good Qualities that can be wiſh'd for in a good Prince; but above all, was ſo zealous for the publick good, that when he ſent any Judges, or Magiſtrates upon a Circuit through his Kingdom, he at the ſame time under Hand, employ'd others he confided in, to follow, and be Spies on all their Actions, to give him an Account of them, and if they behav'd themſelves well, they were rewarded, or if otherwiſe ſeverely puniſh'd. After governing for the ſpace of a Year, he held an Aſſembly of his Nobility, whom he in-

Ardxir's Integrity.

form'd, how desirous he was to proceed uprightly in all Respects, and desir'd they would, without any Fear, or Apprehension publickly acquaint him with any thing that was in him blame-worthy, that he might mend it; and that in case, he was not fit to govern well they should depose him; for it was better for him to obey one that knew how to rule, than to be himself in Authority, to the Detriment of the Kingdom. They all highly commended his good Intention, and loudly pray'd to God for his Life, and Prosperity; and after setling some Affairs, he dismiss'd them. *Ardxir* rebuilt many publick Structures, that were gone to Ruin, and regulated the Government. Next he apply'd himself to revenge his Father *Sphandiar*'s Death, and having rais'd a good Army, march'd towards *Sistan*. About half way, News was brought him, that *Rostam* was dead, and his Son *Framarz* was advancing against him, with considerable Forces. The Two Armies engag'd, and *Ardxir* came off victorious, tho' it cost him many Men; but *Framarz*, *Rostam*'s Son, and some of his Kindred were kill'd; and his Grandfather *Zal*, who still Liv'd, taken. *Ardxir* returning home Victorious, leaving a Kinsmans of his own to govern *Sistan*, and *Kabul*. He wag'd War by his Generals in *Syria*, and *Palestine*, reducing them under his Obedience, and abundance of *Jews* were carry'd Prisoners into *Persia*.

He marches against Rostam, *and finds him dead.*

Defeats and kills his Son Framarz.

His Son Sasan *a Philosopher despises the Crown.*

Ardxir had a Son, call'd *Sasan*, who prov'd a great Philosopher, and Astrologer, and left the Court to apply himself wholly to his Studies, nor did he ever aspire to the Crown, tho' he saw his Father taken away.

In

In fine *Ardxir* dy'd, to the unſpeakable Grief of all his People, leaving his Wife *Homay* with Child of a Son, which ſhe was deliver'd of, after his Death. In the Days of this *Ardxir* flouriſh'd *Hypocrates*, whom the *Perſians* call *Bokorat*; as alſo *Democritus*, whom they name *Dimocritis*, and they have the Writings of both. They have thoſe of *Plato*, by them call'd *Aphlatum*; of *Socrates*, by them pronounc'd *Sokorat*, of *Ariſtotle*, whom they call *Araſto*, and *Araſtatalis*, and of *Galen*, whom they name *Gialenus*. In ſhort they preſerve, and highly extol the Works of theſe, and ſeveral other *Greeks*; and it is very frequent among the *Perſians*, who value themſelves for Learning, and even for good breeding in their common Diſcourſe, to interſperſe ſome Quotations, Sentences, or Opinions of thoſe Men, and ſuch of their own, as have writ, which are many, ſome whereof I ſhall call to mind, as Occaſion offers. King *Ardxir*, or *Bahaman daraz daſt* was us'd to ſay, that no Door ought to be ſhut in a Princes Houſe.

Ardxir *dies.*

Learned Men in his Time.

We ſaid, that *Ardxir* marching againſt *Roſtam*, found him dead, and he having been ſo much ſpoken of in this Hiſtory, it will be proper to be more particular, as to the manner of his End, repeating all that *Mirkond* writes concerning it. *Roſtam* had a Brother, call'd *Schayad*, whom he had intruſted to overſee his Lands, take Care of them, and receive his Rents. *Schayad* going into *Kabul*, upon this Account fell in Love with a very beautiful Daughter of the Governor of that Country, and ask'd her of the Father, who perceiving him ſo much enamour'd, ſtood off the more, the eagerer he ſeem'd; till at laſt

Roſtam's *Death.*

last he consented, upon *Schayad*'s promising to deliver him from his Subjection to *Rostam*, by contriving his Death. This being resolv'd, *Schayad* return'd to *Sistan*, where talking with his Brother *Rostam*, he complain'd to him against the Governor of *Kabul*, alledging he had contemn'd, slighted, and treated him very ill. *Rostam* was in a Passion, reflecting on his Brother, as a Coward, and a poor spirited Man, and would have rais'd Forces to chastize the Governor. *Schayad* oppos'd it, alledging his Presence was sufficient to set all Things right, which *Rostam* gave Credit to. He set out with his Brother *Zanada*, another Kinsman of his, and a few Servants, for *Kabul*. *Schayad* under hand sent word to his Father in Law, who set out from *Kabul*, to meet him on the Road, having laid many Men in Ambush along it. When *Rostam* came up, he knelt down, and begg'd his Pardon, as if he repented his past Faults. *Rostam* forgave him, and the Governor desir'd he would go rest him, at a Pleasure House of his, guiding of him in such manner, that he fell into one of the Pits, he had provided for that purpose, cover'd over with Grass and Leaves, and within full of Brambles, which so sorely gor'd *Rostam* and his Horse, that he dy'd there. But finding himself betray'd, without any Hope, of Deliverance, after much upbraiding them, he desir'd, they would give him a Bow, and some Arrows, to defend himself against the wild Beasts, that they might not devour him alive. They did so, and he clapping Two Arrows into it, let them fly with such force, that tho' his Brother, and the Governor ran for shelter to a Tree, they overtook, and kill'd

Persians shoot several Arrows at once.

kill'd them, and thus ended *Roſtam* and his Murderers. It is very uſual in *Perſia*, to ſhoot Two or Three Arrows out of a Bow at once, eſpecially in Battles. The *Perſian* Hiſtory tells us, that *Roſtam* ſhot them thro' the Tree, which is contrary to Reaſon; but agrees well with the Wonders they tell us of his Strength, and Exploits, whereof there are as many Books in the *Perſian* Tongue, in Verſe, and Proſe, as there are among us of *Orlando Furioſo*, the Knight of the Sun, *Don Bellianis* of *Greece*, and ſuch like, and this may ſuffice as to the Death of *Roſtam*; but having ſo often ſpoken of *Kabul*, we will ſay ſomething of it, for the better Underſtanding of what is paſt.

Kabul Kingdom.

Kabul is a Kingdom, formerly ſubject to *Perſia*, and bordering upon *India*. It was in antient times, Three Months Journey from *Kabul* to *Lahor*, now the Court of the Great *Mogol*, and Center of all *India*; and now it is perform'd in Twenty, or Five and Twenty Days, and the Reaſon of it was, the great Compaſs taken about, for Fear of the many Robbers. One of the Kings of *Kabul* reſolving to put a Stop to this Miſchief, caus'd ſeveral ſtrong Houſes, in the Nature of Inns, to be built along the ſtrait way, at certain Diſtances from one another, with Men to defend them, and ſecure Travellers. Theſe being kept up, and much frequented, many of them by degrees grew up to be Cities, and Towns of Note, as they continue to this Day, *Kabul* being their *Metropolis*. This gives its Name to one Sort of that Medicinal Fruit, they call *Mirabolans*, to which the *Arabs* and *Perſians* give one general Name of *Alilah*, and

Mirabolans.

and the Gentiles of *India* corruptly as they do by other Names, *Arare*. Thus they ſay *Alilah Zard*, yellow *Mirabolans*, *Alilah Kabuly*, *Mirabolans* of *Kabul*, which our Phyſicians alſo call *Kebulos*. Dr. *Garcia Dorta*, treated ſufficiently of theſe, and the reſt; but was not acquainted with a wonderful large Sort of theſe *Kebulos*, which I have ſeen; for I ſaw a *Mirabolan* that weigh'd Sixteen Ounces, in the Hands of an Idolater Merchant, whoſe Name was *Ioghea Bangaſaly*, and another weighing Twelve Ounces in the Hands of a *Portugueſe* Gentleman; differing in nothing from the common *Kebulos*, but in Magnitude. They would have made me believe, that theſe extraordinary large ones had ſuch a laxative Faculty, that only holding of them ſome time in the Hand would give a Stool. I try'd and found it to be falſe; but was ſatisfy'd that an Infuſion, or Decoction of it, was looſening, and very good againſt Fevers, and bloody Fluxes; and thus much as to the *Kebulos*. The River *Behat*, one of the Five that compoſe the *Indus*, of which we ſhall ſpeak elſewhere has its Riſe near *Kabul*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Homay *Wife to* Ardxir, *and Queen of* Perſia, *after her Huſbands Death is deliver'd of a Son, who is caſt into a River, and comes afterwards to be King.*

Ardxir being dead, Queen *Homay* his Wife, took the Government upon her, being with Child, as has been ſaid. Five Months after ſhe was deliver'd of a moſt beautiful Son. Aſtrologers being call'd to calculate his Nativity; they all agreed, that Child would be Father of one, that would occaſion mighty Calamities in that Kingdom. Many were of Opinion he ſhould be kill'd; but natural Affection prevailing, the Mother would not conſent, and caus'd a wooden Cheſt to be made, into which ſhe put a ſmall Cradle, with the Child, and ſeveral Jewels of Value, that if any poor Perſon ſhould happen to find the Infant, he might have wherewithal to maintain him, and thus was he caſt into the River *Jehun*, whoſe rapid Stream ſoon carry'd him very far off, and he was left a ground in a Place, where a Poor Man was waſhing Linnen on the Bank, for in the Eaſtern Parts the Men follow that Buſineſs, and are call'd *Maynotos*. This Man ſeeing the Cheſt in the Water, and wondring what it might be, drew out, and open'd it, where he found that beautiful Infant, with the Jewels that had been laid by him. His Beauty and Wealth made the Waſherman ſenſible, that the Parents muſt be

Queen Homay *governs.*

Her Son expos'd on the River Jehun.

be great. The Child being carry'd home, was carefully educated by his Wife, and call'd *Darab*, a Name compounded from the Cheſt, and the River he was found in, for *Dar* the *Perſian* Tongue ſignifies a Plank, or Piece of Timber, and *Ab*, Water, ſo the Two Words put together made *Darab*, denoting his being found in a Cheſt in the Water; and this is he, whom we, after the *Latins*, call *Darius*. *Darab* being grown up, the Waſherman would have put him to ſome ordinary Trade he ſhould fancy; but acquainting him with his Deſign, he was much offended, as having an Averſion to ſuch mean Imployments, and wholly inclin'd to the Exerciſe of Arms. The good Man being acquainted with his Humour, ſet him out the beſt he could, and ſent him to ſeek his Fortune. Queen *Homay* was at that time, raiſing a mighty Army, to be ſent againſt *Ruſtam*. *Darab* liſted himſelf in it, and perform'd ſuch Feats upon all occaſions, that nothing was ſo much talk'd of as his Actions. That War being ended, the Army return'd, and the General giving Queen *Homay* an Account of his Succeſs, highly extoll'd the Bravery of a particular new rais'd Soldier. The Queen deſir'd to ſee him, and being brought before her, ask'd his Name, Parents, and Country. He told her his Name was *Darab*, and that he knew no Parents he had, but a poor Waſherman and his Wife, farther adding, how he came to be ſo call'd, and the manner of his finding, as they had inform'd him. By this he was diſcover'd to be her Son, and farther Enquiry being made, ſhe reſign'd up the Kingdom to him, after having govern'd it above Thirty Two Years.

Taken up, and call'd Darab.

Darab *is* Darius.

His mighty firſt Exploits.

Is known, and enthron'd.

Homay

Homay founded the City of *Gerbatkon*, and erected a Thouſand Pyramids of a wonderful Structure, throughout *Perſia*, which *Alexander* the Great afterwards caus'd to be thrown down.

CHAP. XX.

Of Darab Kebar, *the Seventeenth King of* Perſia, *he makes War on* Phaylacus, *or* Philip *of* Macedon, *and other Accidents till his Death.*

Darab the Son of *Homay*, enter'd upon the Government of *Perſia*, with the general Applauſe, and Approbation of the whole Kingdom, on Account of the mighty Hopes conceiv'd of him, which prov'd not abortive, for he excell'd many of his Predeceſſors, that were reckned among the beſt, in Goodneſs, and Wiſdom; and as ſuch was both fear'd, and belov'd, as well by his own People, as by the neighbouring Princes; excepting *Phaylacus* King of *Tupon*, that is, *Philip* King of *Macedon*, Father to *Alexander* the Great, who growing haughty with the Victories he had obtain'd in *Greece*, refus'd to pay the Tribute his Predeceſſors had, for many Years paſt been under to the Kings of *Perſia*, and then made War on *Darab*, who overthrew him firſt by his Generals, and then in Perſon, ſo that *Phaylacus* fled into a Fortreſs, where he beſieg'd him. A Treaty was ſet on foot, and at length concluded, by which *Phaylacus*, and his Succeſſors were oblig'd to pay *Darab*, and his, Forty Thouſand Pieces of Gold Yearly.

This Darab *is* Darius.

Philip *of* Macedon *wars on him, is routed.*

Peace concluded.

Yearly. *Darab* demanded of *Phaylacus* a very beautiful Daughter he had, for his Wife, which was granted, and he carry'd her home, but ſoon after put her away, becauſe ſhe had a ſtinking Breath. About this time *Karimah*, Wife to *Phaylacus*, or as we call her *Olympias*, prov'd with Child, but not by her Husband, as is reported, and was deliver'd of a Son, call'd *Aſcander*, that is, *Alexander*. *Darab* having put an End to this War, return'd into *Perſia*, where he ſoon after dy'd, when he had reign'd 4 Years, leaving the Kingdom to his Son *Darab*, the Second.

Birth of Alexander *the Great.*

CHAP. XXI.

Of Darab Seguer, *or* Kucheck, *that is*, Darius *the Little, Eighteenth King of* Perſia; Aſcander, *or* Alexander *the Great, invades his Dominions, defeats him, and he is murder'd by his own Subjects.*

Darab the Little, or the Second, Son to *Darab* the 1ſt, ſucceeded his Father in the Throne of *Perſia*. He was viciouſly inclin'd, diſcourteous, ſurly in his Anſwers, deform'd, and of a frightful Aſpect, for which ill Qualities he was as much hated by his own People, and Strangers, as his Father had been belov'd. The *Perſians* took ſuch a Diſlike to him, that they reſolv'd to ſubmit themſelves to *Aſcander*, that is *Alexander*, the Son of *Philip*, to whom all the *Wazirs*, or *Viziers*, unanimouſly ſent Letters, inviting him to raiſe the greateſt Army he could, and

Darab's *ill Qualities.*

and enter *Perſia*, they being agreed to receive him for their Soveraign; and the better to conceal the Practice, they adviſ'd him, to begin the Breach, by refuſing to pay the Forty Thouſand Pieces of Gold agreed upon between his Father, and *Darab* the Great. *Aſcander*, who was of a martial Diſpoſition, laying hold of ſo favourable an Opportunity as was offer'd him, took their Advice, and with-held the Tribute. *Darab* ſent an Embaſſador to demand it, to whom *Aſcander* made Anſwer, that he was dead, who us'd to pay Tribute. *Darab* ſent a ſecond Embaſſy, and with it a Huckle Bone, and a Shepherds Hook, a Sack full of the Seed call'd *Seſamum*, and a Cheſt of Mony. What theſe Things meant is variouſly interpreted by the *Perſian* Writers, the greater Number agree, that the Two firſt denoted his being a mere Boy, unſettled, and void of Judgment, from Children's playing with Huckle Bones, and the wandring Life of Shepherds; the Sack of *Seſamum*, which is a very ſmall Seed, ſignify'd the innumerable Multitude of Men he had in his Dominions; and the Mony ſhew'd the vaſt Quantity of Gold, and Silver he was Maſter of. Thus all together imply'd that he plainly diſcover'd his youthful Folly, by preſuming ſo raſhly to provoke a Monarch that had ſuch Numbers of Men, and ſo much Plenty of Mony, when his own Power was ſo inconſiderable. For it ever was, and ſtill is much practis'd among the Eaſtern Nations, to expreſs themſelves by Figures, and Compariſons. *Alexander* had taken the Field, when this Embaſſy reach'd him, having an Army not numerous, but compos'd of brave Troops, and turning all thoſe Things *Darius*

Alexander invited by the Perſians.

Refuſes to pay Tribute.

Perſian Embaſſy.

Alexander enters Aſia.

ſent him, to ſuch a Signification as foreboded his Succeſs, he march'd out of *Greece*, and enter'd *Aſia*, without any conſiderable Oppoſition.

Builds Alexandria. In *Egypt* he pitch'd upon a convenient Harbour, on which he founded a City, from his Name call'd *Aſcandria*, which is, *Alexandria*, and took *Mezere*, that is, *Grand Cairo*. This City whoſe Fame has ſpread throughout the World, is now ſo well known, that nothing new can be ſaid of it, unleſs in Relation to its Name. It ever, and ſtill is the Capital of all *Egypt*, as appears by the Tradition, and Writings of the Natives. It was the *Memphis* of the *Latins*, and the *Meſrahim* of the *Jews*, from which laſt, the *Arabs*, *Perſians*, and *Turks*, by Corruption deriv'd *Mezere*. There hapned the Tryal of *Joſeph's* Chaſtity, the whole Diſtance from the firſt Situation being but one Mile, where are ſtill to be ſeen the Ruins of the Granaries, he caus'd to be built, to provide againſt the enſuing Famine. There the Prophet *Moſes* was born, and caſt into the River, which waſhes the Walls of the City; and this is ſo well confirm'd by the Reſemblance of the Names, that there ſeems to be no Room left to doubt of it. Concerning the Name of *Cairó*, uſually given it among us, *Mirkond*, in the Fourth Part of his Hiſtory, ſpeaking of the *Califs* of *Cairo*, which he, after many Revolutions, brings under the Dominion of a Prince call'd *Mohez*, under the Name of *Mezere*, tells us what follows. That this *Mohez* ſent from *Damaſcus*, a Slave of his, who was a Renowned General, and Conqueror, by Name *Jawar Kadem*, to govern that City, which was brought under his Dominion;

Grand Cairo.

minion; and he to secure it, erected close by a Fortress, which he nam'd *Kayreh*, in Honour of one of his Master's Wives, so call'd. This new Structure, in Process of time increas'd to such a Degree, that the Name of *Mezere* was almost forgot, and the Place is scarce known by any other than the new one of *Kayreh*, especially in *Europe*, where with some little Corruption, we pronounce it *Cairo*. The same Prince also possess'd himself of *Scham*, and *Dimesk*, which is almost the same thing, being the City *Damascus*, and *Scham*, all the Country from the River *Euphrates* to that City inclusive. They also call *Damascus*, *Behest Duniah*, that is, the Paradise of the World, and this Distinction may serve for other Places where it is mention'd in this History. Damascus and Scham.

Ascander mov'd thence into *Armenia*, where he receiv'd a Letter from *Darab*, conjuring him to desist from that Enterprize, and intermixing Threats, and fair Words to dissuade him. He answer'd, that Crowns and Kingdoms, did not belong to those Men who possess'd them, but to God, who gave, and took them away, as he thought fit. Thus he dismiss'd the Embassadors, march'd after them, and in the Province of *Aderbaion*, fought one of *Darab*'s Generals, that met him, whom he overthrew, and without losing any time, advanc'd into the Country of *Gueylon*. Darius's Letter, and Alexander's Answer.

Gueylon was formerly a large Kingdom, and is now reduc'd into a Province, divided into Five Governments, all of them subject to the Crown of *Persia*. The *Persians* give it the general Name of *Gueylan*, or *Guylon*, and the Natives call it *End safet*, signifying, white Gueylon Kingdom.

India, becauſe it is pleaſant, and delightful, to diſtinguiſh it from the true *India*, properly ſo call'd, and which they reckon diſmal; and therefore they metaphorically give the Name of *India* to any Place they would repreſent, wretched, and horrid, as our Poets do by *Tartary*. Of the Five Governments the Province of *Gueylon* is divided into, the Firſt is call'd *Raxt*, a Name taken from its chief City, which in the Year 1595, when I writ this, was in the Poſſeſſion of *Iamſhced Khan*. The Second takes its Name from the City *Gaxhar*, then govern'd by *Syavex*, both of them Princes of great Note. The Third is call'd *Laion*, like its Metropolis, and in it is the famous City *Delmon*, or *Delimon*, ſo much ſpoken of, in the Fourth and Fifth Books of *Mirkond*. This was govern'd by *Khan Hamed*, whom the *Turk Selim* took, when he reduc'd the City *Tauris*, and kept him at *Bagdat*. The Fourth Government call'd *Langor Kanon*, as well as its Capital City, was at that time under *Amir Amza Khan*, a Man of great Worth, and Valour, who had Eleven Brothers with him, all of them famous Men. The Fifth Government, for the ſame Reaſon as the others call'd *Kudam*, was in the Hands of *Komron Mirzah*. Next follows *Mazandaron*, already ſpoken of, which having combin'd with ſome Parts of this Province of *Gueylon*, in the Year 1593, rebell'd againſt *Scha Abas*, King of *Perſia*, who to ſuppreſs them, march'd thither haſtily, with Twenty Thouſand Horſe, in the Year 1594, and not knowing how to get over a broad and rapid River, becauſe it was not fordable, and the Boats were all carry'd away, to prevent Delays, and giving

Boldneſs of Scha Abas King of Perſia.

the

the Enemy time to go ſtrong, he clapp'd Spurs to his Horſe, and leap'd in, which he had no ſooner done, but all his Men follow'd him; yet it had like to have coſt him dear, for he was very near being loſt himſelf, and Four Thouſand of his Men were drown'd. The reſt got over ſafe with him, and reduc'd the Country; tho' with too much Severity, for he is ſaid to have made that ſpeedy Conqueſt, with the Slaughter of above Sixty Thouſand Men. He did this in Imitation of his Grandfather, *Scha Iſhmael Suphy*, or *Sophy*, who marching to *Bagdat*, with Sixteen Thouſand Horſe, and not being able to ford the River it ſtands on, becauſe much ſwell'd at that time, did the ſame, and loſt Twelve Thouſand Men, and falling unexpected on the City, with the Four Thouſand he had left, took it. *Gueylon* lies along the *Caſpian* Sea, which takes Name from it, being by the *Perſians* call'd *Daria Gueylany*, that is, the Sea of *Gueylon*. It is Salt, in Shape Oval, and has no viſible Communication with the Ocean. They reckon it ſomewhat above Three Hundred *Farſangues* in length, that is, Nine Hundred Miles, is ſubject to violent Storms, and bears large Veſſels, but flat bottom'd, having Ports belonging to ſeveral Kingdoms, in which there is a mighty Trade. One of theſe is *Kefah*, a very conſiderable Harbour, and City, belonging to the *Tartars*. The River *Aſtrahan*, on which the *Muſcovites* have a Town, falls into it, with others of Note. In Winter a great Part of it is froze up, and it has much Fiſh. Thus much may ſuffice, that we may return to *Aſcander*, or *Alexander*.

Caſpian Sea.

He departing the Province of *Guylon*, took a Compaſs about by that of *Nacudumya*, where a great City preſuming to oppoſe him, he caus'd it to be burnt down to the Ground. Thence he enter'd *Perſia*, *Darab* met him with an innumerable Army, they came to a Battle, which was obſtinate, and bloody; *Aſcander* got the Day, and *Darab* fled, leaving behind him moſt of his Men dead, with all his Treaſures, and his Wives, and Daughters, who were taken by *Aſcander*, many of thoſe that eſcap'd follow'd *Darab*, moſt whereof were drowned, paſſing a River, which being frozen over, ſome went foremoſt, to try whether it would bear, and being found ſound, *Darab* croſs'd it, but then the reſt coming on in a Throng, it fail'd, and moſt of them periſh'd. When *Darab* was out of his Enemies Reach, he tender'd him other Terms, offering, in caſe he would reſtore him his Wives, and Daughters, and quit his Dominions, to give him all the Revenues thereof, for ſome Years. Whilſt theſe Propoſals were making, he ſent Embaſſadors to the Kings of *Muxarek*, and *India*, his Subjects, and Friends, who being inform'd of his Misfortune, ſoon ſuccour'd him ſo powerfully, that he is ſaid to have had a greater Army than the Firſt. *Aſcander* made a Jeſt of the Terms offer'd him by *Darab*, they met again, and the latter was the Second Time overthrown, who fled to a Fortreſs, where Two of his Favourites ſtabb'd him, and thinking he was dead, fled to *Aſcander*'s Camp, who hearing of this Villany, march'd with all poſſible Speed to find out *Darab*. He found him at the laſt Gaſp, paying him great Reſpect, with many Tokens of Sorrow, and abundance

Darius *defeated.*

Again.

His Death.

abundance of Tears, calling Heaven to witneſs that he was innocent of that Murder. *Darab* return'd him Thanks, ſignifying he believ'd him, and deſiring he would puniſh the Traytors, and be pleas'd to take to Wife his Daughter *Ruxangh*, and not ſuffer his Dominions to fall into any other Hands. *Aſcander* promis'd to perform his Requeſt, and *Darab* dy'd, uttering many melancholy Reflections, and Sentences, concerning the Miſery of human Life, and the Uncertainty of Temporal Proſperity; all which *Mirkond* ſets down at large. He reign'd 14 Years. Roxana.

Chap. XXII.

Aſcander, *or* Alexander *the Great, Nineteenth King of* Perſia, *ſubdues that Kingdom, and what elſe hapned till his Death.*

Aſcander, or *Sakandar*, ſo call'd by the *Perſians*, *Turks*, and *Arabs*, and by another Name *Zulkarnhen*, being the ſame we call *Alexander* the Great, was of ſuch a haughty Diſpoſition, that tho' he was become Maſter of ſo conſiderable a Part of the World, yet he thought it all too little. He extended his Empire over all *Greece*, *Hyeraken*, *Perſia*, *India*, and *Tartary*; and whereas here is frequent Mention made of *Hyeraken*. I will briefly ſay as much as may ſuffice for the better Underſtanding of what follows. The *Arabs* and *Perſians*, aſſign this Name of *Hyerak* to Two Regions, and for a Boundary between Hyerak Province.

between them assign, formerly the City of *Babylon*, and now that of *Bagdat*, seated not far from where the other stood. The one of them next to *Persia*, including several Kingdoms, and Principalities subject to it, and among them the Province properly call'd *Hyerak*, the Metropolis whereof, as has been already said, is the famous City of *Hisphaon*, or *Ispahon*, which Part is generally call'd *Hyerak Agemy*, that is, the *Persian Hyerak*. The other is that of *Babylon*, or *Bagdat* towards *Arabia*, all which Country it includes, as also *Egypt*, and other Provinces, and this they call *Hyerak Araby*, that is, the *Arabian Hyerak*; and to express both together, they say *Hyeraken*, that is, the Two *Hyeraks*, which short Exposition will render this Word intelligible, when it shall occur.

Alexander *not Son to* Philip.

All the *Persian* Historians agree, that *Ascander* was not Son to *Philip*, whom they call *Phaylacus*; but that he was his Wives, and add that in the Reign of *Philip*, a Subject of his, whose Name was *Kolus*, fell in Love with the Queen, and believing the likeliest means to enjoy her was to kill her Husband, he put it in Execution. *Ascander* came up in the midst of the Confusion, attended by *Barakus*, one of his prime Commanders, and meeting the Traytor *Kolus*, slew him, with his own Hand. Then he return'd to the Place, where his Father *Philip* was expiring, gave dismal Token of Sorrow, and Affliction. *Philip* being sensible of his Death, plac'd *Ascander* amidst all the great Men then present, desiring they would admit him for their King, as they accordingly did. Then he put him into the Hands of *Aristotle*, charging him, that as he had till then been his Instruc-

tor,

ctor, he ſhould moſt carefully continue ſo to be for the future, directing him what courſe he was to follow, to govern himſelf and his Subjects equitably. This done he dy'd, and *Aſcander* ſucceeded him, immediately undertaking to ſettle his Kingdom, which at that time, was ſomewhat turbulent. Having perform'd that, and ſubdu'd the Countries of *Magareb en yunon*, which are thoſe of *Greece*, lying Weſt of *Macedon*, he rais'd the beſt Army he was able, and relying on the Promiſes made him by the Grandees of *Perſia*, mov'd thither, where he ſucceeded as has been mention'd in the foregoing Chapter. *Aſcends the Throne.*

He ſeiz'd thoſe that had murder'd *Darab*, whom he executed in the moſt rigid manner; and then as he had promis'd, marry'd his Daughter *Ruxangh*, a Name ſignifying the Light that ſpreads from a Candle, or Flambeau. The Kingdom of *Perſia* he committed to a Kinſman of *Darab*, and divided the reſt into Ninety Governments, and put them under ſo many of his Commanders. He caus'd Three Books to be tranſlated out of the *Perſian* Tongue into *Greek*; one of them was call'd *Teb*, which treated of Phyſick, another nam'd *Noiun*, of Aſtrology, and Mathematicks, *Noiun*, ſignifying Stars; and a Third of Philoſophy. On the River *Jehun* he founded a City, call'd *Marwoh*; another in *Korazon*, by the Name of *Herat*, and that of *Samarkand*, in *Uxbek*. Having ſettled the Affairs of *Perſia*, he departed thence, towards the South Eaſt, travelling through uncooth, and dangerous ways, till he came into *India*. *Marries Roxana, and appoints Governors.* *Builds Cities.*

India having been ſo exactly deſcrib'd by many, I ſhall give no farther Account of it, than briefly to obſerve, what the *Perſians* and

Arabs

India according to Persians, and Arabs.

Arabs mean, when they speak of *India*, which they express by the Word *Industan*, that is, the Region of *India*. This Country reaches from the River *Indus*, being in the Kingdom of *Sinde*, the Residence of the *Abindi*, a Nation well known, call'd in their own Tongue *Abind*, taken from the *Persian*, and signifying Water of *India*, or of the River *Indus*, from *Ab*, Water, and *Ind*, *India*. So that the Coast of *India*, begins at the End of the Kingdom of *Macxon*, with the River *Indus*, which waters the Lands of the Kingdom of *Sinde*; so call'd by the Natives, from a River of the same Name, which is the greatest of Five, that compose the *Indus*. However the *Persians*, and *Arabs*, call this Kingdom *Diul*, and in *Persia*, and at *Lahor*, in the *Mogul*'s Country, they also usually call the *Indus*, *Pang Ab*, that is, Five Waters, from the Five Rivers, that meet in it. One of these, as has been said already, is *Behat*, rising near *Kabul*, towards *Persia*; a second is *Chanab*, coming from *Quexmir*, a Province Fifteen Days Journey from *Lahor*; the third *Rawy*, springs near *Lahor*, the *Mogol*'s Country, and almost the Heart, and Center of all that is call'd *India*. The others come from remoter Parts, the one being call'd *Via*, and the other *Send*, which gives Name to the Country, and Kingdom the *Portugueses* vulgarly call *Sinde*. All these Rivers, tho' their Courses differ, meet at *Bakar*, a Pass on the River *Indus*, equally distant from *Lahor*, and from the Sea. Below it is the Fort of *Seivon*, to secure the Passage of the River downwards. Lower down towards the Sea, yet far distant from it is *Tatah*, a famous City, Capital of the Kingdom of *Send*, or *Sinde*, where the *Portu-*

Indus River.

gueses

gueſes drive a great Trade. Down this River, from *Lahor* runs a great number of *Kiſtes*, and *Chapuzes*, being large Veſſels, loden with ſeveral Sorts of Commodities, great Quantities of Calicoes, of various Kinds, Sugars, Indigo, Cotton, and many other things brought from the Kingdoms of *Lahor*, *Multan*, *Agrah*, *Dely*, *Mandon*, *Sytrob*, *Utrad*, *&c.* to be Shipp'd off at *Bandel*, and thence tranſported to *Ormuz*, whether moſt of it all is convey'd in *Portugueſe*, and *Mooriſh* Ships. [*Note, this was when the* Portugueſes *were Powerful in* India, *for now their Trade is inconſiderable.*]

From the Kingdom, and City of *Utrad*, laſt nam'd, ſome things are brought which I will mention, becauſe I think them ſingular, tho' they do not belong to this Hiſtory. They bring from thence *Sal Gem*, which is found in that ſame Country, and the Natives call it *Geukar*, from *Kar*, *Salt*, and *Geu*, *Barley*, becauſe it is made of the Dew that falls, and congeals in the Fields of Barley; and we to imitate them, take the Words by halves, and ſay *Salgeu*, but more corruptly *Sal Gem*. Hence alſo comes the Spikenard, in the *Arabick*, and *Perſian* call'd *Sembul Tib*, the ſweet ſcented Stem; and both thoſe Nations call the Celeſtial Sign of *Virgo* by this Name of *Sambul*. From *Utrad* alſo comes the moſt excellent *Ingo*, which our Phyſicians call *Aſſa fetida*. This Gum is moſtly found in Three Places, in *Utrad*, as has been ſaid, and that we have thence is very pure, and not ſo bitter; the ſecond Sort is found at *Duzgun*, in *Perſia*, a Town near *Laſton*, between *Komron*, and *Lar*, a City about 30 Leagues from *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*; the Third is brought from the Province of *Karazon*, in *Perſia*.

Utrad Kingdom it's Commodities.

Aſſa fetida.

Persia. There are Two Sorts of Plants that produce this Gum; the one is a tall Shrub, with small Leaves, like those of Rue, and this produces but little; the other is a Root like a Raddish, which shoots out large, and tender Stalks, and the Leaf is very like that of the Infernal Fig-tree. In some Places they Plant them, in others they grow wild, and delight in Mountains, and uncooth Places. Most of it is gather'd about the end of Autumn, for they make Incisions in the Plants, towards the end of the Summer, and then they begin to Weep. In the Year 1596, I had Four Roots at *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*, which I had caus'd to be brought me from *Duzgun*, very like the great *Ynnames*, that come from *Guinea*, and of so strong a scent, that there was no enduring the House for them, and tho' I kept them Eight Months, they never perish'd, nor lost their Scent. The *Arabs* call this Gum by several Names, the chief whereof are, *Haltit*, *Samaktre*, *Hhilbheis*, *Zaefa*; the *Persians* name it *Inghza*; the *Baneans* of *Cambaya* call that of *Utrad*, *Ingub*, and that of *Persia*, *Ingara*, I have said so much, because it is so highly in Request in the Eastern Parts.

Cache Kingdom. Next follows the Kingdom of *Cache*, which besides Calicoes, and much Oyl made of the Seed call'd *Semanum*, and others, breeds many Horses, from the Name of the Country call'd *Kachis*, and these very well supply the want of *Spanish*, *Arabian*, and *Persian* Horses. Some Ports, and Lands, lye betwixt this Kingdom, and that of *Cambaya*, which is not large, but extraordinary Wealthy, tho' it has no Mines of Gold, or Silver. There are Three Sorts of Plants that enrich this Kingdom,

dom, being the Cotton, Indigo, and *Asion*, which is the *Opium* of the *Greeks*, and the *Arabs*, for want of the Letter *p*, insert the *f*, making *Osion*, by the Vulgar corruptly *Asion*. Those who have not seen it, can scarce believe, what immense Quantities of these Three Sorts are continually exported from that Kingdom. Besides, it produces much Sugar, and curious Stones as Christal, Alabaster, Porphiry, Jasper, Lake, Agats, and others, which the Natives cut very curiously; nor do they want Diamonds, Cats Eyes, and many other Commodities of Value. This Kingdom is by the Natives call'd *Guzaratte*, and the *Portugueses* give it the Name of *Cambaya*, from a City in it, where they drove a great Trade, tho' the Capital of it is one up the Inland call'd *Hamet Ewat*, that is, *Homed's City*, that being the Name of the King that founded it. The Inhabitants of it are divided into *Mahometans* and *Gentiles*, but above the Two Thirds one of the latter, yet not all of one Opinion, as I shall soon show; tho' almost all of them being *Pythagoreans*, hold the Immortality of the Soul, and that it receives Reward, or Punishment in it's Metempsychosis, or Transmigration; for they say, that when a Man dies, according as he liv'd virtuously, or wickedly, the Soul passes from his Body into another good, or bad Creature, and from that afterwards either mends, or grows worse, and so on *ad infinitum*. This is the Reason why they Worship Cows, and they were so much recommended to them by *Remah*, a Law-giver of theirs, whom they honour as a God, because they are tame, useful, well kept Creatures, and proper, as they think, to receive the Souls of the

Cambaya Kingdom.

Transmigration of Souls.

Cows Worshipp'd, and why.

thê Juſt; beſides many more Abſurdities they hold. Hence it is they uſe ſo much Charity towards all Beaſts, and Birds, which they will neither eat, nor kill, alledging the Souls of humane Creatures are Tranſmigrated into them. So prevalent is this Notion, that in the City of *Cambanet*, which the *Portugueſes* call *Cambayet*, and is the ſame as *Cambaya*, they have a publick Hoſpital, in which they Cure all ſorts of ſick Creatures, tho' at the ſame time they take little, or no Care at all of ſick Men, or of the Poor, that beg for Relief, to whom their Anſwer is, God did you Harm, and we too. Thus they ſpend vaſt Sums of Mony on Follies, and Superſtitions, as hap'ned whilſt I was in *India*, in the City of *Diu*, where a Pagan *Banean* Merchant ſpent Ten, or Twelve Thouſand Ducats, to celebrate the Wedding of a Cow and a Bull, I will not ſay Thirty Thouſand, as was then affirm'd, becauſe I will be within Compaſs. This was done in the City of *Diu*, on the Coaſt of the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, where the *Portugueſes* have that famous Fortreſs, ſo much talk'd of for the mighty Victories they obtain'd in it, at ſeveral times, and ſince I have nam'd it, and it will not be ſtraying from the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, I will obſerve one Curioſity concerning it, which few have taken Notice of. The Name, the Natives and other *Indians* give to this City is *Dive*, pronouncing the e at the end, extraordinary ſoft; and this is no proper Name, but generical, ſignifying an Iſland, as they ſay *Ange Dive*, the five Iſlands; *Naledive*, which the *Portugueſes*, pronounce *Maldiva*, Four Iſlands, *Selandive*, the Iſland *Ceylon*; ſo that *Diu*, is call'd *Dive*, the Iſland, ſignifying

Hoſpital for Beaſts.

Wedding of a Cow, and a Bull.

Diu Town.

ſignifying it's Preheminence above all others; and when in Speaking, or Writing, they would diſtinguiſh it from others, they call it *Dive Nowlaká*, that is the Iſland of the Nine Millions. The Reaſon they give for it is, becauſe the Daughter of the Lord of the Iſland formerly begging a Boon of her Father, he granted her all the Income of the Cuſtom Houſe for that Day, and it amounted to Nine *Leques*, being Nine Millions of that Country Mony, whence it had the Name of *Dive Nowlaká*; thus we ſee that *Diu*, or *Dive* ſignifies an Iſland, and is no proper Name. There is great variety of Sects among the People of *Cambaya*, inſomuch, that it is rare to find a Houſe whoſe Inhabitants are all of one Opinion, without differing in ſome Point. Some of them eat Fleſh, and others not; ſome will eat, but not kill it, and others both kill, and eat it. Some may kill, and eat certain Creatures, but neither eat, nor kill others; ſome there are that eat no Fleſh, but do Fiſh. Many live upon Milk, and Herbs; others refuſe to eat red Blites, a very common Herb in *India*, alledging there is Blood in them, which they are forbidden to ſhed. They will not eat any *Portugueſe* Preſerves, beſides other Reaſons, becauſe the Sugar is clarify'd with Eggs. Some eat at certain Hours out of Superſtition, and others at quite different, as *Cambayans*, who muſt not eat after the Sun is ſet; and what is very remarkable, they are moſt ſtrict Obſervers, of their Diabolical Ceremonies, and the moſt abſtemious of any People in the Univerſe, and I have heard of, and ſeen incredible Inſtances of their Faſts, which I purpoſely omit, not to exceed my intended Brevity, but

Various Opinions of Cambayans

I ſhall

I shall hint something, as occasion offers.

Baneans. Before I pass from *Cambaya* to any other of the Kingdoms comprehended under the general Name of *India*. I must observe, that all the Natives of this *Guzaratte* Kingdom, are call'd by the general Name of *Vanean*, and the *Portugueses* corruptly pronounce *Baneans*, whereof there is a great Number of

Three chief Sects. Families, Races, and distinct Sects, and among them Three Principal above all the rest, and these are call'd *Jon Kab*, *Mexery*, and *Baman*. The Difference between the Two first is, that those of *Mexery* have Idols, and worship them, which those of *Jon Kab* do not, but acknowledge one only God of Heaven, whom they adore, and acknowledge as Soveraign Beginning, and End of all Things; however it is lawful for them to intermarry with one another, and to eat together, their Customs being the same in all other Respects. The other Race *Baman*, whom we call *Brachmans*, are those who serve in the Temples of the Idols, marry People, and perform the like Functions. Some of

Brachmans. these live upon Charity, but may not eat, or drink in the Houses of the *Baneans*. These have a large City, call'd *Byzanlagar*, in the midst of the Kingdom of *Guzaratte*, with other Towns about it, wherein are about Thirty Thousand Houses of them, a People formerly poor, and despising the World; at present they live upon Tillage, and breeding of Cattel, and some of them are very rich. These generally marry but one Wife, but may if they please, have two, which is not allow'd the *Baneans*, and if the Wife dies, they may not take another; but when the Husband dies, the Wife may marry again.

The

The contrary is us'd in the other Races, where the Wife dying, the Man may marry again; but if the Woman is once a Widow, ſhe muſt ever continue ſo. None of theſe Three Races may kill, or ſhed Blood. It is not without ſome Cauſe that I have ſaid ſo much as to this particular, for elſe I ſhould be oblig'd to do it hereafter, and it is better now.

Dekan is the next Kingdom that follows, its Capital is *Hamedanager*, the Lands of *Cole*, and *Choute*, and others of conſiderable Extent, lying between. In this Kingdom is the City of *Chaul*, belonging to the *Portugueſes*. To the Southward of this lies the Kingdom of *Cunkan*, whereof *Bizapor*, or *Vizapor* is the Metropolis, and within it is comprehended the Iſland and City of *Goa*, ſubject to the *Portugueſes*. Then goes on *Barcelor*, and the Country of *Canara*, vulgarly call'd the Kingdom of the *Chatims*, that is, of Merchants, becauſe it is a ſort of Common-wealth, govern'd by the Citizens, who are all Merchants, and in *India* a Merchant is call'd *Chatim*, and thence the Kingdom of *Chatims*, which is no Name of Contempt, but reckned honourable. The *Perſians* call it *Saudagar*; the *Malayans*, *Quelin*; the *Chineſes*, *Queve*. Thus the Name of *India*, or *Indoſtan*, among the *Perſians* and *Arabs*, is reckned to extend to this Kingdom, and ſpeaking of the Countries which follow farther on, commonly included by us under the Name of *India*, they call them by their particular Names, extending the general Name no farther than the Sea Coaſt; tho' there are many large Kingdoms up the Inland, comprehended in *India*, as may be ſeen in thoſe who

Dekan *Kingdom.*

Cunkan.

Canara.

undertake to describe it, that being foreign from my purpose.

For, *or* Porus *King of* India.

At the Time when *Alexander* enter'd *India*, the chief and mightiest of the Kings then reigning in it, was *For*. Our Histories, it is well known, call him *Porus*; but as has been said, the *Arabs* having no P in their Alphabet, instead of it substitute F, and I, to avoid Confusion, write it as the *Persians* do. But if it should be ask'd, why the *Persians* follow the *Arabs* in this particular, since the Letter P is us'd in *Persia*; I answer, that when the *Arabs* enter'd, and subdu'd *Persia*, they brought in their own Characters, and way of writing, which the *Persians* so intirely apply'd themselves to, that their own was totally lost, and forgotten; so that there is not at present one Man in *Persia*, that understands their Antient Letters; for having often seen some Plates of Metal, with antient Inscriptions on them, I have made Enquiry after the meaning of them, and Men well vers'd in their Antiquities, and very studious have told me, that was *Forz kadin*, after the old Fashion, and therefore I should find no Man that understood it. So that the *Persian* Alphabet, and manner of writing is intirely lost, and extinct; and they have taken up the *Arabick* Letters, and from that Nation they have also taken many Words, and Expressions, which they pronounce like 'em, in *Arabick*, especially as to natural Things. Nor is this any Wonder, considering that in *Spain*, and more particularly in *Portugal*, by their long Continuance among us, they have left many Words of theirs, such as, *Camiza*, a Shirt; *Arros*, Rice; *Azeyte*, Oyl; *Azeytuna*, an Olive; *Romam*, a Pomgranate; *Tamara*,

Persian *Character lost.*

mara, a Tamarind; *Aſelgas*, white *Beets*; *Azucar*, Sugar; *Alfayate*, a Taylor; *Alveytar*, a Farrier; *Aldea*, a Village, and many more.

To return to *Aſcander*, or *Alexander*, having enter'd *India*, and being inform'd of *For*'s mighty Power, he writ to acquaint him with his coming, and to perſwade him peaceably to ſubmit. *For*, or *Porus* met him with his Army, was overthrown, and fled; yet rais'd new Forces, and ask'd Succours of all thoſe that were able to ſend any. Having thus gather'd conſiderable Forces, he march'd again towards *Alexander*, with whom he had ſeveral Rancounters, which took up Twenty Days, with much Slaughter of the *Greeks*. *Aſcander* was at a Nonplus, and apprehenſive of a greater Loſs, and thinking that the ſafeſt way, challeng'd *For* to ſingle Combat, which he accepted of. Being come together, with equal Reſolution, and Weapons, in the Heat of the Fight, a loud Cry was rais'd in *For*'s own Tent, which made him forget himſelf, and look back, to ſee what it might mean; *Aſcander* obſerving that favourable Opportunity, would not let it ſlip; but gave him ſuch a Wound, that he dropt down dead. No ſooner was this known, than all the *Indians* fled ſeveral ways, ſo that in a ſhort time, there was not one to be ſeen in the Field, and *Aſcander* had an open Paſſage into thoſe Countries. He reſolv'd to go on, as far as *Brahema*, where I ſaid before the *Bamans*, or *Brachmans* reſided, being Men that made no Account of this World, and he would go thither, only to ſee and converſe with them. They hearing of it, ſent to deſire he would ſave himſelf that Trouble, ſince he could neither get Gold, nor Silver,

For, or *Porus* routed by Alexander.

And kill'd.

nor extend his Dominions by it. This rather serv'd to make *Alexander* the more eager, who causing his Army to incamp, order'd they should lie still till he return'd, and taking some particular Friends along with him, went away to see the *Brachmans*. Being come to the Place, he stood amaz'd at their Course of Life, Austerity, and Poverty; for they living strictly up to the Law of Nature, fed upon nothing but Herbs, and Fruit, were clad in Skins of Beasts, and spent their time in commendable Employments. He discours'd them, and being pleas'd with their way of living, offer'd them his Friendship. They desir'd him to turn back, without proceeding any farther; but that he told them he could not do, because he was sent. Having taken his Leave, he return'd to the Camp, to prosecute his Conquests. It has been declar'd before, that *Bizanlagar*, which is the Province of *Brahema*, is in the Kingdom of *Guzaratte*, or *Cambaya*, and thither *Tarik Mirkond* says *Alexander* went, and I believe those People from it had the Name of *Brachmans*, as they are call'd in writing, and by us; whether it was the proper Denomination of those People, or differently and corruptly pronounc'd by other Nations, as frequently happens, and the *Portugueses* now call them *Bramanes*, tho' they name themselves *Baman*, or *Bamana*. Nor is there any doubt to be made, but that these are the same, for tho' in Process of time they may have vary'd something in their Ceremonies, and manner of living, however these are still the Priests, or Ministers of the Idol Temples, and to them is the Spiritual Government of the Gentils; and even some Kingdoms are go-

Alexander visits the Brachmans.

Who they were, or are.

vern'd

vern'd in Temporals by them, as thoſe of *Cochim*, and *Porkab*, where none can be Kings but *Bamans*, or *Brachmans*. Enough has been writ of theſe Men, their Manners, and the Superſtition of a white Thread they wear, by way of Diſtinction, about their Neck, next the Skin, and then croſſing from the left Shoulder to the right ſide, and therefore I ſhall not ſpeak of theſe Things.

Of the Joguys, *and* Kalandars.

However, I will ſay ſomething of another Sort of Vagabonds there is in the Eaſt, commonly call'd *Joguys*, and by the *Portugueſes*, *Jogues*, being like Pilgrims, who ſtroul from one Kingdom to another, upon long Pilgrimages. According to antient Cuſtom, as many of theſe, as poſſibly can, at a certain time of the Year, repair to the upper *Cananor*, a Town on the *Indian* Coaſt of *Malabar*, near to a *Portugueſe* Fort, which took Name from it; and there among themſelves, they chuſe a Chief, as it were a High Prieſt, to whom they are all ſubject in Spirituals. After the Election they all return to their Pilgrimages, travelling through ſeveral Countries, exerciſing themſelves, as they ſay, in Virtue, good Works, and an Exemplar Life. There are Two Sorts of theſe People, the one *Mahometans*, call'd *Kalandars*, the other Heathens, being the *Joguis*; both of them wander about, live poorly upon Charity, and are ill clad; but in all Places they paſs thro' they are free, priviledg'd, reſpected, and look'd upon as good Livers, as the Moral Philoſophers were formerly. Some of theſe are acquainted with Stones, Herbs, and other Simples of ſingular Virtue, and Efficacy, which they have learnt by ranging up and down, and ſcarce any of them are free from

much Fraud, and Knavery. The *Mahometan Kalandars*, travelling through colder Countries, eſpecially *Perſia*, and *Turkeſtam*, are better clad, wearing Felts, Sheep Skins, great Caps of the ſame, Stockins, and Shoes, or Buskins. They have ſomething of Jeſters, delight in carrying a green Noſegay, or a Flower, or the like, in their Hands, which they offer to any well dreſs'd Man they meet, reciting, at the ſame time a few *Perſian*, or *Arabick* Verſes, containing ſome Sentence, to incline him to give them an Alms; and tho' they range many Countries, they live for the moſt Part in Towns. The *Joguys*, who are Gentiles, wander in hotter Countries, wear leſs Cloaths, are fonder of the open Fields, and Deſerts, practice more Auſterity, value themſelves upon leading a penitent Life, and in reality do it, in their way, to ſuch a Degree, that it is amazing; for ſome of them live ſeveral Days ſucceſſively without eating, or drinking the leaſt Bit, or Drop, which is very frequent among the *Indian* Gentiles, who do wonders of this Sort. I ſaw one, whoſe Name was *Ralu*, that liv'd Ten Days, and Nights in a Cave on a Mountain, and becauſe I admir'd it, they laugh'd at me, affirming there were others, who faſted much longer, which I afterwards found to be true. Tho' many Perſons at ſeveral times, and in different Places, all agreeing in the ſame thing aſſur'd me, that a Woman was brought before the Great *Mogol*, who had liv'd Four Months, without eating, or drinking; yet I dare not vouch for the Truth of it, as being a thing incredible; and yet ſome of them I had it from were very reputable. When I came from

Wonderful Faſting.

A Fable.

from the Iſland of *Ceylon*, for *Goa*, in the Year 1588, with one that was preſently after Viceroy of *India*, our Fleet came to an Anchor off of *Barcelor*, being deſirous to ſee that *Portugueſe* Fortreſs, and the City of the ſame Name, which they call, the upper *Barcelor*, Capital of *Canara*, and the Kingdom of the *Chatins*, above ſpoken of, I got leave to go a ſhore, and having travell'd about a League and a half, along a pleaſant Road, for ſo far the City is from the Fortreſs, and enter'd, I found it of a conſiderable Extent, enclos'd with a Ditch, and Wall, in which there are Loopholes; being conveniently ſeated, on the Bank of a large, and delightful River. The Houſes well built of Timber, the Temples, which are numerous, of Lime, and Stone, and in the midſt of the City, one larger than all the reſt, ſquare, after the manner of our Cloiſters, with a ſort of Chappel, juſt within the door, made in the Nature of a Carriage, and an Idol in it. All the reſt about the Square, being Galleries, and Dormitories, or Cels to lodge the *Bamans*, or *Brachmans*, who are the Prieſts, or Miniſters belonging to the Temple. Without the Gate, and oppoſite to it, 6 or 7 Paces diſtant, on a plain Spot, ſtood a ſquare Pedeſtal of Lime, and Stone, about 30 ſpaces high, full of Niches on all the 4 ſides, and theſe ſerve for Candleſticks, where there are Lights at Night, and on the Top was a curious large Candleſtick of Metal. I enter'd the City as ſoon as it was Day, and at the Foot of that Pedeſtal or Pile, ſaw a *Joguy*, of a large Stature, brawny, black, and deformed, ſitting on the Ground, without any Cloaths, or Covering, but a little

Barcelor City.

A Temple.

dirty Clout, which cover'd his Nakedness. In his Hand he held a wooden Fork, about two Spans long, on which he sometimes rested one Arm, then the other, and then his Legs, having Ashes all round him, some of which he took every now and then, and strew'd on his Head. This was at the latter End of *March*, when the Heat is very violent in those Countries. Having made this Observation, I went on to see the rest of the City, and returning that way at noon, found the *Joguy* sitting in the scorching Sun as patiently, and sedately, as if he had been in the coolest, and most delightful House. So he continu'd till the Evening, when after Sun set, others came to him, to whom he stood up, and they having brought Boughs, lighted a Fire, and made new Ashes, some of which they strew'd on their Heads, turning their Faces towards the West; then after a Prayer, they parted, and every one went his way, and he return'd to his Post. I enquir'd, whether he had been long there, and they told me several Years, and that neither Heat nor Rain drove him away, nor did he ever stir, unless compell'd by some Necessity of Nature. I have mention'd this I saw my self as an Instance, to show what those Wretches endure, and how much Pains they take to go to the Devil, and how little we do to gain Heaven. Such sort of Men are all the *Joguys*, of whom I have said so much, on Account of what this History mentions of the Austerity of the Inhabitants of *Brahema*.

Strange Penitent Joguy.

Ascander proceeded on to the remotest Parts of *India*, where he met with a mighty King, call'd *Keyd*, who was 300 Years of Age. They convers'd together, with much

Indian *King* 300 *Years old.*

Show

Show of Kindness, and Affection; and *Keyd* having taken his Leave, *Ascander* travell'd Eastward, till he came to *China*, where *Kha Khon* King of that Country came out to meet him, and they agreed peaceably, contracting Amity; in Token whereof *Kha Khon* gave him a Thousand *Mans* of the purest Gold, which amounts to 4000 Marks, each *Man* being little above 4 Marks of Gold, and a Mark is 8 Ounces; 1000 Pieces of rich white Silk; 5000 Garments of *Diba*, an extraordinary rich Sort of Silk, much worn in the East, by Kings and Princes, 100 Swords, the Hilts of Gold, set with Stones; 100 good Horses, richly accoutred; 100000 Ounces of Musk; 200 Pounds of *Calamba* rich Wood, and a great Quantity of the finest and most valuable Furs. It seems ridiculous, and groundless, to say, that *Alexander* went as far as *China*, as *Mirkond* tells us, when it is doubtful, whether ever he reach'd *India*, therefore to give the better Colour to what I have writ, delivering it, as I found it; the Reader is to observe, that it is very usual with the *Persians* to give the Name of *Chin*, to all that is beyond the Provinces of *Maurenahar*, being all *Tartary*, *Kethao Kothan*, by us commonly call'd *Cathay*, *China*, and other Countries lying that way. Thus they call the King, or Soveraign of *Tartary*, King of *China*, making this a general Name, as we do that of *India*, comprizing in it all the East Countries, because the true *India* lies that way; so that as we by the Name of *India*, denote all that lies Eastward of it, in the same manner the *Persians*, because *China* lies East of them, include under that Denomination all the remote Regions bearing that way from

Alexander in China.

Rich Presents made him by that King.

from them. This is the Reaſon why they call Rhubarb, *Revand Chin*, that is Rhubarb of *China*, becauſe the beſt and greateſt Quantity of it, comes from *Gax Khar*, or *Kax Ghar*, a City on the Frontiers of *Uzbek*, near *Kethao Ketham*, or *Cathay*; thus diſtinguiſhing it from another Sort growing in *Perſia*, and *Karaſon*, which they name *Revand Aſpey*, that is Horſe Rhubarb, becauſe us'd for curing of Horſes. The *Portugueſes* alſo bring it from *China*, of which I have ſeen ſome good, but not ſo excellent as the other, nor will it keep ſo long. Some have pretended, that the Reaſon why this is not ſo good, or laſting as the other, which comes by the way of *Perſia*, is becauſe the *Chineſes* boil it, to make uſe of the Decoction; but they are deceiv'd, for in Reality, it is not ſo good of it ſelf; beſides that it is brought by Sea from *China* to *India*, which Country, eſpecially thoſe Parts inhabited by the *Portugueſes* are extremely damp, and if it is kept there but never ſo ſhort a time, being of Neceſſity to be carry'd by Sea again, it muſt decay, and loſe much of its Virtue. The Rhubarb Plant, is like the Turnip, conſiſting of a ſhort Stalk, with ſmall Leaves, riſing but little. They pull it up when ripe, and when cut into ſuch Pieces, as are brought over to us, they run Threads through, and hang them a drying in the Air. Some Author has writ, that they ſtrung them, to hang about the Necks of Cattel, in order to Exportation, as being prohibited; but he was miſinform'd, for it neither is, nor ever was prohibited, and there is ſuch Plenty where it grows, that a *Man* being almoſt 36 Ounces Weight, is generally ſold for a *Sady*, being juſt half a *Royal*, or Three

Rhubarb *the beſt.*

Three Pence. Thus it appears, that *Kha Khon Chiny*, with whom *Mirkond* tells us, *Aſcander* made Peace, was the King of *Tartary*, as we call it, or as the *Perſians* name it *Tatar*, and the Inhabitants of thoſe Parts *Tataron*, as we do *Tartars*, whoſe Empire they uſually divide into Two Parts. The one is next to *Europe*, above the *Caſpian* Sea, the Metropolis whereof is *Kefah*, on the Bank of the ſaid Sea. The other being the principal, bordering on *China*, properly call'd *Khan balek*, ſignifying the Kings, or Lords City, from *Balek*, City, and *Khan*, King, or Lord. I know there are thoſe that write it *Balu*, but it ought to be *Balek*. This is the Great *Tartar*'s Court, of whoſe Wealth and Grandeur, this is a ſufficient Teſtimony, that it generally has a Garriſon of Sixty Thouſand Men within the Walls, and tho' this ſeems extravagant, there is nothing more certain; for I making a Queſtion of it, enquir'd and was fully convinc'd of the Truth. *Chinguys Khan* was King of thoſe Parts, and the firſt that brought thoſe Nations into *Perſia*, of whom ſomething ſhall be ſaid in its Place. There is much very pure Gold in thoſe Parts, which perhaps is the ſame with that of *Pachim* and *Sucheo*, or *Fucheo*, in *China*, and extraordinary fine. Thence alſo comes the greateſt Quantity of Musk, by the *Arabs*, and *Perſians*, call'd *Mexk*, *Mesk*, or *Mosk*. The *Perſians* alſo call a Mouſe, *Moxh*, not that thoſe ſweet ſcented ones of *India*, which exhale a moſt fragrant Odour, are any thing a kin to the Creatures that produce the Musk; for theſe are call'd *Gazelles*, being large almoſt of the Species of Deer, or very like them; whereas the others are very ſmall Mice, like thoſe we call

Tartar Empire.

Of Muſk.

call Shrews. All the Musk that comes not from *China*, is much more pure and excellent, as is that brought through *Bengale*, *Pegu*, and other Parts; and the Reason this is better, is, because it falls not into the Hands of the *Chineses*, who cannot endure to let any thing pass without Sophistication.

All these Nations, whether *Uzbeks*, *Tartars*, or those *Khetao Khotan*, or *Cathay*, differ little from the *Chineses* in Aspect, or Habit. They are fair, well limb'd, have small sunk Eyes, and thin frizly Beards. There is enough writ upon this Subject, for which reason I do not dilate farther upon it. Neither will I say much of the *Calamba*, it being well known to all Men, that the best comes from the Kingdom of *Champa*, neighbouring upon *China*, and the next to it from *Kacho Chin*, which the *Portugueses* vulgarly call *Cochinchina*, and it is wonderful, that very often one and the same Trunk of a Tree produces the *Calamba*, the Eagle Wood, or Lignum Aloes, and another Sort of Wood, different from them both, which I have seen several times, and this is the Reason, why, when they fall these Trees, they cast them into Bogs, or the Ouze of Rivers, to the End the useless Wood may there rot, and consume, and the good be preserv'd. Some thing of this Sort is also found in the Woods of *Malaca*, and the neighbouring Kingdom of *Pam*, which the *Portugueſe* call *Pao*. The *Arabs* and *Persians* call the Eagle Wood, or Lignum Aloes, *Ud*; and the *Calamba*, *Kalumbuck*. Having spoken briefly of this precious Wood, I will say something not amiss of the *Sandal*, or Sanders, whose Virtue is not inferior to the other. The white, for there is no distinct Species of the yellow,

Calamba, *and* Lignum Aloes.

Sandal, *or* Sanders.

yellow, but only the white, through ſome Accident, contracts ſomething of that Colour. This white I ſay, grows in the Iſland *Timor*, 500 Leagues diſtant from *Malaca*, and is call'd in the Language of the ſaid Iſland *Chandava*, whence the *Arabs* and *Perſians*, corruptly name it *Sandal*, as we do from them. The Trees grow on high craggy dry Clifts, and produce a Sort of Fruit like the Bay Berries, but ſquare, which being eaten by the Birds, they evacuate it again, with their Excrement, in ſeveral Places, whence new Trees grow up, as happens with the Cloves in the *Molucco* Iſlands. Theſe Sandal Trees, before they are cut down, are try'd cutting out a Piece as we do with Melons, to ſee whether they are fit to fall; as alſo to know whether it be *Sandal*, or another Sort of Wood, which is ſometimes ſo like it, that the Eye can ſcarce diſtinguiſh between them.

Brutality of the People of Timor.

In this Iſland of *Timor* there daily happen very ſtrange Accidents, to the *Portugueſes* that ſail thither for *Sandal*, occaſion'd by the Brutality of the Natives, which perhaps is not to be match'd, and whereof I will ſay ſomething, for the Diverſion of the Reader. Theſe People do not ſail upon the Sea, nor do they underſtand any thing of it; and it is a known Truth, that the uſe of Fire is very new among them, having liv'd all paſt Ages without it. Among other ridiculous Opinions they hold, one is, that all thoſe who die there, go to live at *Malaca*, and it has happened there, that a *Portugueſe* Ship going thither to trade, and one of the Seamen ſomewhat reſembling the Son of a Native, that was dead, the Father laid hold of him, crying, *my dear Child, how could you be ſo forgetful; why*

did

did you ſtay ſo long, without taking Compaſſion of
3 Comical *me, who am quite weary of expecting you, and*
Stories. *looking to your Buffaloes, and Goats? There they are all multiply'd, take them, for I muſt repoſe my ſelf.* The *Portugueſe* being a ſly Fellow, receiv'd all that was offer'd him, and exchang'd it for a conſiderable Quantity of Sandal, with which he return'd home. A well known Inhabitant of *Malaca*, going in a Ship of his own to this Iſland, arriv'd in a Port of it, at the time when the King of that Place was lamenting the Death of his Father, who was newly departed this Life. He went a ſhore, viſited the King, and mixing among his People, made the beſt ſhow he was able of weeping with them; the King looking upon him as a good natur'd Man, loaded his Ship with *Sandal*, and diſmiſs'd him. Another came into another Port, upon the like occaſion, the King deſir'd him to reſtore his Father to Life; the *Portugueſe* anſwer'd, he knew the King of *Malaca*, ſo they call'd the Governor, was the Perſon that muſt raiſe the dead, as they ſaid; but that he had no orders from him for ſo doing; but that to ſerve him, he would carry his Father along with him, and deſire him to do it ſpeedily. The King was well pleas'd, the *Portugueſe* carry'd the Carcaſe aboard, taking it in on one ſide, and throwing it over into the Sea, on the other, with a good Weight of Stones to it; and this good Service was requited with his whole Lading. A Thouſand ſuch Accidents as this have hapned there.

Medicinal Woods. There are other Sorts of Wood of ſingular Virtue in this Iſland; yet not ſo valuable, becauſe they are not become a Commodity among them are, *Vidare pute*, ſignifying,

white

white Apple, and *Vidare labor*, that is, Sea Apple, in the *Malayan* Language, which are of ſingular uſe, againſt ſeveral Diſeaſes. In *Solor*, another Iſland cloſe by, is another Sort by the *Portugueſes* call'd *Pao de Solor*, that is, *Solor* Wood, of no leſs Virtue. There is alſo a Compoſition, or Antidote againſt Poiſon, which they call *Belyla*, being the Name of a *Mahometan* who invented it, and is like Shoemakers Wax, held in great Eſteem. The Natives of *Timor* generally eat Buffalo's, and Goats Fleſh, with the Blood, Skin, and Hair, ſcarce heated at the Fire; and ſome Herbs and Roots; the reſt of their Cuſtoms are ſuitable, and yet ſo prevalent is the Avarice of thoſe who trade thither, that rather than be diſappointed of *Sandal*, when they viſit their Kings, they ſit down among their Subjects, not on Chairs, or on Carpets ſpread upon the Ground, and feed upon this Diet, and whatſoever elſe the King orders them, which is all wretched. To purchaſe *Sandal*, they carry Gold, mix'd with a third or fourth Part of Silver; *Loyas*, being a Sort of *Laton*, brought from *China*, whereof they make Bracelets; *Patolas*, which a kind of Callicoes from *India*, and other things. There is alſo Red Sandal, or Sanders, but in a Country very remote from *Timor*, that is, in *India*, on the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, about the City of St. *Thomas*, or *Meliapor*. Great Quantities of both Sorts are carry'd to *China*, *Bengale*, *Cambaya*, *Pegu*, *Arabia*, and *Perſia*. *Diba* mention'd above is an extraordinary rich Silk, worn in the Eaſt, by Kings and Princes. The weight the *Portugueſes* in *India* generally call *Mao*, is by the *Perſians* nam'd *Man*, and *Men*, being the ſame as *Mina*, the Value, and Quantity whereof

Man a Weight.

whereof varies according to the ſeveral Countries. *Zahkyrey Koarrazmxa*, which with us ſignifies *Zachary*, King of *Koarrazm*, a famous Phyſician, who writ a Book very like that of *Meſue*, us'd in *Perſia*, treats very fully of theſe Weights and Meaſures, and calls this we ſpeak of *Min*. On the Coaſt of *Melinde*, they name it *Majna*; the Reader will excuſe this Digreſſion, for I omit many things to avoid being tedious.

Alexander *the Great dies.*

To return to *Aſcander*, he having receiv'd thoſe Preſents already mention'd from *Hhakon Chiny*, took leave of him, and directing his courſe towards *Maxarek*, ſubduing ſeveral Nations by the way, return'd into the Weſt. At *Hermez*, near *Aureg*, in the Territory of *Babylon*, he fell ſick, and dy'd; when he had liv'd 36 Years, and reign'd 17, having been Soveraign of 22 large Provinces in the 3 Parts of the World. The Kings of Thirteen of them always attended him. The *Perſians* extol the Life, and Actions of *Aſcander*, as wonderful, and have writ many Books in Verſe and Proſe, upon that Subject, full of abundance of excellent Flights, and Sentences; and *Mirkond* ſpends much time upon this Relation, delivering ſome things, which ſeem incredible; but my Deſign being only to treat of the Kings of *Perſia*, laying down their right Succeſſion from one to another, I do not pretend to be too particular. Thus we will conclude the Life of *Aſcander*, whom the *Perſians* reckon among their Kings, and allow 14 years to his Reign.

CHAP.

Chap. XXIII.

Of the Inter-regnum *in* Persia.

Upon the Death of *Alexander*, all Things were full of Confusion and Disorder, throughout his Dominions; and in *Persia* there hapned an *Inter-regnum*, which lasted 72 Years; during which time it was govern'd by *Wazirs*, or Viziers, being Regents; till at last their Rule expiring, the Kingdom was restor'd to the Race of the former Kings, which was continu'd as follows.

Chap. XXIV.

Of Schapur, *or* Sapor, *the Twentieth King of* Persia.

The 72 Year after the Death of *Ascander*, during which *Persia* was govern'd by *Wazirs*, or Viziers; being expir'd, the Crown was conferr'd upon *Schapur*, or *Sapor*, *Darab*'s Kinsman, whose Brother *Mirkond* calls him, according to the common way of speaking us'd among the *Persians*, and *Arabians*, who call any near Relation Brother, and even in Holy Writ this same Expression is so us'd. Nothing remarkable worth mentioning hapned during the Reign of this *Schapur*, nor do they write any more concerning him.

Chap. XXV.

Of Ardxir Babar Khon, *the Twenty Firſt King of* Perſia.

Ardſchir Baha Khon ſucceeded *Schapor* in the Throne, was a good King, and gave general Satisfaction during his Reign. According to the *Perſian* Chronology, this King rul'd at the time when our Saviour *Jeſus Chriſt* was upon Earth, and tho' ſeveral Objections may be made, I ſhall not undertake the Controverſy, becauſe I have only undertaken to deliver what I found written, always ſticking to my intended Brevity. [*Here muſt be ſome Caſma in the* Perſian *Hiſtory, for from the Death of* Alexander *to the Birth of Chriſt, there paſſed about* 220 *Years, by which we may gueſs thoſe People have little, or no Account of their Affairs, from the Death of that Monarch, till the Incarnation of our Lord.*] This King's Sirname was *Baba Khon*, which in the *Perſian* ſignifies the ſame as *Abu Malek*, in the *Arabick*, that is, Father and Lord, or Father King; for the *Perſians* vulgarly call a Father *Pedar*, but when they ſpeak of any Perſon, to whom particular Reſpect is due, by the Name of Father, they uſe this Word *Baba*, as *Baba Adam*, *Baba Noe*, Father *Adam*, and Father *Noah*. *Khon*, or *Khan* is a Title of Honour ſignifying King, or Lord, and ſo in the *Arabick*, *Abu* is Father, and *Malek* King, of which Titles I ſhall ſay ſomething more hereafter.

Ardſchir reign'd in the Days of our Saviour.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Schapur Zabel Ketaf, *the Twenty Second King of* Perſia.

Ardſchir Baba Khon dying, the Crown of *Perſia* devolv'd upon *Schapur Zabel Ketaf*, who being an Infant, and a Brother he had younger, the Tuition of him was committed to an Unkle of his, Brother to his Father, nam'd *Ardſchir*, and Son to *Hormoz*, whom many of the Great Men would have made King, and ſeveral of the *Perſian* Hiſtorians reckon him as ſuch; but *Mirkond* ſays he refus'd it, allaying that Heat, and Deſire of Change by his extraordinary Prudence. After he had govern'd ſome Years, during his Nephew's Minority, the Adminiſtration was put into the young King's Hands, at a convenient time, which *Scapur Zabel Ketaf* manag'd to the general Satisfaction of all Men, being a virtuous and prudent Prince. Such Monarchs never wanting Enemies, it hapned that *Schapur* lying aſleep in his Tent in the Night, ſome Perſons never known enter'd it, and ſtifled him; then going out, cut the Cords that held it up, ſo that it fell upon him, and the Night being rainy and windy, they gave out, it had been thrown down by the Storm, and had kill'd him. Thus ended *Schapur Zabel Ketaf*, whoſe Death was much lamented throughout all *Perſia*, by reaſon of his Goodneſs.

Schapur *murder'd.*

Chap. XXVII.

Of Baharon Kermonixa, *the Twenty Third King of* Persia.

IT was mention'd before, that *Schapur Zabel Ketaf* had a younger Brother, call'd *Baharon*, whom he had made Governor of *Kermon*, whence he had the Sirname of *Kermon Scha*, signifying *Baharon* King of *Kermon*.

Kermon Province. This *Kermon* is a large, and Principal Province of *Persia*, between it and the Country of *Karazon*, famous in the East for some particular Commodities it affords, which I will briefly mention. It has a City of the same Name, which communicates it to all the Province. Speaking of *Schiras*, the Capital of *Pars*, or *Persia*, I took notice, it abounded

Rose Water. in Rose Water; but besides others of less Note, there are 4 Principal Places, where it is made in great Quantities. The best, which is distill'd, they make at *Schiras*, and *Yazd*; the other not so good, as being made by Decoction, and Infusion, and therefore soon decaying, at *Kermon*, and *Duzgun*. The Rose Water in *Persia* is call'd by Two several Names; *Gulab*, which is Rose Water; and *Areka Gul*, the Sweat of the Rose, a Name proper enough for that which is distill'd. Of that which is made by Decoction, a very great Quantity is every Year exported to all the Eastern Parts. Carpets, by the *Persians* call'd *Kalichey*, are made in Three Parts of *Persia*, the richest, finest, and highest priz'd, at *Yazd*, some of which I have seen so curiously wrought, that they were valu'd at above

above a Thouſand Ducats a piece; ſo that when they ſpeak of a *Yazd* Carpet, which in *Portugueſe* they corruptly call *Dodiaz*, it is to be underſtood of the fineſt, and beſt. The next in Goodneſs are of this Kingdom of *Kermon*, and the Third thoſe of *Karazon*. There are ſome alſo made at *Agra*, *Bengale*, and *Cambaya*, but not fine. The Name of *Alcatifa*, by which the *Portugueſes* call a Carpet, had its Original before the Kings of *Ormuz* went over to live in the Iſland of *Gerun*, where they ſince reſided, and reſum'd their former Title; the Mart or Fair was kept in another Iſland, call'd Keys, as I obſerv'd in ſpeaking of *Ormuz*. The *Arabian* Merchants, who went thither to trade, both going and coming always paſs'd through *Katifa*, a Port on the Continent of *Arabia*, in the Government of *Jaſaph*, oppoſite to the Iſland *Barben*, or *Baharen*, and thence convey'd their Goods to ſeveral Parts. Now Carpets being one of their Principal Commodities, when any ask'd whence they brought them; they anſwer'd, *Al Catifa*, that is, from *Catifa*, and thence the Name was given. So the Seed Pearl in *Spaniſh*, and *Portugueſe* call'd *Aliofar*, took it from the greateſt Quantity of it being taken on the Coaſt of *Julfar*, a Port of *Arabia*, in the ſame Gulph of *Perſia*, that is, from *Al Julfar*, ſignifying, of *Julfar*, whence corruptly *Aljofar*; tho' ſince that time better Fiſheries have been diſcover'd in other Parts. *Kermon* alſo produces *Tutty*, which the *Perſians* call *Tutyah*, and is found only in this Province, and only upon one Mountain, 12 Farſangues, that is 36 Miles diſtant from the City, whence it is carry'd to all Parts of the World, in great Quantities. *Carpets.* *Tutty.*

It is made by moulding the Earth of the Mountain with fair Water, wherewith they cover a Sort of Earthen Moulds, which they afterwards bake, as Potters do their Ware, and then taking it off the Moulds, the Tutty remains. This they send in Chests to sell at *Ormuz*, and those who buy, divide it into Tutty, Stone, of which there is a great Quantity, and Dust; each of which is sold by it self, and all is made use of. Dr. *Garcia Dorta* was misinform'd, for in his Dialogues of the Simples of *India*, he says, the Tutty is made of the Ashes of a certain Tree, and Fruit, call'd *Gune*. It is true there is a Sort of Fruit in *Persia*, call'd *Gaon*, of the Shape and Bigness of large Cherry Stones, cover'd with a thin green, and Orange colour Peel, or Film, which the Natives use by way of Diversion, as we do in picking of Pine Apple Kernels, and they say, the Effect is quite contrary to that of the Tutty, which is made in *Kermon*, as has been said. There is another thing no less useful in the Province of *Kermon*, which is to be found in no other Country, being the Herb against the Worms, by the *Persians* call'd *Dram nah Kermony*, that is, the Medicine brought from *Kermon*; or the Medicine against the Worms, for *Dram nah* is the proper Name of that Simple, and *Kermon* is equivocal, signifying the Kingdom of that Name, and the Worms. Hence corruptly comes the Word Crimson, of *Kermez*, because made of the Scarlet Worms, and so among Physicians the Composition call'd *Alkermez*; for *Kermez* is the Singular Number, and *Kermon* the Plural. This puts me in mind of a Story, a famous *Persian* Poet, call'd *Cocia Yafez*, that is, *Japhet*, tells in his ingenious Works in Rhime.

Error of Dr. Garcia Dorta.

Crimson and Alkermez whence so call'd.

He

He feigns, that a Prince walking over a Field, heard a Voice, that call'd him by his Name: Turning that way, he ſaw a Skull, which he went up to, and ask'd, who it was that knew, and nam'd him. The Skull anſwer'd, you muſt know, I was a Man, as you are, and wore a *Tage*, that is, a Crown, or Royal Diadem, on my Head; I conquer'd, and ſubdu'd many Countries, and only wanted to reduce *Kermon*. I made ready for the Enterprize, and when I thought to aſſault *Kermon*, was my ſelf attack'd, and devour'd by *Kermon*, (that is, by Worms, as has been explicated above) therefore do you take warning by me, *&c.* This in the *Perſian*, taking the double meaning of the Word *Kermon*, runs very well. *Kermon* alſo produces the *Surmah*, which is a certain black tranſparent Stone, looking as if it were ſtrew'd with black Sand. There are Two Sorts of it; the one coming from *Kermon*, and *Karazon*, being the beſt, and moſt valu'd; and another call'd *Moky*, becauſe it comes from *Mecca*, or *Moka*, in the red Sea. The *Arabs*, *Perſians*, and *Indians* make much uſe of this Stone, to cure ſore Eyes, being of great Virtue compounded with other Simples; as alſo by way of Ornament, Men and Women blacking their Eyes with it, which they think ſets them off very much. But a *Perſian* Lover was not of this Opinion, who ſeeing his Miſtreſſes Eyes ſmear'd with this *Surmah*, tho' it is likely her own were black, and beautiful, as moſt of the *Perſian* Women have them, among other amorous Expreſſions, ſaid to her, *Cheſm Siah dary Surmah che tacony*; which is as much as to ſay, why do you uſe *Surmah*, when there is no need of it, ſince your Eyes are black,

Perſian *Fiction.*

Surmah, *a Stone for the Eyes.*

and beautiful. It is likely this *Jezebel* made use of this Stone to black her Eyes, when she look'd out of the Window, to please *Jehu*, who order'd her to be kill'd. This may suffice, as to the Province of *Kermon*, where *Baharon* was Governor.

He was speedily advis'd of his Brother's unfortunate Death, and his own Accession to the Throne, which he took Possession of, without any Opposition. *Baharon* was of a graceful Presence, a sound Judgment, and prudent Conduct, so that he govern'd his Dominions 10 Years with general Applause; at the End whereof there hapned a Division in the Court, follow'd by such a Mutiny, that he was fain to go in Person to appease it, but when he had almost done it, a Kinsman of his, who waited such an Opportunity, to destroy him, let fly an Arrow, from amidst the Crowd, and aim'd so well, that it pierc'd his Bowels, and he dropt down dead, to the great Regret of all his People, who liv'd contentedly under him.

Baharon murder'd.

Chap. XXVIII.

Of Yazd Gerd, *the Twenty Fourth King of* Persia.

As soon as *Baharon* was dead, the *Persians* proclaim'd his Son *Yazd Gerd* King. He, before his Accession to the Throne was so much honour'd, and respected by all Men, that every one endeavour'd to serve, and please him, and he was thought to deserve it. But as soon as crown'd, his Behaviour alter'd

alter'd with his Fortune; for he became haughty, cruel, and covetous, and was always moſt obſtinate, and implacable, when ſu'd to for Mercy in humbleſt manner. He was wont to ſay, there were Three Things from which no Mercy could be hop'd, or expected; and theſe were Fire, the Sea, and an angry King. Being marry'd, he liv'd diſcontented, becauſe tho' his Wife had bore ſeveral Children, none of them liv'd. In the Heighth of this Diſſatisfaction, his Queen prov'd with Child, and at her time was deliver'd of a Son they call'd *Baharon*, who living longer than any of the others, all which had dy'd within the Month, put his Parents in hopes that he would thrive. His Father *Yazd Gerd*, who wiſh'd for his Life, by the Advice of the Phyſicians, caus'd him to be nurs'd from the Court, in a Part of *Arabia*, putting of him into the Hands of a King that was his Subject, call'd *Neaman Ben Amarah ulkeys*, a Man of much Integrity; who carry'd the Infant home with him, into his own Country, which enjoy'd a ſerene, and temperate Air, cauſing him to be bred as became ſuch a Perſon. When he was come to Years of Diſcretion, *Neaman* his Tutor dy'd, leaving a Son call'd *Manzar* in his Place, a Man of as much Worth, and Fidelity as the Father. In the mean while, *Yazd Gerd* govern'd his Kingdom with general Diſlike, and Hatred of all the People, by Reaſon of his Wickedneſs, and Tyranny, which he continu'd to the End of his Days, and that was ſuitable to his Life. As he ſtood one Day looking upon a Horſe, he highly valu'd that Creature, without any Provocation gave him ſuch a kick, that he dropp'd down dead, and ne'er ſpoke

Yazd Gerd 4 *wicked King.*

Baharon *Son to* Yazd Gerd.

Yazd Gerd *kill'd by his Horſe.*

spoke one Word. The News of his Death spread abroad throughout the Kingdom, was very little lamented, and he reign'd 22 years, and 5 Months. The Great Men consulted about the Succession, and fell into hot Debates, some insisting that the antient Course of Succession should not be interrupted, whilst others fearing lest *Baharon* should prove as bad as his Father, alledg'd, that the Crown ought to be bestow'd on one that might deserve it by his Virtue. This Party being numerous and strong, prevail'd, and enthron'd *Kezere Khozrao*, a near Kinsman of the late King, who tho' he had some good Qualities, was most recommended by Bribery, and large Promises. *Baharon*, who was in *Arabia*, receiv'd the News of his Father's Death, and of these Commotions, and Innovations at the same time, and advising with *Manzar* the Son of *Neaman*, ask'd his Assistance for recovering of the Kingdom, which belong'd to him of Right, and had been usurp'd by *Kezere Khozrao*. *Manzar* espous'd his Quarrel, furnish'd him with 10000 Horse to set forward, and follow'd himself with 30000 more, making up 40000. His Approach perplex'd the *Persians*, and many of the prime Men joyn'd him; but *Kezere Khozrao* met him with a numerous Army. Some were much concern'd at the publick Danger, and propos'd an Accommodation, before they came to Blows, which they manag'd so dexterously, that *Baharon* was receiv'd as King, and *Kezere Khozrao*, whom several *Persian* Historians reckon among their Kings, was the 1st that acknowledg'd him.

Kezere Khozrao chosen.

He submits and Baharon is receiv'd.

CHAP.

Chap. XXIX.

Of Baharon Gur, *the Twenty Fifth King of* Perſia.

Baharon being poſſeſs'd of the Throne, the firſt Thing he did, was at the Requeſt of *Manzar*, to grant a general Pardon to all thoſe, who had been againſt him, during the late Troubles; beſtowing many Favours on others. He reſtor'd the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, and adorn'd his Dominions with many magnificent publick Structures, building ſome new, and repairing ſuch as were decay'd with Age. *Manzar*, who had bred him up, and been the occaſion of recovering his Crown, was ſent home with much Honour, and conſiderable Rewards; leaving one of his Sons at Court, where he was preferr'd. *Baharon* was much belov'd both by his own Subjects and Strangers, for his Generoſity and Affability; and put brave and diſcreet Men into all his Fortreſſes and Frontiers, to govern, and defend them. His Dominions enjoy'd Peace and Tranquility, ſo that his Reign was reckned moſt fortunate; for the *Perſians* wholly addicted themſelves to Pleaſure, without any Application to the Exerciſe of Arms, which they almoſt look'd upon as uſeleſs, having liv'd ſo long in Peace. In the Height of this Proſperity, Advice was brought from *Karazon*, that *Hba Khon Chiny*, King of *Tartar*, or *Tartary*, obſerving the Negligence of the *Perſians*, was broke into their Territories, with an Army of 250000 Men, doing much Harm. The *Perſians* were at a Loſs, the great ones met, attended *Baharon*,

Baharon's *good Government.*

Happy Times.

Tartars *invade* Perſia.

haron, repreſented to him the imminent Danger, deſiring he would apply ſome ſpeedy Remedy. He return'd a cold Anſwer, making little Account of what they ſaid; but order'd all Things to be made ready to go a hunting. There were 7 Kings his Subjects, who continually reſided at Court, whom he acquainted with his Deſign of going abroad, to divert himſelf. They attended him, with a ſmall Retinue, and he picking out 300 choſen Men of his Guard, went into the Country with a great Number of Hawks, Faulcons, Gerfaulcons, Hounds, and other Things for Sport, which made all Men conclude him an inſignificant Mad Man.

Hunting much us'd in Perſia.

The *Perſian* Kings, and great Men ever were, and ſtill are much addicted to hunting, which coſts them a great Part of their Eſtates, and they reckon it an Employment becoming their Grandeur. Hence *Baharon* had the Sirname of *Gur* given him. *Gur* is a *Perſian* equivocal Word, of a double meaning, as ſignifying, the Beaſt we call a wild Aſs, which this King ſingularly affected to hunt, and it is alſo the Grave or Cave, in which a dead Body is bury'd. For this Reaſon, when *Baharon* dy'd, among other ingenious Elegies, ſeveral Poets made on him, there was one, which took notice, that *Baharon* who always was in purſuit of, and taking *Gur*, that is, the wild Aſſes, was himſelf then taken by *Gur*, that is the Grave, which make a pleaſant Quibble in the *Perſian* Tongue. This Sport is practic'd in *Perſia*, and other Eaſtern Parts, with Birds, and four footed Beaſts: the Hawks are flown at Birds, as is us'd among us; as alſo at other Creatures, as Deer, *Gazelles*, Hares, and others, for ſome Falcons,

Hunting, and hawking in Perſia.

and

and other ſuch Birds of Prey, being bred to it, and let fly at thoſe Creatures, faſten on their Heads, whence they peck at their Eyes, and other parts, which ſtops their Flight, till the Huntſmen come in, and take them. They have ſeveral ways of Hunting with Beaſts. They make uſe of Ounces, or Leopards tam'd for the purpoſe, which they carry on Carts in the Armies; and private Perſons on Horſeback behind them, on Iron Plates, that they may not hurt the Horſe with their Claws. They have alſo great numbers of Hounds, and Grey-hounds very good, and extraordinary ſwift. The Game is the ſame we have here, and ſome over and above, as the *Gazel*, being a ſort of Deer, but ſlenderer in the Body, the Horns ſharp, ſtraight, and twiſted, the Eyes large, and extraordinary ſparkling, inſomuch that the *Perſians* to extol a Ladies Eyes, ſay they are like the *Gazel*'s, ſo they call this Creature, whoſe Fleſh is very wholeſome, and well taſted. There is a ſort of wild Sheep, by the *Perſians* call'd *Pâgen*, theſe, as well as the *Gazelles*, are always in craggy Places, and differ little from our common Sheep, ſaving that they are thicker Body'd, and larger, and wonderful ſtrong; for I ſaw one ty'd to a Braſs Demy Falconet, and he drew it after him, without any Difficulty. Their Horns are like thoſe of our Sheep, but each of them as big as half a Hoop of a Pipe, thick, and ſtanding back ſo far that they cover their hind Quarters, Nature having providently made them ſo, to the end that when, being hard drove, by the Huntſmen, and Dogs, they throw themſelves off the Cliffs, and Rocks, always chuſing the moſt dangerous Place, they may do it, without receiving

Gazelles.

Pagen, *wild Sheep.*

ving any Hurt; thus they cast themselves headlong on their Horns, and tumbling safely upon them, can avoid those that pursue them. There is another pleasant way of Hunting Deer with Deer, us'd in *India*, which is done by having some tame, and bred to hand, which when they would make Sport, they carry abroad into the Field, with a Cord on their Horns, and a Noose in it, Being thus turn'd loose, they go away to find others of their Kind, which are very numerous, and coming up to them, touch their Horns, as it were in kindness, and being well taught, put their Horns into the Noose, so that they are taken. This is very frequent, in the Countries of *Damam* and *Bazaim*, and the others they call Northern in *India*. There *Wild Cows.* are also wild Cows, differing much from the common sort in Whiteness, and Strength, of whose Tails they make *Combalas*, much valu'd among both Northern, and Southern *Indians*, to drive the Flies away. Elephants are likewise Hunted, but several ways, for in the Land of the *Cafres*, or *Blacks*, being that Part of *Africk*, which is wash'd by the *Indian* Ocean, about *Mozambique*, *Mombaza*, *Melinde*, and the other Nations, and Kingdoms where we Trade, the Natives making no *Hunting of Elephants.* other Advantage of the Elephants, but their Teeth, drive them into Pits cover'd over, where they kill them. In the Kingdoms of *Arracam*, and *Syam*, they erect a sort of Redout, in the thickest part of the Woods, with a round Spot enclos'd by Two, or Three Hedges, one without another, all of Masts, and mighty Timbers, and having gather'd a great multitude of People, they beat the Wood, making a hideous Noise of Shouts, and Instruments,

ſtruments, and the Elephants frighted at it, run into that Place at Two little Doors, which have Draw-bridges to them; when a Number is got in, they ſhut the Doors, and there by Beating, Hunger, Threats, and good Words, tame them by degrees, ſo that they come out very gentle, and fit for Service. In the Iſland of *Ceylon*, they take them by Love, and it is no Wonder that Men ſhould be ſo enſnar'd, ſince it happens to the Beaſts; for they ſend a tame Female, which they generally call *Alcah*, into the Woods, with a *Cornaca*, being an *Indian* that knows how to talk to, and govern an Elephant, conveniently ty'd under the Females Belly, who being come among the other Elephants, tells her what ſhe is to do, and how ſhe is to provoke them, and when he finds they are in Luſt, he bids her return home, and they follow her very gently, till they are in a Place where they are afterwards tam'd. The Elephants lie down to ſleep on the Ground, like all other Creatures, and have no difficulty in riſing. Being ſo large, they travel very faſt, without going out of their Pace. There are great Numbers of them throughout all the Eaſt, and it is obſerv'd, that thoſe of other Countries pay a Reſpect to thoſe of *Ceylon*. The ſtory of their honouring the Moon, is a meer Fable, as is that of their Waſhing themſelves when ſhe is new, and their way of Copulation, for the Male, and Female generate like other Beaſts, all whom they far excel in Senſe, and Inſtinct. Only the Male Elephants have thoſe great Teeth, we call Ivory, and the *Spaniards Marfil*, from the *Arabick*, and *Perſian Alfil*, a Tooth. The female Elephants have not thoſe great Teeth;

but

but in the Year 1590, when *John Correa Brito* was Governor of the Fortress of *Columbo*, in *Ceylon*, a female Elephant bred Two of those Teeth, at *Seitavaca*, the Court of *Raju*, the last Heathen King of that Island, which he looked upon as a great Blessing, and the like was never known in all the East. The Kings in those Parts make much Account of these Creatures for their Service in Peace, and War; and there are some that keep great numbers of them, as *Gelaladin*, the Great *Mogol*, who had 2000; *Bramah*, King of *Pegu*, when in his Prosperity, the like number, or more, and some of them so highly valu'd, that they wash'd their Feet in Silver Basons. A white Elephant the King of *Siam* had, among the rest, was the Occasion of his Ruin, as is affirm'd, having caus'd bloody Wars, thus much concerning the Elephants.

Rhinocerots, and their Horns

It is a meer Fable, some tell that the Rhinoceros, whom the *Portugueses* call *Bada*, overcomes the Elephant, for I have several times seen Rhinocerots run away at the very sight of an Elephant. These Creatures are sometimes Hunted, and taken in the East, their Horn being of singular Virtue against Poison, and some Distempers; especially the Horn of those they take in *Bengale*, *Orracam*, and *Siam*, for those of *Africk*, tho' larger, are not counted so good. There are great numbers of

Tigers, how taken.

Tigers, throughout all the East, many of which are taken several ways, whereof I will relate one, because it is very remarkable. On the Coast of *Manar*, near the Island of *Ceylon*, they are taken by Men fighting with them Hand to Hand, after this manner. A Man Arms his left Arm, as far as the Elbow, with a Gauntlet of Plates, full of Points, very Substantial;

ſtantial, having another on his right Arm, and a ſharp Poniard in his Hand; then holding out the left Arm for the Beaſt to ſeize, when he ſprings, he ſtabs him ſo faſt in the Belly, that the Tiger drops down dead; and ſome Men are ſo dexterous at it, that they are in little danger; yet it has, and does ſtill coſt many others their Lives, becauſe theſe, and all others throughout the Eaſt, are extraordinary large and fierce. The Mountain *Nayres*, who are the Heathen Gentiles of *Malabar* in *India*, value themſelves very much upon killing of Tigers, with whoſe Skins they cover their Bucklers, by way of Trophy. There are infinite Numbers of them in *Bengale*, which is Part of *India* beyond the *Ganges*, where the Natives call them *Baga*, and they are ſo daring, as to ſwim that rapid River *Ganges*, half way over in the Night, and ſnatching Men out of Boats, return back with them to Land. *Bengale* abounds in Cattle, and Game above any Country in the World, there being greater Herds of Deer, Cows, Buffaloes, Swine, and ſuch like Creatures, than there are Flocks of Sheep among us; and yet the Tigers venture ſo hard to catch a Man, as h[illegible]een ſaid. I endeavour'd to diſcover the Reaſon of it, and could find none but this. The Tiger, tho' wonderful fierce, is no ſwift Creature, but heavy and ſlow, in compariſon of other Animals, and this is a certain Truth, known to me by long ocular Experience; notwithſtanding ſome cry them up as prodigiouſly ſwift, and fleet. Thus any Beaſt that is aware, can eaſily make its Eſcape, and conſequently, they are for the moſt Part hungry, and ſeek out of Men, who are not ſo nimble, or cautious.

Some fancy it is because Man's Flesh and Blood is sweeter to them; but that is a vulgar Notion, and this I deliver as the true Cause. There are also Tigers at *Malaca*, and in the neighbouring Parts, but these are not so dreadful as the others, yet us'd to come up to the Houses, and carry away the People out of them, so that being numerous and frequent, the Inhabitants liv'd very uneasy, till a Holy Bishop commanded them not to come within Two Leagues about the City, and from that Day they never were within the Bounds assign'd them. This I was assur'd of in that City by antient creditable Persons.

Fisheries. Fishing being a Sort of Sport or Game, it will not be amiss to speak of some ways, it is us'd in the East, which are worth observing. There is no Fishery in *Persia*, but what is inconsiderable, along the Gulph of *Persia*, and some up the Inland on the *Caspian* Sea. On the River *Send*, or *Indus*, where the extreme Poverty of the Fishermen does not permit them to keep Boats, they use an odd Method, swimming, with their Belly and Breast, on the Mouth of a great Earthen Pot, and thus striking out with their Feet, they swim and fish, putting what they catch into the Pot, till the Current drives them ashore. There they take the Pot upon their Back, and return to their first Post, whence they launch out again into the Water, and so repeat it as often as they think fit. In this same River the *Indians* use to take great Numbers of Water Fowl, by means of a Pot full of Holes they put their Heads into; which the Historian *Gonzalo Fernandez de Oviedo*, in his History of *America*, tells us was us'd by the Natives of *Santo Domingo*, and reckons it wonder-

Comical way of fishing.

Water Fowl how taken.

wonderful. In the Streight of *Sincapura*, and *Romanya*, which is between *Malaca*, and *Jor*, to the Southward, the *Seletes* being a People born, bred, and living on the Sea, in very little Boats, ſometimes maintaining themſelves by fiſhing, and ſometimes by robbing, ſell the Fiſh, as it is ſwimming in the Water, and having agreed upon the Price, they ſtrike, and deliver it to the Buyer, being ſo dexterous, that they never miſs it. The ſame is ſaid to be done at *Canton* in *China*. When theſe *Seletes* marry off a Daughter, they give her in Portion, one of their little Boats, with two Oars, and the Bride, and Bridegroom, being put into it, are committed to the Tide, which they ſuffer to carry them aſhore, and that Part they ſtick upon is their Habitation, when on Land; provided it be not already poſſeſs'd by others; for if it is, they put out again, till they come to a Place that is clear. In *Japan*, beſides the common Sorts of Fiſheries, which are many, and plentiful, eſpecially for Tunny Fiſh, and Pilchards, there is one very curious, perform'd by Sea Crows, which being turn'd into the Sea, with their Throats ty'd up, that they may not ſwallow the Fiſh, are ſo well taught, that they bring what they take into the Boat. I believe what I am going to ſay, will be look'd upon as inconſiderable; but I will relate it to ſhow the Providence of Nature. In the Bay of *Maſcate*, a Town of *Arabia*, and *Portugueſe* Fortreſs, within the *Perſian* Gulph, in 23 Degrees and a half of North Latitude, that is, juſt under the Tropick of *Cancer*, there is vaſt Plenty of Fiſh, much whereof is carry'd in Pickle to all Parts of *India*, and there being ſuch Abundance, it is ſo eaſy to take, that

Seletes bred upon the Sea, how they fiſh.

Marriage.

Fiſhing in Japan.

very often, when the Cats are hungry, they come down to the Shore, and ſtanding cloſe to the Water, put their Tail into it, on which ſome ſmall Fiſh faſten, and as ſoon as the Cat feels them, he jerks his Tail out upon the Land, and feeds on them. This ſeems very ſtrange, but will not be ſo ſurprizing, if we conſider, the extraordinary ways many Creatures have to ſupply their Wants. This will ſtill appear the more credible, by what hapned to me in that very Bay, in the year 1587, when coming thither with Ships of War, I accidentally took notice, that the Galley Slaves were fiſhing between the Oars, and ſeeing them put their Hands into the Water, and take out Fiſhes, without any other Inſtrument, I was amaz'd, enquir'd into the Reaſon of it, and found, that having a Bit of Fiſh ty'd to their Thumbs, on the inſide, when the Fiſhes come to bite, they laid hold of them with their Hands, and took them up; and for the more Certainty, I did the ſame, and catch'd ſeveral.

Cats taking Fiſh.

Fiſh taken by Hand.

There are alſo in the Eaſt, Sea Horſes, Sea Cows, Sea Swine, and one they call the Woman Fiſh; from the great reſemblance of it's Veſſel of Generation with a Womans, and this laſt chiefly on the Coaſt of *Melinde*, where the native *Moors* have often made uſe of it, in beaſtly manner, and would then carry it to ſell in the Market; which their *Cazices* looking upon as abominable, they oblige the Fiſhermen not to ſell any Woman Fiſh till it has been firſt brought before them, where they are to Swear ſolemnly, on the *Muſaph*, which is the Book of their Law, that they have not had Copulation with it. If rather than be forſworn they confeſs they have, all

Woman Fiſh brutally us'd by Moors.

the

the Penalty is, that they muſt not ſell it; but if they Swear, they are then at Liberty to diſpoſe of it. This is a well known Truth, and I was fully ſatisfy'd of it, whilſt I continu'd on that Coaſt. Of it's Bones they generally make Beads, Rings, and other ſuch things, being ſaid to be of ſingular Virtue for ſtopping any bloody Flux; but of this, and many other things, cry'd up by the multitude in the *Eaſt Indies* as Miraculous, I curiouſly made tryal for many Years, without finding any effect, tho' at the ſame time I own there are in the Eaſt many Simples of wonderful Virtue, and ſtrange Qualities. There are in ſeveral Parts, great numbers of dreadful *Crocodils*, or *Alligators*; as in *Africk*, in the Rivers of *Cuama*, and many others; in the *Ganges*, at *Bengale*; in the Kingdoms of *Pegu* and *Tanaſarim*; and more of a larger ſize at *Malaca*, in which River they devour Men moſt days; for the Natives making much uſe of that River, and continually going into it, either to waſh them, or for ſome other end, the Crocodils come up ſoftly, and taking hold of their Legs drag them away, paſt hope of Relief, for they ſink under Water, and are never ſeen again. Some of them are taken now and then, but conſidering their vaſt Numbers, that ſignifies nothing. When *Don John de Gama*, Brother to the Count *de Vidigueyra*, was Governor of *Malaca*, there was a Native of the Country in it, who going ſome times to the Bank of the River of St. *Jerome*, which waſhes the City Walls, utter'd ſome Words, which drew the Crocodiles thither, then he pronounc'd ſome others, and taking one or two of them, threw a Rope about their Necks, and ſo led them about the

It's Bones ſtop the bloody Flux.

Crocodiles.

City, being come to the Governors House, he commanded them to make their Obeysance, which they did; then he conducted them back to the Shore, where he dismiss'd them, and they went away very gently. This he did several times, till at last, one Day having perhaps been deficient in his Charm, when he was near the River, one of the Crocodils being dismiss'd, struck him with his Tail on the Head, whereof he dropt down dead. That there is a Possibility of such charming is taught us by the Royal Prophet, *Psal.* 58. besides that we see it daily practis'd in *India*, where the Gentiles commonly carry very large and hideous Snakes charm'd, about the Streets, and into the Houses, making them dance to a Pipe, and wind them about their Necks, with many other such Motions, handling them without receiving any Hurt; and tho' some attribute this to their having no Teeth, which they say, are taken out when they are little, yet Experience shows the contrary, for it has been sometimes known, that when they were provok'd, or not so fully circumscrib'd by the Charm, as they ought to be, they have done much Mischief among the Standers by. Having spoken of the Crocodils, there occurs to me an Accident of one, worthy to be known, which being most certainly true, I will insert, for the Satisfaction of the Reader. When *Francis Silva de Meneses* was Governor of *Malaca*, he sent *Don Francis Tello de Menezes*, Governor of the *Philippine* Islands, Presents, and among other Things was a small young Elephant, with his *Cornaca*, being the *Indian* that manag'd him. This Elephant feeding about in the Island of *Manila*, was thirsty, and went away

Story of charming them.

And Snakes.

away to the River of *Paranaque*, which was hard by, to drink. Going into the Water, a Crocodile came, and laid hold on one of his Fore Feet, ſo faſt, that for all the Elephant ſtruggl'd, he could not break looſe; till being inrag'd, he thruſt his Trunk under Water, and with it drew the Crocodile a ſhore, where he found enough to do with him; but at laſt, ſetting one Foot upon his Belly, and pulling his Legs, one after another, with his Trunk, he quarter'd him. I was my ſelf in *June* 1600, at the very Place, on the River *Paranaque*, where this had happened, bnt a few Days before. I was told of another Fight between a Tiger and a Crocodile, in the Rivers of *Cuama*, as a certain Truth; but that they both periſh'd.

A Fight between a Crocodile, and an Elephant.

I will not ſay ſo much of Birds and Fowl, for fear of tiring the Reader. In the Kingdom of *Champa*, lying between *Cambaya* and *Cochinchina*, on the Southern *Indian* Sea, all along its Coaſt, there is a Sort of Birds, not unlike Swallows, which at a certain time of the Year are in Luſt, and whilſt that laſts have a Slaver, or glutinous Moiſture flowing from their Beaks, wherewith provident Nature directing them, they build wonderful artificial Neſts about the Clifts, and Rocks; laying one Slaver upon another, till when dry'd, it becomes a perfect Neſt, in the Shape of a large Spoon, only the Edges higher rais'd. The Luſt ending, and the Neſt being finiſh'd, almoſt at the ſame time, they lay their Eggs, and hatch their young in them. There are ſuch Numbers of theſe Neſts, built after this manner, that they every Year gather many *Picos*, or *Quintals*, that is, Hundred Weight of them, which are carry'd as a good

Indian Birds Neſts to eat.

Commodity to *China*, and there sold for 50 *Taheis*, or more a *Quintal*, or Hundred Weight, and that is near an Hundred Ducats; and they eat them, saying, they are very good for the Stomach, and Brain; and some *Portugueses*, who have tasted of them, highly commend them. In the Year 1597, going from *Goa* to *Malaca*, we had extraordinary Calms at Sea, and I being desirous to see a small Island, lying opposite to us, call'd *Pulo Jarra*, that is, *Jarra* Island, went ashore, and among other Things I saw, and took notice of in it, were these Birds, and their Nests, of which I carry'd a good Quantity aboard, and to *Malaca*, where I gave them to the *Chineses*, who valu'd them very much. Nor do I think that less strange of the *Gallinuelas*, or little Hens, at the *Molucco's*, whose Eggs being put into a Box, or other close Place, in a few Days hatch of themselves, without any Help, and if Care is not taken, when they open the Place, they fly away. I could speak of a Thousand Things, no less remarkable, were it not that I must return to *Baharon Gur*, from whom we have long stray'd.

Eggs hatch themselves.

He, attended as was said above, struck into the Woods, sporting as he went, and taking the contrary to that way which went to *Karason*, where the Enemy was. He had left one *Narsy*, a Kinsman of his, whom some *Persian* Historians reckon among the Kings, to govern in his Absence; by whose Consent and Approbation, the Prime Men of the Kingdom, believing that *Baharon* was fled, sent Embassadors to *Hha Khon Chiny*, to propose an Accommodation, that so they might at any Rate be deliver'd from the Mischiefs they dreaded. *Hha Khon* did not reject the Offer,

Offer, but gave Ear to it, and being assur'd how Affairs stood, and that *Baharon* was fled, concluded himself safe, so that the first Heat abating, he and his Forces became the less watchful. *Baharon* being gone far from the City, travell'd hastily through *Aderbaion* and *Armenia*, where picking only 2000 Horse out of the Garrisons, that were known to be Men of Resolution, he set forward with those, and such as attended him before, and mov'd with incredible Celerity, through by ways, and as privately as possible towards the Enemy. Being come pretty near, he sent Three Spies, as many several ways, to take a particular Account of the Enemies Posture, and Numbers, and return with it as they did, informing him, that the Enemy lay in supine Negligence, and Security, wholly indulging themselves in Vice, Wine, and Sleep. *Baharon*, without losing any time, divided his small Company, which might amount to about 4000 Men, but those good ones, into Four Parties, and waiting for a very dark Night, attack'd the Enemies Camp in Four several Places, with Kettle Drums beating, and Trumpets sounding, and this so furiously, that they being wholly surpriz'd, never offer'd to make Head; but betook themselves to flight, and were entirely defeated. *Baharon* made directly to *Hba Khon*'s Tent, where he was arming himself in hast, and cut off his Head before he could be ready. Then pursuing those that fled, chas'd them as far as the River *Jehun*, with a mighty Slaughter. Some *Persian* Historians vary a little in their Relation of this Victory; but this we have deliver'd, is accounted the Truth. *Baharon* having thus put an End to the War with *Hba Khon*.

Baharon *under colour of hunting, surprises, and routs the Enemy.*

Khon Chiny, King of the *Tartars*, and ſetled Affairs in thoſe Parts, return'd into *Perſia*, loaded with Honour and Treaſure, to the great Admiration of his People, who receiv'd him with univerſal Applauſe.

Returns to Perſia.

Goes into India.

He was very deſirous to ſee ſome Part of *India*, towards which he took his Way, with a ſmall Number of Followers, leaving the Government again to *Narſy*, who is now alſo reckn'd King of *Perſia*, and another time after. *Baharon* in *India* pretended to be *Wazir*, or *Vizier* to the King of *Perſia*, and to have left him in Diſcontent, ſo that he was receiv'd into the Service of the greateſt King there, perform'd many conſiderable Actions in his Service, and obtain'd ſignal Victories over his Enemies, for which the King did not only raiſe him in Dignity, but gave him his only Daughter to Wife. *Baharon* being marry'd, thought there was no longer occaſion to conceal himſelf, and thereupon diſcover'd who he was to his Father in Law, who was not well pleas'd, apprehending ſome Innovation; for *Baharon* being generally belov'd for his excellent Qualities, before he was known, he fear'd that Affection might then increaſe, to his own Prejudice. But *Baharon* had other Thoughts, and to diſpel his Jealouſy, return'd into his own Kingdom, offering him ſome Lands belonging to the Crown of *Perſia*, that border'd on his. After ſome Days Reſt, he ſent one of his Generals with a potent Army, to make an Incurſion into the Lands of *Rumeſtan*, which is the *Roman* Empire, where many Places ſubmitted to him, without any Oppoſition. *Baharon* himſelf with another Army, march'd into *Arabia*, and beſides other Provinces, ſub-

Returns, and invades Rumeſtan

du'd

du'd the Kingdom of *Hamon*, being the Country of the *Amanites*, which still retains the same Name. It is to be observ'd that there is Difference betwixt *Hyeman*, and *Hamon*, tho' they are both Kingdoms in *Arabia*, neighbouring on that of *Saba*, in the same Region, the Dominion of that Queen, that went to *Jerusalem*, only to see *Solomon*; for this is an adjacent Country, and the way from it short, and frequented; whereas that of *Abyssinia*, whence some would bring that Queen, is very remote from *Arabia*. *His Conquests in Arabia.*

Since I have mention'd *Arabia*, I think fit to declare, that it produces no Gold nor Silver, nor any valuable Metal; neither has it Spice or Aromatical Drugs, except Frankincense, which the *Persians* call *Kondoruch*, and the *Arabs*, *Loban*. From this Word came our Name for the Gum *Benjamin*, by them call'd *Loban Jaoy*, that is, Frankincense of *Jaoa*, and we corruptly *Benjamin*. It is found in several Parts of *Pegu*, there is much and very good in the Kingdom of *Olanion*, and so in *Siam*, and *Cambaya*, whither the *Javaneses* bring great Quantities, and likewise in *Sunda*, and in *Sumatra* it is very white, and valuable; and it might be gather'd in the Woods of *Malaca*, if look'd after, for there is enough of it. But the Frankincense is found only in *Arabia*, and *Dofar* is the Place that produces the best. Much Amber is also carry'd down the Red Sea to *India*, and all the Eastern Parts. Physicians call this *Karabe*, a Name taken from the *Arabick*, which is *Karoback*, compos'd of *Kaf*, a Straw, and *Robah*, to draw, a very proper Compound, on Account of that Quality in the Amber. On the Coast of *Melinde* is found a Sort of Gum

Arabia produces no Metals.

Benjamin.

Amber.

Gum very like to it, call'd *Sandaroz*. *Arabia* produces some Myrrh; tho' the greatest Quantity is brought from the other Side of the Red Sea, in *Ethiopia*, in *Africk*; and there is some of it on the Coast of *Melinde*, where the common Name of it is *Bolo*, and among the *Guzuratts* of *Cambaya*, *Regata Bolo*. The *Arabs* call it *Morro*, which is no proper Name, but taken from its Quality, and signifying bitter, because it is so in such a Degree, and thence the *Latins* adapted it to their Language. The *Persians* call it a *Morrobad*, that is, Myrrh against the Wind. Tho' a great Part of *Arabia* be barren, all the rest is fertil and plentiful, and every where abounds in that famous Medicine, our Physicians call *Schenu Anthos*, and vulgarly *Squinend*, or Camels Meat, because the Camels feed on it, and the *Spaniards* give it the Name of *Paja Mecca* Straw, as growing about *Mecca* in *Arabia*. This Region is well known to be almost square, the Sea washing Three Sides of it; on the West the Red Sea, dividing it from *Africk*; on the South, the *Indian* Ocean; and on the East the Gulph of *Persia*, or of *Ormuz*, parting it from *Persia*; and the fourth Side which is on the North, is shut in with Rivers, making it almost an Island. It seldom rains in *Arabia*, towards the Sea Coast, which is all extraordinary craggy, but not without Ports, as some have writ. Up the Inland, it rains in the proper Seasons. On that side next to *Persia*, in Summer there reigns a Wind of a very strange Quality, by the Natives call'd *Surim*, and is very near the South West, being so hot and dry, that it scorches up all it comes at, shrivels the Skin, parches the Face and Hands,

Myrrh.

Arabia its Shape, and Boundaries.

Strange Wind.

in

in ſuch Sort, that a Scurf like Bran comes off them, and in ſhort where-ever it touches the Body, feels like a Flame of Fire; and yet when it blows hardeſt, the Water is cooler than at any other time; and if a Man keeps in a cloſe Houſe, warm clad, tho' it be in Summer, and the Sun then intollerable hot, yet he feels it not, but is rather cool; and notwithſtanding theſe unaccountable Effects of this Wind, it ſo ſoftens the Strings of Lutes, or the like, that they can never be tun'd, whilſt it laſts. The *Arabs* next the Sea are a very poor miſerable People, moſt of them living on dry Fiſh, Dates, and Lime Juice, and therefore very many of them are troubled with the Leproſy. *Arabia* produces all Sorts of Fruit in Perfection, and an incredible Quantity of Dates; but above all great Numbers of noble Horſes, whereof whole Ship Loads are carry'd over into *India*, from *Ormuz*, and *Maſcate*. The beſt either of *Arabia*, or *Perſia*, are thoſe of *Laſab*, a noted Province near the Iſland *Barhen*, or *Baharem*, and one of thoſe the *Turk* is poſſeſs'd of in that Region, of which this may ſuffice, to return to *Baharon*. Arabian Horſes.

He, after performing many memorable Exploits, in his Conqueſt, one Night, purſuing the Enemy he had vanquiſh'd, ran unexpectedly into a Bog, where he was loſt, and never ſeen again. His People were ignorant of it, by reaſon of the Night; but being told of it in the Morning, ſearch'd about carefully, without finding him. This was the End of *Baharon* when he had reign'd 23 Years, leaving a Son call'd *Yazd Gerd*. Baharon's Death.

CHAP.

Chap. XXX.

Of Yazd Gerd, *the Twenty Sixth King of* Persia.

Yazd Gerd. *a just Prince.*

Upon the Death of *Baharon Gur*, his Son *Yazd Gerd* succeeded in the Throne of *Persia*, who following his Father's Example, appointed his Kinsman *Narsy* supreme Governor of the Kingdom, and on this Account some reckon him the third Time as King. *Yazd Gerd* was so upright in the Administration of Justice, that no Motive could divert him from it, which gain'd him the entire Love and Affection of his Subjects. In the Fourteenth Year of his Reign, he rais'd Forces, in Order to make War on the King of *Rumestan*, but they came not to Blows, matters being accommodated between them. *Yazd Gerd* had Two Sons, the eldest call'd *Pheruz*, the younger *Hormoz*, this most belov'd by his Father, who designing to leave him his Successor, remov'd *Pheruz* from about his Person, sending him to govern the Province of *Nimrus*, to the End that being absent, he might not obstruct his Brother's Succession, and the People might be the better affected to the latter. This King dy'd after a Reign of 18 Years, leaving the Crown to his younger Son *Hormoz*; and had the Sirname of *Sepulduxt*, that is, Lover of the Soldiers.

Prefers his younger Son.

Chap. XXXI.

Of Hormoz, *the Twenty Seventh King of* Persia.

Hormuz the younger Son succeeds.

HOrmoz the younger Son succeeded his Father *Yazd Gerd*, with the general Approbation of all Men; but they had soon Cause to repent, for being naturally wicked, he had dissembled, till possess'd of the Throne, and his Temper prevailing, he soon behav'd himself so as converted all that Love into Hatred, and Aversion. *Pheruz* the elder Brother, whom the Father had unjustly depriv'd of his Right, was inform'd of it, and laying hold of that Opportunity, made use of his Friends that had Power, many of whom assisted him, and among them was the King of *Abtelah*, to whom *Pheruz* agreed to resign the Lands of *Termed*, which are above *Karason*, between his and *Nimrus*, upon Condition he furnish'd him with Thirty Thousand Horse, with these and what other Forces he could raise, *Pheruz* enter'd *Persia*, and was met by his Brother *Hormoz*, at the Head of a numerous Army, whom he routed, took, and some Days after, put to Death. *Pheruz* reign'd but one Year, and had the Sirname of *Farzand*, that is, Son.

Chap. XXXII.

Of Pheruz, *the Twenty Eighth King of* Persia.

Pheruz *executes his Brother.*

Pheruz being possess'd of the Kingdom of *Persia*, apply'd himself to the Government, and suspecting, that his Brother *Hormoz* conspir'd against him, with Three of his Favourites, struck off all their Heads. The First Year of the Reign of *Pheruz* is cry'd up as most fortunate, as the next Seven are lamented for being most miserable, and destructive, occasion'd by a dreadful Dearth, which lasted so long, that all *Persia* was under a desolating Famine, for all the Springs were dry'd up, and the same is reported of the famous River *Jehun*, and of the *Degilah*, or *Tigris*, great Numbers of People perish'd, and the Fields were cover'd with Birds, and Beasts, that dy'd for Want of Water. *Pheruz* was much concern'd at this Calamity, and did all he could to redress it, but the Mischief was so great, that all his Care and Generosity could not put a stop to it. Considering how little all his Endeavours avail'd, he gather'd great Multitudes of People, with whom he went about the Fields, doing Penance, and begging Mercy of God, which they continu'd for many Days, till it rain'd, the Land being moistned began to bear, and the Evil ceas'd.

Seven Years Famine.

Penance to obtain Rain.

Some Provinces complain'd to *Pheruz*, that the King of *Abtelah* molested them with

Incursions.

Incursions. This was he, to whom *Pheruz* had restor'd the Lands of *Termed*, for the Succour of Thirty Thousand Men he sent him to recover *Persia*. *Athio* and *Tornamira*, write of this King of *Abtelah*, calling him of the *Eutalytas*, in whose Pits they say, *Pheruz* dy'd, giving him the Name of *Peruzas*, which is not to be thought strange, because of the Affinity there is between the *P* and *F* in the *Persian*, and *Arabick* Writing, and even in the Pronunciation. Now those they call *Eytalytas*, the *Persians* name *Abtelah*; which signifies Water of Gold, being a Nation to the Northward of *Persia*, *Pheruz* being inform'd of these Incursions, prepar'd to make War on him. *Gox Nawaz*, so the King of *Abtelah* was call'd, and signifies a skilful Musician, hearing of it, was concern'd and troubled, knowing he was inferior to the *Persians* in Power, and to the Bravery of *Pheruz*. A *Wazir* or *Vizier* of his finding him in this Perplexity, offer'd to rescue him from that Danger, if he would promise when he was dead, to be kind to his Wife and Children, for his good Service. The King promis'd, the *Wazir* took his leave, and causing his own Nose, Hands and Feet to be cut off, was left by his own Order in a Place, *Pheruz* must of Necessity pass by. There he was found by that King's Army, which was then marching, and carry'd into his Presence. *Pheruz* wondering to see him in that Condition, ask'd who he was, and how he came to be so mangled. He answer'd in doleful manner, that he had been *Wazir* to *Gox Nawaz* King of *Abtelah*, whom he had advis'd to forbear making War on *Persia*; because it would not succeed; and

Abtelah what Nation.

Great Loyalty of a Subject.

that the King was so far from giving Ear to his Advice, that for his Boldness in speaking the Truth, he had order'd him to be so butcher'd and expos'd in the Woods, where having neither Hands nor Feet to help himself, he must be devour'd by the wild Beasts. *Pheruz* astonish'd at that Account, which he believ'd to be true, comforted him, with the Hopes of speedy Revenge, for that and other Cruelties the King of *Abtelah* had been guilty of. *Pheruz* would have gone on the common way; but the *Wazir* pretending to be desirous of Revenge, told him, if he would march by his Direction, he would be very speedily with his Enemy, and surprize them. *Pheruz* order'd the Army to follow him, and he led them so well, that most of them perish'd through Hunger and Thirst. *Pheruz* with those few that surviv'd, falling into the Hands of *Gox Nawaz*, who using Mercy, set them at Liberty upon certain Conditions, one whereof was, that *Pheruz* should be oblig'd not to make War on him again, either in Person, or by his Generals. He granted every thing to obtain his Liberty, and return'd into *Persia*, where he immediately began to raise Men to renew the War. His People tho' they us'd their Endeavours, could not dissuade him. The Country of *Sistom* was at this time govern'd by *Sufarah*, a Kinsman of *Pheruz*, whom several *Persian* Historians reckon among the Kings of *Persia*, and do it twice, tho' he was the same Man, once in this Place, and again afterwards. *Pheruz* sent for this Man, whom he left to govern the Kingdom, and take care of Two Sons he had, the one call'd *Belas*, and the other *Kobad*,

Pheruz taken, and releas'd.

bad, with Instructions how to behave himself, and then set forwards himself, taking along with him an only Daughter he had, of singular Beauty, and excellently qualify'd. Being come near to *Abtelah*, *Gox Nawaz* sent to require he would observe what had been stipulated between them, which *Pheruz* would not hearken to. *Gox Nawaz* had dug many large Pits full of Water in the way, so artificially cover'd, that no Man would imagine there had been any such thing; and finding *Pheruz* positive to carry on the War, retir'd as if he fled; drawing *Pheruz*'s Forces, which pursu'd towards the Place where the Pits were, into which *Pheruz* himself, and most of his Men fell, and there perish'd; such as escap'd that End being made Prisoners, and among them *Pheruz*'s beautiful Daughter. *Sufarah* who as has been said, was left to govern *Persia*, having Intelligence of his Disaster, gather'd a considerable Army, and marching towards *Abtelah*, oblig'd that King to accept of Peace, which was concluded, upon Condition, that all the Prisoners and Plunder should be restor'd, as also *Pheruz*'s Daughter, with whom *Gox Nawaz* parted much against his Will, as being in Love with her. *Sufarah* return'd to *Persia*, where he enthron'd *Belax*, eldest Son to *Pheruz*, and *Kobad* the younger, who aspir'd to the Crown, being offended, went away to serve the King of *Turkestan*. *Pheruz* reign'd Twenty Six Years.

Invades Abtelah.

Is lost with his Army.

Chap. XXXIII.

Of Belax, *the Twenty Ninth King of* Perſia.

Kobad *Brother to* Belax *goes away to* Turkeſtam.

Belax the Elder Son of *Pheruz*, being as was ſaid proclaim'd King of *Perſia*, his younger Brother *Kobad* was diſappointed, and went away to *Turkeſtam*, attended by *Bzarmeher* the Son of *Safarah*, his Boſom Friend. This *Bzarmeher* was marry'd, and had his Family at *Nixabur*, wherefore he deſir'd *Kobad* to take that Road, becauſe he could there entertain and divert him, which was accordingly done. *Bzarmeher* among the reſt had a very beautiful Daughter, call'd *Zarmeher*, with whom *Kobad* was much taken. Her Father perceiving, he offer'd her to him, which was accepted, and they were marry'd. She conceiv'd, and was afterwards deliver'd of a Son, who bore the Name of *Anuxiron*, or *Nauxirvon*, for it is pronounc'd both ways. Some time after the Wedding, *Kobad* leaving his Wife in her Fathers Houſe, went on to *Turkeſtam*, where he put himſelf into the Service of *Hha Khon Chiny*, who then reign'd there, and continu'd in it Four Years. Thoſe being expir'd, *Hha Khon* to reward his Service, gave him a good Army, with which he march'd towards *Perſia*, againſt his Brother King *Belax*, who then govern'd to the Satisfaction of all his Subjects. In his way, *Kobad* call'd at *Nixabur*, where his Wife *Zarmeher* reſided, with whom he ſtay'd ſome Days, very well pleas'd with her, and with his Son, whom by reaſon of his Abſence he had

Marries and has a Son.

had not ſeen before. When he was about ſetting out from *Nixabur*, Advice was brought him, that his Brother *Belax* had dy'd ſuddenly, after reigning Five Years. *King Belax dies.*

Nixabur is a Province ſubject to the Crown of *Perſia*, lying between *Karaſon*, *Uzbek*, and *Tatar*, a large Country, and full of great Deſerts and barren Sands, which are confidently reported to be in continual Motion, like boiling Water. The *Perſian* Hiſtories inform us, that *Teymur lang*, by us call'd *Tamerlan*, of whom I ſhall ſpeak elſewhere, caus'd 400000 Perſons to be ſlaughter'd in this Province, in one Day, which is not to be wonder'd at, conſidering what is ſaid of his Cruelty. Nixabur Province. *Moving Sands.* Tamerlan's Cruelty.

In this Kingdom of *Nixabur*, are found thoſe Blew Stones, that are worn in Rings, by us call'd *Turky* Stones, and with good Reaſon, becauſe *Nixabur* borders on *Turkeſtam*. Having mention'd Stones, it will not be amiſs in this Place, briefly to deliver what occurs to me concerning them. No Province of *Perſia*, produces any precious Stones, tho' ſome have writ the contrary, unleſs we give that Name to theſe *Turky* Stones, which the *Perſians* put ſome Value upon, but ſmall; or elſe to the *Bezoars*, of which the excellenteſt and beſt are found in *Perſia*. The *Perſians* call any Stone *Sangh*, and the *Arabs*, *Ager*; but the *Bezoar* Stone the *Perſians* by way of Preference name *Pazahar*, which ſignifies an Antidote, or more exactly a Defence, or a Reſtorative againſt Poyſon; from *Zahar*, the general Name for all Poyſon, and *Pa* a Defence, or Reſtorative; and the *Arabick* wanting the Letter *P*, they ſubſtitute *P* or *B* in its Place, and inſtead of *Pazahar*, ſay *Bazahar*, which we with ſome Corrup- Turky Stones. Bezoar Stones the beſt.

tion pronounce *Bezoar*. This is the true meaning of the Word, which is not deriv'd from its being sold in the *Bazar* or Market, for they never were sold there. In the Province of *Parz* or *Persia*, there is a well known Territory, call'd *Sthabanon*, from a City in it of the same Name, standing Three Days Journey from the City *Lara*, or *Lar*. Its Fields abound in a Sort of Herb, very like to *Zafron*, here abundance of Sheep graze, and in their Bellies these Stones are found, which being better, and of more Excellency than all others are so highly valu'd, that the King of *Persia* keeps Officers there to secure all the Stones for his Use, which are above a certain Weight. The same was practis'd by the King of *Pegu* in his Dominions, in Relation to precious Stones. It easily appears when those Sheep, which differ but little from ours have any Stone in them, because according as they have one or more, great or small, they are proportionably sick, or well, heavy, or active. That Pasture is the efficient Cause of those Stones; for the Sheep, if remov'd from thence, breed none in other Parts. It is remarkable, that all the Inhabitants of this Province of *Sthabanon*, are bald headed, which the *Persians* call *Kachel*. This being obsery'd by a Servant of the King of *Persia*, *Scha Abas*, he begg'd of his Master, as a Reward of all his Service, that every *Kachel*, that is, bald Pate in the Kingdom, should be oblig'd to pay him a *Scherafim*, being about a Ducat. *Scha Abas* look'd upon his Request as ridiculous, and as such granted it, but the Petitioner who was no Fool, took such Care in collecting of it, that he soon became rich; and the

Sthabanon City, and Territory.

Comical Tax on bald Pates.

King

King being inform'd of the Myſtery, which before he underſtood not, was much amaz'd, but could not recall what was done.

Beſides theſe *Bezoar* Stones of *Perſia*, there are others in *India*, and thoſe of the Iſland *de las Vacas*, or of Cows, near *Manar*, between *Ceylon*, and the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, are the ſecond beſt. Theſe breed in Goats, and Thirteen of them have been found in one of thoſe Beaſts, and not ſmall ones. In this Iſland it was ſufficiently made out, that the Paſture was the Matter of thoſe Stones; for a dreadful Inundation of the Sea Water hapning in the Year 1585, all along that Coaſt, this Iſland of Cows was quite overflown, and being full of Sea Water, the Paſture was ſpoil'd. The Goats being then carry'd to other Ports, bred no Stones; but ſome Years after the Land recover'd, the Salt being ſpent, and produc'd good Paſture, and the Goats being carry'd again into the Iſland, bred Stones as before. The Third in Goodneſs are the Bezoars of the South, I mean of *Malaca*, *Pam*, *Patene*, *Borneo*, *Maniarmacem*, and other Ports, where there are great Numbers of them. But the beſt, as has been ſaid, are thoſe of *Perſia*, which I have ſeen work wonderful Effects in Caſes of Poiſon. The Bezoar Stones are ſometimes counterfeited, but it is eaſy to know them, which may be done two ways; the one, taking into one's Hand a little Lime work'd up with Water, and ſprinkling the Stone with it; if the Lime turns yellow, without waſhing the Stone, it is not falſe. A better and ſurer way is, to weigh the Stone, and put it into a Porringer full of Water, there let it lie ſix or ſeven Hours, then

Bezoar Stones the ſecond beſt.

The Paſture breeds them.

Third Sort.

Counterfeit Bezoar how known.

then take it out, and weigh it; if it continues entire, and weighs no more than before, it is good and right, but if it breaks, diſſolves, or weighs more, it is a Counterfeit. The Bezoar Stone is ſucceſsfully us'd againſt all Sorts of Poiſon, whether inward, or outward, and in ſhort againſt all Diſtempers. The *Perſians* take it by way of Prevention, from the 20th of *March* forward, which they call *Neu Rus*, that is, New Day; becauſe they reckon that the beginning of the Solar Year. At *Mexico* in *America*, by the Natives call'd *Tenus titlan*, ſignifying the City of *Tunas*, being the Fruit born by the Tree the Cochineel breeds on, I ſaw Bezoar Stones enough, which were they as good as they are great, would be of an ineſtimable Value; but their Virtue being little or none, they are ſcarce worth any thing. The largeſt Bezoar Stone I ever ſaw in *Perſia*, that was perfectly good, and I have ſeen many, weigh'd 17 Meticales and a half, which amounts to Two Ounces and a half, little over or under.

Bezoar of Mexico not good.

From the Top of a Mountain, in the ſame Province of *Sthabanon*, and the Clefts of a Rock, iſſues a Sort of Liquor, which the King of *Perſia* appoints Perſons of Reputation to ſecure, and the whole Quantity gather'd in a Year amounts to about Thirty *Meticales*, little more or leſs, which is about Five Ounces. The *Perſians* call it *Momnahy Khony*, that is, precious Mummy produc'd by the Earth, which is wholly preſerv'd for the King; and they ſay, this is an almoſt miraculous Antidote againſt all Sorts of Poiſon, and for healing up all inward Ruptures, and even the Fractures of Limbs.

A precious Balſam.

The

The King of *Perſia* makes Preſents of very ſmall Quantities of it, yet highly valu'd to the Princes he is in Amity with. Therefore the *Perſians* ſay their Kings enjoy Health, by means of this *Momnahy Kony*, and the *Turks* with their *Terra ſigillata*.

The Eaſtern *Mahometans* make uſe of another Antidote, by them call'd *Pazar Khony*, ſignifying the Antidote coming from the Earth, being a Sort of Bitumen, found at *Moxulpatan* in *India*, very wholſome, but not like the laſt. There are many other Stones breeding in the Craws of Creatures, and of ſingular Virtues; as that taken from the Ape, very like the Bezoar; that which comes from Deer, brought from *Solor*, as large as a Tennis Ball, cruſty and ſcaly without, ſpungy and ſoft within, having a little bitter; but beyond them all is the Porcupines Stone, bred in the Maw of that Creature, which is of ſuch Virtue and Excellency, that none but thoſe who have had the Experience, can give entire Credit to it. Of this I am an Eye Witneſs, having ſeen the Effects of it in ſeveral Places, at ſundry times, and particularly at the City of *Cochim*, in the Years 1590, and 1591, where the Governor that then was, ſpent Two Porcupines Stones he had, in the Service of the poor, and needy, doing Wonders againſt a Diſeaſe more dangerous and violent than the Plague, which reign'd Two whole Years, and carry'd off People in Four or Five Hours. This Diſtemper was a *Cholerica Paſſio*, by the *Indians* call'd *Maxy*, and by the *Portugueſes Mordexim*, being a Sort of Colick. The Water this Stone has been infus'd in, is good in

Other Antidotes.

Porcupines Stones.

all

all Diseases, and may be given with Safety, except to Women with Child, to whom it may be prejudicial, by reason of its excessive Bitterness. These Stones are found in *Syaka*, a Kingdom very near that of *Malaca*, and are sold like the Bezoars of that Country, by the Weight they call *Mazes*, each *Maz* being an 8th Part and a Half of an Ounce, a Grain over or under. To be satisfy'd, whether the Creatures these Stones breed in, answer'd the Name that is given them, I caus'd one to be brought me from *Syaka*, when I was at *Malaca*, and found it was a perfect Porcupine, no way differing from the common Sort. There is another Sort of Stone in the East, greenish without, but white when pounded, call'd of the Islands, or of *Cananor*, which is also Medicinal.

Another Medicinal Stone.

Tho' the finding of precious Stones be so generally known, especially in *India*; I will briefly mention how and where some of them are had, that I may not be thought tedious. The Diamants of *Bisnaga* and *Narsinga*, are dug out of the Rocks, and those we have from *Malaca* are taken out of the Water. *Lave* is a Kingdom and River of the same Name, subject to the King of *Manior Mason*, where in the Woods grows the true *Rota*, being a Sort of Stalks, like Vine Branches of great Value, generally from 50 to 100 Fadom in Length, allowing Ten Spans to a Fadom. This Kingdom is on the South Coast of the great Island of *Borneo*, whence comes the true and pure Camphir, call'd *Kapur* and *Kaphur*, throughout all the East, *Arabia*, and *Persia*. It is scrap'd from the Heart of the Trunk of the Tree, it grows on like the

Diamants.

Rota.

Camphir of Borneo.

the Rozin on the Pine Tree, with a Sort of Iron Claws, and is thrown into clear Water, which being often chang'd, it fines by Degrees, till perfectly pure; and ſuch is that a *Sumatra*, but that of *China* is foul, and of little Value, compar'd with this. It is generally reckned cold, I know not upon what Grounds, there being ſo much to be alledg'd againſt it. But let us leave this, which belongs not to us, and return to the River *Lave*, whoſe Stream is extraordinary rapid, and the Natives along its Banks very poor, and miſerable. Theſe People when the River is much ſwollen, and impetuous, on Account of the Floods falling from the Mountains, caſt themſelves from a certain Place into the Water, and diving down to the bottom, with each of them a *Schareta*, that is, half a Coco Shell, which when they come to the Ground in the middle of the River they fill, and clap cloſe to their Breaſt, that the Water may not carry it away, then they come up, and for the moſt Part get to Land half a League below the Place where they leap'd in, where they find the Kings Officers, who ply all along the Shore, and they muſt not take the *Schareta*, which as I ſaid is like a ſmall wooden Bowl from their Breaſt, till one of thoſe Officers is by, who ſees what there is in it, and ſometimes they find ſeveral good Diamants, and other times more. All that they take is for the King, and the Fiſhers have ſome ſmall matter for their Pains, but they now and then make their Advantage unobſerv'd. Thus all theſe Diamants go to the King, and from him to the Merchants, who carry them to *Patane*, *Pam*, *Sunda*,

Fiſhing for Diamants.

da, and other Parts, and some few to *Malaca*, whither they us'd all to be sent formerly; but since the Dealers all refus'd to trade there, by reason of the many Wrongs the Governors have done them. This is the Method of fishing for Diamants at *Lave*, to which Place Reason shows they are brought down by the Floods, from the Mountains that produce them.

Rubies and Saphires.

The Rubies by the *Persians* and *Arabs*, call'd *Yacut*, come from the Kingdoms of *Kevelam* and *Kablam*, being the same we have from *Pegu*, and the finest; from which some Kingdoms they also bring Saphires. The Kingdom of *Siam* also affords Rubies, but neither so many, nor so good; and those of *China* are the worst of all, as being soft, and of a pale Colour. I forbear to speak of Spinets, Garnets, Amethists, Cornelians, Agates, Milk, and Blood Stones, and Cats Eyes, the best of which are in *Ceylon*, because there are none of these in *Persia*. Nor

Coco Stone

is there any of the Coco Stone, which comes from *Jaoa*, there being but one in a Coco, but not in every one. It is small and round, not unlike a common Fishes Eye in Shape and Bigness, smooth, of a good Luster, and extraordinary hard. It is said to have some Virtue, and is worn in Rings, like a Pearl. The Hardness of this Stone puts me in mind of the Ignorance of those, who contrary to good Sense, positively maintain the invin-

Diamants will break.

cible Firmness of the Diamant, whereas it breaks like any other Stone, still granting that it is harder than any of them; and yet, tho' it be never so hard and strong, I shall not think it so safe from breaking be-

tween

tween the Hammer and the Anvil, as under a Knife or ſuch like Inſtrument dipp'd in Goats Blood. I remember there is a Sort of Herb along the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, as alſo at *Malaca*, and it grows about the Streets, being ſmall and little regarded; if the ſmall tender Roots of it be chew'd, ſo that the Teeth remain full of its Juice and Moiſture, and than any Stone, tho' never ſo hard, be taken into the Mouth, and chew'd, it will diſſolve into Duſt ſo eaſily, as neither to hurt the Teeth, nor give the leaſt Trouble, which I have often try'd my ſelf, and ſeen done by others; a Quality wherein we ought to admire the Works of our Creator, who has given it ſuch Efficacy. No leſs wonderful is another in the Iſland of *Ceylon*, which was preſented to a Governor of *Columbo's* Wife, being much like an Ear of Wheat, but black and bearded. This had ſuch Virtue for facilitating the Birth, that if it was not immediately taken away from the Thigh, as ſoon as the Child was brought forth, it would draw the very Bowels after it, ſeveral Experiments whereof were made, and I my ſelf am Witneſs to what hapned to the Owner herſelf with it. She being with Child, this Plant was reſtor'd to her, by ſome Perſon it had been lent to, and ſhe put it into a Box, which a Slave thruſt under her Miſtreſſes Bed, who ſoon miſcarry'd, and there follow'd ſuch a Flux of Blood, that there was no ſtopping it, and ſhe was at Deaths Door, whereupon it was thought fit to give her the Bleſſed Sacrament, and ſomething being wanted out of the Box, they open'd and found the Herb or Plant, which

Herb diſſolving Stones.

Another to facilitate the Birth.

which made them recollect, whether the Force of it might be such as to affect the sick Woman at that Distance; they carry'd it away to another House, immediately the Flux of Blood ceas'd, and she perfectly recover'd. This hapned at *Goa*, and I was present. I have not mention'd the Names of these Plants, because the first has none, and they who had the other knew not the Name of it; which I could not learn, tho' I endeavour'd it afterwards, when I was in *Ceylon*. I pass by another, which thrown into a Vessel of Water consolidates it, as Milk is by Runnet; and others of wonderful Quality found in the East, because these Things are foreign from the matter in Hand.

Lapis Judaicus.

To return to the Stones in *Persia* and *Cambaya*, is found that our Physicians call *Lapis Judaicus*, and the *Persians* and *Arabs*, *Ager Alyud*, that is, Stone of *Juda*, or of the *Jew*; as also *Zeytun Ben Israel*, the Olive of the Son of *Israel*; because it is very like an Olive. *Persia* also produces *Ager Armery*, that is, the *Armenus Lapis* of our Physicians, otherwise call'd *Lapis Lazuli*. *Ager* as has been said before in *Arabick*, signifies a Stone, and thence came the Name of the River in *Spain* call'd *Guadalagera*, which should be *Wedal Ager*, that is, the Stony River. In the Gulph of *Persia*, near the Island *Gerun*, or *Ormuz*, there are Quarries under Water, whence they take much Stone; us'd by the Natives for building, because it is very soft, and they call it *Sangh May*, that is, Fish Stone because it grows in the Sea, and is soft, but this is

Quarry in the Sea, that grows.

most

ost observable, that it grows as fast as taken away. The same is found in the Sea of *Malaca*, where the *Portugueses* us'd it, not so much for building, as for making of Lime, which they say is excellent. Before I conclude with this Chapter, I will mention Three or Four Things worth observing, that occur to me. The first of an Ape I saw, that had a Bezoar Stone found in his Thigh, which being broken to see the Center or Foundation of it, for they have all something that they grow about, as a Straw, Herb, bit of Stick, and sometimes a Date Stone, the Center of this was found to be the Head of an Arrow. Nor was it unlike to this that hapned at *Ormuz*, where intending to make Tryal of a *Schamama* of Amber, being a Ball not made by Art, but form'd by Nature, pricking it with a hot Needle, it split in two, and in the midst of it, I found a small Beak, and some Feathers, with some bits of small Shells, which did not only surprize me, but many others who were well acquainted with such Things. I forgot, when I spoke above of the Swines Stone to mention, that a Citizen of *Cochim*, desiring to borrow one of the Governor, I there spoke of a Woman Slave taking it out of the Vessel, where he kept it in Infusion, as soon as she had it in her hand, it fell into small bits, tho' she did not handle it roughly, nor was the Stone so soft as to be dissolv'd by the Water. Upon Enquiry the Cause of it appear'd to be, that the Slave had then her Monthly Courses on her; such is the Force of that Venom, and no Wonder, for at *Goa* in a Neighbours Garden,

Head of an Arrow in a Bezoar Stone

Feathers and Beak in Amber.

I saw

I saw a most stately Tree wither away and die, in a few Days, only because some Linnen that had been infected with that Filth, was hung on it to dry; and it was not the Weather that made it wither, for there is but one Tree in all *India*, which looses its Leaves in the rainy Season, which as well as its Fruit is call'd *Ambare*. Let us now proceed to *Kobad*, who has been long laid aside.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of Kobad *the Thirtieth King of* Persia.

WE said before, that the News of *Belax*'s Death, was brought to his Brother *Kobad* to *Nixabur*; whilst he stay'd at his Father in Laws House, diverting himself with his Wife *Zarmeher*, and his Son *Anuxiron*; and being at the same time invited to receive the Crown, because his Brother had left no Issue, he set out speedily with his Forces for *Persia*, and was there honourably receiv'd. *Sufarah*, as has been said, still govern'd the Kingdom, and was generally respected and belov'd by all Men, for his good Qualities; but *Kobad* was not well pleas'd to see him in such Authority, and being offended at it, sent for one *Schapur*, a bold and renowned Commander, who liv'd remote from Court, whom he acquainted with his Design, giving him Orders to kill *Sufarah*. *Schapur* a few Days after, went to visit him, and picking a quarrel in Discourse, slew him.

Sufarah *murder'd.*

In the tenth Year of the Reign of *Kobad*, one *Mezdahk* came into *Perſia*, from the County of *Sthahar*, and began to propagate a new Sect, adding freſh Follies to the ancient. He aſſum'd the Title of a Prophet, pretending that the Fire ſpoke to him, and diſcover'd high Myſteries, impoſing the Belief of it on the vulgar Sort, by means of ſome jugling Tricks. He would have all Things in common, Goods, Women, Children, and the Reſt; prohibited killing any thing that had Life, and many other Abſurdities. Some, and thoſe no ſmall Number, tho' they were ſenſible of the Falſhood of his Doctrine, follow'd him, for the ſake of a Lewd Life, and among them was *Kobad*, the King, who highly commended him, and his Followers, honouring and reſpecting him, as a holy Man. The Great, and Wiſe Men of the Nation conſidering the King's Danger, addreſs'd him, deſiring he would deſiſt, and either baniſh, or put *Mezdahk* to death. After ſeveral Remonſtrances, to which he never would give Ear, they unanimouſly depos'd, and ſecur'd him in Priſon; enthroning *Jamaſh*, a near Kinſman of his, who is by ſome reckon'd among the Kings of *Perſia*. *Kobad* being ſecur'd, the *Perſians* deſign'd to ſeize, and kill *Mezdahk*, but could not, by Reaſon of the Multitude that follow'd him, and the great Care he took of his Perſon; however, he fail'd not of his Deſerts, as we ſhall ſoon ſee. *Kobad* had a moſt beautiful Siſter, with whom he fell in Love, and was marry'd to her, by Diſpenſation from *Mezdahk*, who was not nice in point of Conſcience. She ſeeing her Brother and Husband ſecur'd, and prevail'd upon by his double Tye of Kindred, contriv'd how to reſcue him. The Method

Mezdahk *broaches a new Sect.*

Kobad *embraces it.*

Is depos'd, and ſecur'd

she pitch'd upon, was to dress herself in the richest Apparel and Jewels she had, which added much Lustre to her Beauty, and thus went to the Prison in which *Kobad* was detain'd, where, what with Gifts, and what with unlawful Promises, she prevail'd upon the Guards to permit her to lye there that Night. Her Bed was brought, which in the Morning she roll'd up, with *Kobad* in it, and so caus'd it to be carried to her House, she staying behind to amuse the Guard, whilst he made his Escape, as he did with such Privacy and Expedition, that they never miss'd him, till it was too late. Being got out of the Dominions of *Persia*, he made to those of *Abtelah*, designing to procure Forces of that King, to recover his Crown. That King gave him a favourable Reception, and tho' not immediatly, yet some Years after, furnish'd him with 30000 Horse, with which Force, and others he gather'd, *Kobad* enter'd *Persia*, at that Time in an Uproar, it being hotly controverted, whether he should be receiv'd peaceably, or as an Enemy. It was at last concluded to lay aside their Arms, and submit, and the first that put himself into his Hands was *Jamasp*, to whom the Government had been committed, when he was secur'd. *Kobad* rewarded his Submission, by Pardoning, and Fogetting all past Offences. The Rest of his Life he spent in Reforming the Government. He was addicted to Building; founded the Cities of *Bardab*, *Guania*, and others of less Note, and died a Natural Death, when he had Reign'd 43 Years.

Makes his Escape.

Is restor'd.

His Death.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Keſere Anuxiron, *the* 31ſt *King of* Perſia.

KESERE *Anuxiron*, or *Nhuxirvan*, for it is writ both ways, Son to *Kobad*, by his Wife *Zarmeker*, ſucceeded him in the Throne; and being a virtuous Prince, was much belov'd by his own Subjects, and Strangers. After Redreſſing all Abuſes, which he ſeriouſly apply'd himſelf to, the firſt thing he did, was to condemn *Mezdahk*, and all his Followers to Death, executing it with ſuch Rigor, that they were ſoon utterly extirpated, tho' there was an almoſt infinite Multitude of them. *Perſia* being deliver'd from thoſe pernicious People, he contriv'd to have his Dominions govern'd with more Eaſe to the King, dividing them all into four *Wazir*, or *Vizierſhips*, that is, Governments, each of which he put into the Hands of able and truſty Perſons, ally'd to him in Blood. The firſt of theſe Governments contain'd the Countries of *Karazon*, *Sagiſtan*, *Kermon*, and *Maurenahar*; the 2d, thoſe of *Hiſphaon*, or *Iſpahan*, *Kom*, *Aderbaion*; and *Armenia*; the 3d, *Pars*, or *Perſia*, properly ſo call'd, and *Ahwa*; and the 4th, *Hyerak* beyond *Babylon*, and the Lands of *Rumeſtan*, that is, *Greece*.

Mezdahk and his Sect extirpated.

Governments of Perſia.

Having thus ſetled his Affairs, he rais'd Forces, and ſubdu'd the Countries of *Tackoſtar*, *Zabulſtam*, *Kabulſtam*, *Juganian*, and *Abtelah*. Whilſt he was buſy about theſe Conqueſts, *Kha Khon Chiny*, King of *Tatar*, or *Tartary*, invaded his Dominions, with a mighty Army, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Barſchax*, *Ferana*, *Kaix*, *Neſaf*, *Samarkand*, and *Bokara*. The two

Keſere's Conqueſts, and Leſſons.

laſt Countries nam'd, having given Birth to two famous Men, it will be proper, in this Place to give ſome ſhort Account of both the Provinces, and Perſons.

Tamerlan born at Samorzand.

Samarkand, a moſt noble City, in the Country of *Maurenahar*, built according to the *Perſians*, by *Alexander* the Great, Son to *Philip* of *Macedon*, was the Native Country of the renowned *Teymur Langh*, whom we commonly call *Tamerlan*. He was nobly deſcended, and no Carrier, nor Shepherd, nor Robber, nor of any ſuch Original, as is pretended; but a Soldier by Profeſſion, and of the Blood Royal of *Chinguiſhkan*, King of the *Tartars*, of whom ſomething ſhall be ſaid hereafter. Tho' his Perſon was nothing graceful, as being lame of an Arm, and a Leg, and blind of one Eye, yet by his Valour he came to Lord it over the greateſt Part of the Eaſt. To thoſe that ſubmitted he ſhew'd Mercy, and exercis'd the utmoſt Cruelty on ſuch as oppos'd him. His proper Name was *Teymur*, and he had the additional Nick-name of *Langh*, which ſignifies, Lame, and we corruptly call him *Tamerlan*. He was alſo call'd *Teymur Khan*, that is, Lord, or King *Teymur*; and the *Perſians* frequently give him the Title of *Sahaybkharon*, importing as much as Lord, or Diſpoſer of Fortune. The *Perſians* have a very curious Book, in no vulgar Stile, of the Life and Actions of *Teymur*. He had ſeveral Sons, who at his Death divided his Dominions, till Time overthrew that Monarchy. The Great *Mogol*, one of the mightieſt Monarchs in the World, according to the Notion of the *Perſians* who ſay there are only five Kings in being, thoſe of *Turky*, *Perſia*, *Tartary*, *China*, and the *Mogol*, whoſe Dominion extends from the River *Ganges* to the King-

Kingdom of *Makron*, on the Gulph of *Perſia*, comprehending many very large Kingdoms and Provinces, moſt of them wealthy, and civiliz'd. He is a *Mahometan*, but of a different Sort from all the Reſt, as following no particular Sect, but pretending to make a New one. He cauſes himſelf to be worſhip'd by his Subjects, as ſomething Divine, has always certain Clerks about him, whoſe whole Buſineſs is to write down all he ſays and does; reſides one part of the Year at *Lahor*, a great and populous City, and the other at *Agra*, not inferior to the former, and both Capitals of two noble Kingdoms, up the Inland of *India*; and five or ſix Kings, his Subjects generally attend him at Court. He conſtantly keeps a ſort of Fair, thrice in a Year, within his own Palace, to which none but Women are admitted, amounting to above 2000, all of them of Quality, and many Wives to the greateſt Men, with a ſtrong Guard of *Eunuchs*, and he, for his Diverſion, plays the Broker of all that is there brought and ſold, being Things of very conſiderable Value, and has a certain Allowance *per Cent* for Brokerage. Then at the End of the Fair, which laſts eight Days, he preſents her he likes beſt with all his Gettings. The *Mogol* gave a very rich String of Beads to the Son of a Favorite, and his Foſter Brother, who was a great General, call'd *Azys Kokah*, well known in *India*, in my Time, for his extraordinary Valour in the Conqueſt of the Kingdoms of *Cambaya*, and *Sinde*; call'd by another Name *Nababo*, which is a Title of Honour and Dignity. The *Mogol*, as has been ſaid, had given his Son the String of Beads, who preſented it as a precious Jewel, to a Lady he was in Love with. She going to the Fair,

The Mogol

Note *This was when the Author writ, but is ſince alter'd.*

Fair of Women.

carried it with her, where that Prince saw, and knew it, and therefore disgrac'd the Youth, judging him unworthy of his Esteem, who so little valu'd his Favours. There lyes no Objection against calling these Beads; for the *Mahometans* and *Gentiles* use them after their Manner. *Galaladin Akbar* [*this was the* Mogol reigning *at the Time when the Author writ*] keeps abundance of Women, brought from all Parts of his Dominions. The beautifullest of them live in a separate Apartment, guarded by *Eunuchs*, and no Man is to pass along the Street it joyns to, on Pain of Death. The King, when he thinks fit, walks along the Galleries of that Apartment, and they being lodg'd in private Chambers, like Cels, when he passes by, come to their Doors, to make the *Sumbaya*, that is, to do him Reverence. He views them in his Way, and throws his Handkercheif to her he likes best, which she keeps, to return him at Night, this being his Method of chusing her he has a Mind to. This Monarch's Wealth, and Treasure is inestimable, and his Power very great; for he generally has above 200000 Horse in the Field, and almost an equal number of Servants, and Hangers on follow the Army, besides the constant Garrisons in several Parts of his Dominions, and the Foot are never reckon'd, as being innumerable. He had three Sons, among whom he divided his Dominions, two of whom are living. The Eldest, call'd *Xequh Patscha*, who made War on his Father, tho' they are since agreed; and the Youngest, whose Name is *Sabel Xa Patscha*; *Pary Patscha*, the second of them died a natural Death, in the Year 1602. The *Mogols*, being true *Tartars*, and descended of them, are a warlike haughty People, think them-

The Mogol's *Seraglio.*

His Wealth and Power.

Mogols, who they are.

themselves the bravest Men in the World, and generally fight on Horseback, causing themselves to be bound to their Horses when they engage, for the more Safety. Their Weapons are a Lance, and a *Cofo*, that is a Shield, or Buckler, *Turkish* Bows and Arrows, Muskets, Cannon, Coats of Mail, Cymiters, and the like. They are addicted to Gluttony, fond of Wine, and very sensual. As soon as the married Men perceive their Wives are with Child, they have no more to do with them, looking upon it as abominable, and therefore upbraid the *Portugueses* with it, as a Reproach, using this Word *Bethchoch*, which signifies, one that lies with his own Daughter. They are fair of Complexion, with Red in their Faces. I must forbear to say more of them, that I may return to the History.

But I must first speak of the other Man, born in the City of *Bokara*, in the Province of *Uzbek*, and that was the famous Physician, *Avicen*. His proper Name was *Boaly*, and so the *Persians*, who highly value his Writings, call him; but his whole Title is, *Scheque Reis Boaly Sina*, or *Eben Sina*, signifying, the Lord *Boaly*, Son to *Sina*; and from this last Expression *Eben Sina*, I am of Opinion, we have by Corruption made the Name of *Avicen*. This great Man's Life is so well known that it will be needless to repeat it. He was a Noble Man; but not Prince of *Uzbek*, nor born at *Cordova*, nor a *Spaniard*, and writ much more than we have of his, particularly a Volume containing 20 Books of Musick, which the *Persians* call *Musiquy Boaly*, that is, *Boaly*'s Musick, which is extraordinary ingenious and artificial, and he compos'd it, to shew his Ability, on Occasion of the Lamen-

Avicen *born at* Bokara *in* Uzbek.

tation he heard in a Moſque, for a dead Man. He choſe rather to write all his Works in *Arabick* than in his Mother *Perſian* Tongue, becauſe the *Arabick* was more univerſal, and elegant. The *Perſians* tell wonderful Stories of his Wit, which they extol, as more than human, but they blame him, for having an ill Opinion of their *Mahometan* Sect. I cannot but admire at thoſe, who call all Phyſicians *Barbarians*, that are not *Greeks*, or *Latins*, as being ignorant of the Extent of the World, and what it contains, what they know of it being much leſs than what they are Strangers to. There have been and ſtill are in *Perſia*, *Arabia*, and *India*, many Phyſicians, ſo excellent in their Art, that they are fit to be Profeſſors in any Country. If I have been any thing tedious in this Particular, the Reader may excuſe me, for we muſt not always write of Wars and Conqueſts, and if he delights in them, he ſhall have enough in the ſecond Part.

Phyſicians in the Eaſt

I muſt therefore obſerve, that the *Arabs*, *Perſians*, and Eaſtern Gentiles, eſpecially thoſe of *India*, in the Lands of *Decan*, *Cuncan*, *Balagate*, and *Multan*, that is, in the Country of *Lahor*, have the Knowledge of, and practice Phyſick, in the ſame Manner as the *Greecks* and *Latins*, or with very little Difference, dividing it into three Sects, which are the *Empirick*, the *Methodick*, and the *Rational*; and in moſt other Countries, tho' never ſo barbarous, they have Phyſicians, more or leſs skillful, as I ſhall ſoon ſhow. The *Perſians* and *Arabs* call one that is a Phyſician and Philoſopher, *Alym*, and an Empirick, *Tabib*; adding the Title from the Country where they ſtudied, as *Akim Meſery*, a Phyſician of *Grand Cairo*; *Akim Schirazy*, a Phyſician

sician of *Schyras*, as we say, a Doctor of *Padua*, *Paris*, or *Salamanca*; and since they follow *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Avicen*, and others, it is needless to speak of their Method of Curing, only that they seldom let Blood. The *Persians* are so much addicted to the Use of Physick, that besides all the publick Apothecaries Shops, which are as many as the Physicians, for every Doctor has his own Apothecary, every private Man that is able, has his private Shop at home, so plentifully furnish'd, and with such excellent Drugs, that it were to be wish'd our Apothecaries were so well stor'd. They there call them by the Name of *Attar*. And whereas we find it written in *Alfonso de Albuquerque's* Commentaries, that *Coaia Attar* defended the Island of *Ormuz* against him, the Reader is to take Notice, that it should be *Atah*, which was his proper Name. The *Persians* have another more honourable Name for Physicians, which is *Mulak*, and signifies Master, or Teacher, either of their Religion, or of any speculative Science; and I have known Physicians, Astrologers, and Mathematicians so call'd, as *Mulak Jacab*, *Mulak Kodbadia*, *Mulak Ezabk*, and many more. This Word *Mulak* is *Arabick*, and the same as *Muley* us'd by the People of *Barbary*, tho' they have there made it to denote higher Honour and Dignity. I said this Title was only given to Masters of Sciences; because Masters in Arts are call'd *Osta*, or *Ostah*. The *Persians* have another Sort of Physicians, which are Women, whom they generally call *Dayah*, and these cure Women, and Children, a Custom so fixt, that they seldom call any other Physican to them. They make use of all our Physical Simples *Persia* and *Arabia* being plentifully fur-

Apothecaries.

Mulak, or Muley, the same.

Women Physicians.

furnish'd with them all, besides many others we have not of our own, as the true *Amomum*, *Rhubarb*, *Spica*, *Senna*, *Costus*, *Castor*, *Turbith*, and a thousand more. In *India* there are Physicians, among whom those call'd *Pandytos*, are Learned, and able Philosophers, and I have often heard them dispute with our Divines and Physicians, about natural Things, and speak well to the Purpose, and that is the Meaning of the Word *Pandyto*. These are taught in publick Schools they have up the Country, and their Doctrine and Science is written in a Language different from the Vulgar. Another Sort are Empiricks, but both are Apothecaries, as well as Physicians, and when they go to visit a Patient carry along with them a little Bag, and a Glass with the common Medicines, and leave the sick Person behind what he is to take. They have some Medecines of wonderful Effect, in several Cases. In *Molaca*, *Pam*, *Peru*, *Patane*, *Sumatra*, *Sunda*, *Java*, *Borneo*, and all those Southern Countries and Islands, the Women practice Physick, and are call'd *Babu*, signifying a Physician. Their Method is as barbarous as their way of living, for they reduce all Distempers to two Sorts, distinguish'd by these Names, *Capiala*, being every kind of Fever, and *Takana*, signifying, a Disease caus'd by the Air, and whereas in the *Malayan* Language, all Medicines are call'd *Uba*, they presently have Recourse to *Uba Tacana*, and *Uba Capiala*; besides a thousand several Sorceries, Ceremonies, and Inventions, which provoke Laughter, and sometimes cost dear. The *Chineses* have Physicians, and tho' I have seen some of them Methodical, the greater number are Empiricks; and some of them follow the

Indian *Physicians.*

Practice

Practice of *Albucaziz*, altogether by Fire, bating that inſtead of Iron, they cauterize with burning dry'd Herbs. It is Time we leave this Digreſſion, and return to *Keſere Anuxiron*.

He being inform'd of the Irruption made by *Hba Khon Chiny*, ſent his Son *Hormoz* againſt him, with all the Forces that could be gather'd, who marching as expeditiouſly as was poſſible, incamp'd at a ſmall Diſtance from him, whence he harraſs'd him in ſuch manner, by Stratagems, Alarms, and Skirmiſhes, that, after much Damage receiv'd, he drew off in a Conſternation, quitting all he had gain'd, and *Hormoz* return'd to *Perſia*, well ſatisfy'd with the Honour of this Succeſs, which was not ſmall. The War with *Hba Khon*, King of *Tartar*, being ended, Advice was brought, that *Kaled Ben Julas Guaſanii*, the King of *Rumeſtan's* General, had invaded the Lands of *Manzar*, King of *Arabia*, his Subject, and after making great Havock and Slaughter, in which were ſome Kindred of *Manzar*, was going off with a conſiderable Booty. *Keſere Anuxiron* ſent an Embaſſador to complain of this Wrong to the King of *Rumeſtan*, demanding Satisfaction, and that *Kaled* ſhould be puniſh'd; but the Emperor made no Account of his Embaſſy. Hereupon *Keſere Anuxiron* march'd with his Forces againſt the Empire, and entering *Jazirat*, which is *Meſopotamia*, poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Dara*, *Mediney*, *Raha*, and *Kanſeria*; then penetrating into *Syria*, took *Halep*, or *Aleppo*, *Antioch*, and other Places. In fine, he oblig'd the King of *Rumeſtan* to ſue for Peace, which was concluded, upon Condition, that he ſhould pay *Anuxiron* a heavy yearly Tribute, and he quitted *Xam*, *Jazirat*, *Keyaz*, *Hyamen*, *Shacf*, *Bargre*, and *Homan*, all Lands of

Hormoz, Son to Anuxiron forces the Tartars to return home.

Anuxiron invades the Empire

of the Empire, he had possess'd himself of during this Expedition.

Has a Christian Wife. *Anuxiron* had some Years since marry'd a most beautiful Christian Lady of *Gurgistan*. The same was lately done by *Xa Abbas*, now reigning in *Persia* [*that is, when the Author writ,*] who took to Wife one of the same Race, by whom he has Sons and Daughters. All the Difference between them being, that *Kesére Anuxiron* was a Gentile, and *Xa Abas* a *Mahometan*, of the Sect of the *Xyabys*. By that Christian Woman, whom *Anuxiron* took much Pains to pervert, tho' she continu'd stedfast in her Faith, he had a Son, call'd *Nuxzad*. The Mother carefully bred him up, from his Cradle, in the Evangelical Doctrine, from which his Father could never remove him, either by Threats, or fair Means, and being provok'd at his Constancy, caus'd him to be close confin'd, and very ill us'd, all which had no Effect on his Resolution. At this Time some Commotions hapned in the Lands of *Scham*, which is *Syria*, which *Anuxiron* was oblig'd to go in Person to quell. Being there, with his Army he fell so dangerously ill, that it was reported, and believ'd in *Persia*, he would never recover. *Nuxzad* hearing of it, in his Confinement, found Means to escape, and gathering all the Christians there were in the Kingdom, being no small number, besides abundance of other Soldiers, having possess'd himself of all his Father's Treasures, generously distributed them among his Forces; putting new Governours and Garrisons into the strong Holds of the Kingdom, and turning out those his Father had left. *Anuxiron* having soon Intelligence of these Troubles, order'd *Rambarzim*, his General in *Hyerabk* to march, with the greatest Force he could

Her Son Nuxzad bred a Christian.

Revolts against his Father.

could make againſt *Nuxzad*, and endeavour to Rout him, and take ſpecial Care, he ſhould not be kill'd, but only taken, if poſſible, and ſecur'd in ſuch honourable Manner, as became his Perſon. *Rambarzim* accordingly march'd againſt *Nuxzad*, who had made one *Schamos Rumy* his General. They came to a Battel, and Victory ſeem'd to incline to *Nuxzad*, which *Rambarzim* obſerving, he preſs'd on among his Men, fighting like a private Soldier, whereat his Army, taking freſh Courage, gave ſuch a Charge, that *Nuxzad's* Forces were broken, and put to Flight. At this Time an Arrow hit *Nuxzad* on the Breaſt, and pierc'd him through, notwithſtanding his Rich Armour, of which Wound he died in a few Days. *Rambarzim* was very much concern'd; but there being no Remedy, caus'd him to be buried in a pompous Manner after the Chriſtian Faſhion, he having begg'd it as his laſt Requeſt of his Mother, proteſting that he died for, and in the Faith of CHRIST. *Keſere Anuxiron* recover'd of his Sickneſs, and having pacify'd the Commotions in *Xam*, return'd to *Perſia*, where all the late Diſorders being compos'd, he recruited his Army, and made a great Irruption into *India*, as far as *Selandive*, with whoſe King he concluded a Peace, on Condition he ſhould pay him an Acknowledgment.

Is kill'd, and dies a Chriſtian.

Anuxiron *Invades* India.

Selandive, as I ſaid before, is the Iſland of *Ceylon*, ſo call'd by the *Perſians* and *Arabs*, whether it be the *Trapobana* of the Ancients, or no, may be controverted by thoſe it belongs to. All things relating to this Iſland are very well known, ſo that there is nothing new to ſay of it. There are ſome noted Ports in it, and *Gale* is one of the Chiefeſt, whence the Natives

Selandive, *is* Ceylon.

Gale *Port.*

Y

tives are call'd *Chingalas*; because when the *Chineses* Traded from *China* throughout the Southern Sea, that of *India*, and as far as *Ormuz* in the Gulph of *Persia*, the King then Reigning in *China*, perswaded himself, that being so potent, he might possess himself of all the Countries his Subjects sail'd to. To this Purpose he fitted out a mighty Navy, which in a great Storm was shatter'd and dispers'd into several Parts, and some Ships arriv'd at *Gale*, where the *Chineses* manag'd the Natives so well, that besides admitting them to settle there, they inter-married, and the Off-spring of them were call'd *Chingalas*, which Name afterwards extended to all the Inhabitants of the Island, and they still retain it. Here is also the Port of *Chylao*, which in their Language signifies, a Fishery, because there was one of Pearls, being the greatest and most celebrated in the Universe; which I shall give an Account of, when I speak of *Barhen* or *Baharem*. In this same Island is the Port of *Columbo*, a Town and Fortress [*formerly*] belonging to the *Portugueses*, bravely defended by them against the Kings of that Island as were many others mention'd in the Histories of *India*. *Ceylon* produces neither Gold, Silver, nor any other precious Metal, nor Stones of Value, except Cats Eyes, which are the finest in the World; and some Rubies, and it is much doubted, whether these be found in the Island, or brought from abroad; but it has Ivory, the great Cardamum, much *Areka*, which is the *Fusel* of *Avicen*, and what renders it most famous, is the vast Quantity of excellent Cinnamon growing in it, which far surpasses all that grows in other Parts, and there is very much Difference even between that which grows

Chineses settle there, thence the Chingalas

Chylao Port, and Columbo.

Product of Ceylon.

grows in the very Iſland; for that is beſt, which they gather in the Woods of *Columbo*, and *Seytavaca*, formerly the Habitation of the Native Kings, ſince conquer'd by the *Portugueſes* [and *taken from them by the* Dutch, *who ſtill keep it*,] and that brought from *Candea*, another Kingdom of the Iſland, is of leſs Value. Next follows that which the *Portugueſes* call *Canela do Mato*, that is, Wood, or Wild Cinnamon, the beſt of which is that growing in the Kingdom of *Coulam*, and that of *Cochin* not ſo good. There is alſo *Cinnamon* in the Iſland of *Timor*, whence the White *Sandal* or *Sanders* is brought, and in *Cochinchina*, whence we have the *Eagle Wood*, or *Lignum Aloes*; as alſo in the Iſland *Mindanao*, near the *Moluccos*, which affords no Gold, as *Couto* falſly informs us, and has nothing but *Weapons*, as the *Spaniards* found at the Expence of ſo many Lives, under the Governour *Stephen Rodriguez de Figueiroa*, who died there, that they thought fit to abandon it. I have ſeen and had *Cinnamon* from all thoſe Parts, brought on my Account, when I was at *Malaca*; and that of *Mindanao* I afterwards ſaw in the *Philippine* Iſlands. All theſe Sorts are inferior to that of *Ceylon*, and perhaps the Defect may be in not gathering, and improving it rightly, for the Tree is every where the ſame, being like the Laurel, in Leaf, and Berry. The *Perſians* and *Arabs* call that of *Ceylon*, *Dar Chiny Seylany*, that is, *Wood* of the *Chineſes* at *Ceylon*; becauſe the *Chineſes* carried it from *Ceylon* to *Ormuz*, or *Keys*, and *Perſia*, when they mannag'd that Trade. The wild *Cinnamon* they call *Kerfah*, and the *China* Root, *Chub Chiny*. For the better Underſtanding of what Doctor *Garcia Dorta* has written ſomewhat confuſedly concerning *Cinnamon*, I muſt obſerve

Cinnamon.

Cinnamon Tree.

obſerve that the *Malayans*, call Liquorice, and Cinnamon by the ſame Name, which is, *Kayo Maniz*, ſignifying, Sweet Wood, from *Kayo*, Wood, and *Maniz*, Sweet, and to avoid Miſtakes, they call the Cinnamon, *Kayo Maniz Selam*, or ſweet Wood of *Ceylon*, becauſe brought from thence, and the Liquorice, *Kayo Maniz Chin*, ſweet Wood of *China*, as coming from that Country to *Malaca*; and becauſe *Hamama*, which ſignifies *Pes Columbæ*, or Pigeons Foot, and is the *Amomum*, was a Medicin ſo highly valu'd for its Virtue, therefore conſidering the Fragrancy, Sweetneſs, and Excellency of Cinnamon, by way of Commendation, they call'd it *Chin Hamama*, that is *Chineſe Hamama*, whence the *Latins* made *Cinamomum*, and this explains what Doctor *Dorta* ſaid of the Cinnamon. Before we leave the Woods where the Cinnamon grows in *Ceylon*, I will mention the Cuſtom of a certain People living in them, which is worth being known. Theſe Barbarians are call'd *Pachas*, dwelling in the Woods and Thickets, naked, and feeding on the Fruit of them; but their main Suſtenance is Veniſon, whereof there is great Plenty in the Iſland, and they kill abundance with their Bows and Arrows. Then they put a great deal of Honey into the holloweſt Trunks of the oldeſt worm-eaten Trees they can find, and fill them quite up with that Fleſh, which they let lye there, till a Time of Need, and then uſe it, being preſerv'd in the Honey from Corruption, and then they take it out and eat it without any other Dreſſing; which I thought fit to mention, as a very ſtrange Suſtenance. This will ſeem a tolerable Suſtenance enough, to ſuch as ſhall reflect on that of the Inhabitants of the Iſland

Cinamomum whence deriv'd.

Veniſon preſerv'd in Honey.

Raw Fiſh eaten.

Island of *Nicobar*, who eat the Fish raw; as it is taken out of the Water, without any other Cookery, or Seasoning; and the *Arabs* living by the Sea-side, as was hinted before, generally feed on raw dried Fish, with the Juice of Limons, and Tamarinds, and Dates. This is not so bad as devouring Human Flesh, as the *Javaneses* did, little above an hundred Years since, before they embrac'd *Mahometanism*; and the Blacks call'd *Zimbas*, still do it; not sparing their own People, as was seen 10 or 12 Years since, when 70 or 80000 of them marching in a Body; through the Inland of *Africk*, to find out the Country of *India*, or of the *Pannos*, as they said, as soon as any of their Company fell sick, they kill'd, divided, and eat them. These People ended their Progress at *Melinde* and *Monbaza*, being destroy'd by the *Portugueses*.

To this Purpose I remember a very pleasant Practice of certain Blacks, Natives of those Parts, who following the Exercise of Arms, cannot be Knighted after their Manner, till they have presented the King with one or more privy Members of their Enemies, slain by them in War, as a Token of their Valour, which done, they assign them Lands, and Cows. Of this I am an Eye-Witness; and they are call'd *Moceguejos*. This is something like what *Saul* requir'd of *David* his Son-in-Law, that to receive his Wife, he should bring him the Fore-Skins of the *Philistines*. The People of *Pegu*, in their Time of Declining, whilst I was yet in *India*, were reduc'd to such Famine, as to keep publick Shambles of Man's Flesh, killing one another as every one was strongest. To conclude with the *Chingalas*, they are naturally inclin'd to the Exercise of Arms,

Odd Customs of Blacks.

Chingalas.

Arms, in which they have, and ſtill do perform incredible Feats, ſome of which I have ſeen. They work curiouſly in Ivory, and Chryſtal, of which laſt the Iſland affords ſome Quantity, and make very neat Firelocks. Thus much may ſuffice of them, and their Iſland, that I may return into *Perſia*, to

Anuxiron's *Dominions.*

Anuxiron, whoſe Sovereignty extended over the Lands of *Maurenahar*, *Karaſon*, *Darbend*, *Ahezran*, *Hyama*, *Tabarſtam*, *Gerion*, Part of *India*, *Kermon*, *Parz* or *Perſia*, *Aderbaion*, *Hyerakhen*, *Jazirat*, *Homan*, as far as *Hyaman* in *Arabia*, and many others towards *Magareb*, in *Rumeſtan*, that is, in *Greece*, or the Provinces of the Empire of *Conſtantinople*. In this King's Time were brought out of *India*, into *Perſia*, two very famous Books of Philoſophy, the one call'd *Kelilah*, and the other *Wademana*, and the Game of *Cheſs*, which the *Indians* ſent to the *Perſians* to repreſent the Uncertainty and Mutability of this Life, which is a continual Warfare, and that therefore, being in perpetual Strife, every Man ought to be directed by Prudence and Knowledge. To this, *Mirkond* ſays, the *Perſians* anſwer'd, ſending them in Return the Game of Tables, and declaring, that tho' Wiſdom and Prudence were requiſite for the well-ordering of Life, yet there muſt be ſome Aſſiſtance of Fortune, as they might perceive by that Game. Both *Indians* and *Perſians* uſe Cheſs and Tables very much, and many of them underſtand thoſe Games to Perfection. Tho' I know how many ſeve Opinions there are concerning the firſt In tion of Cheſs, I ſhould think it no Preſumption to ſay, it was firſt found out in thoſe Parts; for beſides other Reaſons I have for it, one is, that in moſt Places where the ſame is us'd,

Books of Philoſophy, and Cheſs, brought out of India into Perſia

they

they retain the ſame Names the *Perſians* give the ſeveral Pieces, or at leaſt not much alter'd, calling the King *Scha*, and the Queen *Wazir*, being the next Perſon to the Sovereign; the Biſhop *Fil*, that is, Elephant; the Knight, *Alp* or *Faraz*, that is, a Horſe; the Pawn, *Peada*, ſignifying, a Foot-Soldier; what we call Check, they name *Scha*, which is, as it were giving notice to the King, and for Check Mate, they ſay *Schamaſe*, importing in their Language, *the King is Dead.* Now, whereas ſome affirm, that the Game of Cheſs by the *Perſians* call'd *Schatraak*, that is the King's Game, or Diverſion, was invented at *Babylon*, it is very reaſonable to believe, that we had it from the *Perſians*, *Babylon* having been often, and for a long Time ſubject to *Perſia*, and ſo near to it.

Keſere Anuxiron was Learned, and a Favourer of ſuch Perſons; he had many Sons, but none equal to *Hormoz*, whom he therefore enthron'd before his Death, which hapned when he had reign'd 48 Years, ſtrictly charging him to preſerve Peace and Unity, and be kind to his Subjects. *Mirkond* dilates very much upon this King's Virtues, his Greatneſs of Mind, and the Proſperity of *Perſia* under him, which I omit for Brevity. *Anuxiron* had the additional Title of *Adel*, on Account of his extraordinary Integrity, in the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, a Virtue peculiar to him, for in the *Perſian* Tongue, Juſtice, and a juſt Man are both call'd *Adel*. It will not be improper in this place to obſerve, that as we in our Parts, beſides their proper Name, and the common Title of Kings, ſometimes give our Monarchs a diſtinctive Appellation, expreſſing ſome Virtue or Vice, that prevails in them, as the Wiſe,

Keſere Anuxiron *dyes, his Character.*

the Chaſte, the Great, the Cruel, the Juſt, of Glorious Memory, and the like, ſo the ſame is practis'd not only among the Kings of *Perſia*, but of other Eaſtern Parts. The *Perſians* call a King *Scha*, or *Patſcha*, as alſo *Sahayb*, which, as has been ſaid, ſignifies Sovereign; and whereas it is mention'd in the Hiſtories of *India*, ſpeaking of the Taking of *Goa*, that the Prince of it was call'd *Sabaidalcan*, it ought to be *Sahayb Aden Kan*, ſignifying Sovereign, and King of Juſtice. They alſo uſe another very haughty Name, which is *Kodakon*, denoting ſomething of Divinity, for in the *Perſian*, *Kodak*, is God. Thus the King of *Phya* aſſum'd a Name, ſignifying the living God; and tho' the *Perſians* call their Kings by any of the aforeſaid Names, adding any Epithets that ſute them, as has been mention'd of ſome of them; when in their Hiſtories they ſpeak of foreign Kings, they generally give them the ſame Titles they have in their own Countries, as *Xar* to the King of *Gurgeſton*, as his own Subjects do. The *Arabs* call the King *Sultan* or *Malek*, the Latter whereof alſo ſignifies an *Angel*. Sometimes they call him *Xeque*, which being the Word for an Ancient Man, is more generally apply'd to the Head, or Chief of a Town or Hord, as we might ſay a Ruler, or Petty King. The *Turks* uſe *Hhan* or *Khan* or *Khon*, or *Begk*, which we pronounce *Beg*, and this laſt Title is generally given to Commanders, and Perſons in great Honour and Dignity, as *Don* is among us. The People of *Tatar*, whom we call *Tartars*, call their King *Kha Khon* and *Khan*. The *Perſians* and *Arabs* call the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, or of the *Romans*, *Khon Kor Rumy*, or *Kayſar Rumi*, which is the ſame as *Roman Cæſar*. The Eaſtern Gentiles uſe *Rao*

Titles of Kings in the Eaſt.

or

or *Raio*, for the common Name of King; and the *Mahometans*, besides their proper Names, have other Appellatives left them by their Forefathers, and continu'd as if they were their own, like the *Pharaohs*, and the *Ptolomeys*. Such is that of the King of *Decan*, where *Chaul* a City belonging to the *Portugueses* stands, whom we vulgarly call *Niza Maluco*, instead of *Nezab al Moluco*, signifying the Spear, that is, the Defence of the Kingdom. They also call him *Malek*, that is King, and the *Portugueses* corruptly *Melik*. This Word puts me in mind of the Etymology of the Herb Physicians call *Melilot*, and the Vulgar *Kings-Crown*, which seems to be deriv'd from its *Arabick* Name, *Equelilal Malek*, being the same thing. The King of *Cunhan* or *Balagate* in *India*, where the City of *Goa* stands, is call'd *Adel Khan* or *Adel Scha*, importing King, or Lord of Justice, and the *Portugueses* corruptly name him *Dialcan* or *Hidalcan*. The proper Name of the Monarch, whom we call the Great *Mogol* is *Gelaladin*, and his Appellative *Akbar*. *Kebar* in *Arabick* is Great, and the A set before it, is a negative Preposition, both which join'd together import Matchless, being the same Expression the *Arabs* use for God, saying, *Alah Kebar Akebar*, which is, *Great matchless God*, and so *Gelaledin* is call'd *Akbar*. In that Part of *Africk* by the *Portugueses* call'd *Cafraria*, or the Land of the *Cafres*, they have two common Names for their Princes; the first of them is *Munne*, very like that they have in *Congo* and *Angola*, where they call their Prince or Lord *Manni*; the other is *Mongana*, and I remember that, when in those Parts, I knew one *Mongana Bolay Agy*, who was of the Blood Royal, and therefore stil'd *Mongana*; *Bolay* was his

proper Name, and *Agi* imports sanctify'd. Because this is a ridiculous Blindness and comical Story, or indeed rather to be pity'd and lamented, I will relate it. All the *Mahometans* believe, and look upon it as an undoubted Truth, that such of them as go in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, and are there at the solemn Festival, kept in *September*; whatsoever they be, are sanctify'd, and safe, and need do no more to go to Heaven, and therefore they give all such the Name of *Agy*, many of whom I have known, and among them, one that was Porter to King *Ferragus Scha*. His Name was *Amir Hamed Agy*, who liv'd very contented on Account of his Pilgrimage, looking upon his Salvation as most certain. I us'd to ask him, If he thought so why he labour'd, and took any more Pains, in going to the *Mosque*, performing the *Sala* and *Kamaz*, which is their Prayers, and Fasting their *Ramadan*. He answer'd, *He had no need of doing it for himself, but did it for others, who had not merited so much, or obtain'd that Mercy.* Such is the Darkness, and Stupidity those Wretches live in. The Reader I hope will pardon this Digression, and we will proceed to treat of *Hormoz*, who after the Death of his Father *Kesere Anuxiron* ascended the Throne of *Persia*.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Hormoz *or* Hormisda, *the* 32*th King of* Persia.

Hormoz's Tyranny.

HORMOZ, the Son *Kesere Anuxiron*, by a Daughter of the King of *Tatar* or *Tartary*, succeeded his Father in the Kingdom of

of *Perſia*. He was before accounted a good Prince, but chang'd his Behaviour with his Fortune, becoming Cruel, Vicious and Tyrannical, and being ſuch, begun to grow jealous, and that he might have none to fear, put to Death all the great Men in his Dominions, and depriv'd all Judges of their Employments, thinking it indecent that there ſhould be any other Judge beſides himſelf. It is poſitively affirm'd, that during the firſt twelve Years of his Government, he ſlew 13000 Men of Note in his Dominions, beſides a great Number not reckon'd, and many voluntarily baniſh'd themſelves, to be out of the Reach of that Plague. The Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, underſtanding how Affairs ſtood in *Perſia*, would not let ſlip that Opportunity of recovering the Lands that had belong'd to the Empire, but arm'd and unexpectedly invaded the Territories of *Nacibea*, which according to the *Perſian* Tradition is *Ninive*, by them, and the *Arabs* now call'd *Moſul* in *Diarkek* or *Karamite*, which they look upon as undoubted, affirming it was thither that *Pehhanber* went to Preach, ſo the *Perſians* call a Prophet, and the *Arabs Naby*, who being caſt into the Sea, was ſwallow'd by a great Fiſh. If this be ſo, *Ninive* was never quite deſtroy'd, for that City ſtill floriſhes and is very thriving. The Emperor being come into the Territory of *Nacibon*, ſent to acquaint *Hormoz*, that in caſe the Lands belonging to the Empire, were reſtor'd to him, he would return, without doing any Harm. The Anſwer not being ſatisfactory, he proceeded farther ravaging all *Armenia* and *Aderbajon*; and ſending two of his Generals call'd *Abas Awal*, and *Homeu Azarek*, with a ſufficient Force againſt *Babylon*, and its Territory, which they

Emperor of Conſtantinople *invades* Perſia.

Xabaxa *the* Tartar *invades* Perſia.

utterly ruin'd and deſtroi'd. *Schabaxa*, Unkle to *Hormoz*, as being his Mothers Brother, was King of *Tatar* or *Tartary*, who ſeeing the Diſtreſs his Nephew was in, rais'd an Army of 400000 Men, not to aſſiſt him, but to conquer his Dominions, paſſing the River *Jehun*, and ſubduing *Karaſon*. *Hormoz* was then ſenſible of his Folly, and felt the Want of ſo many great Men he had caus'd to be ſlain. In this Confuſion, he aſſembled his Council, where it was reſolv'd, that the Emperor of *Rumeſtan* ſhould have the Lands he demanded reſtor'd him; and that Side being ſecur'd, they ſhould convert their Arms againſt the *Tartar*. This was accordingly done, and they ſent for one *Baharon Chuby*, a *Perſian* Commander, then Governour on the Frontiers of *Armenia*, and the braveſt Man then known. He being come to Court, prepar'd without loſing Time, to march againſt *Schabaxa Hha Khon Chiny*, and tho' offer'd a numerous Army, would not take along with him above 12000 experienc'd Soldiers, all of them between 30 and 40 Years of Age. *Baharon Chuby* was much cenſur'd, for preſuming to march againſt ſo potent an Enemy, with ſo ſmall a Force; but he behav'd himſelf ſo well, that ſoon after News was brought of a great Slaughter he had made of the *Tartars*, with the Death of their King. They rallying ſet up his Son, who continu'd the War, with no better Succeſs; for after ſeveral ſmall Actions, he was overthrown, and taken. *Baharon Chuby* having thus deſtroy'd the *Tartars*, took 250 Camels loaded with Money, Gold and Silver, beſides much more valuable Booty, which he ſent by his Son to King *Hormoz*; by whom theſe and all his other good Services were ill rewarded, for the

Peace with the Greek *Emperor.*

Tartars routed by Baharon.

Ma-

Malice of *Baharon's* Enemies prevailing, he caus'd him to be ſecur'd at his Return. *Baharon* was highly provok'd at this Ingratitude, and finding Means to eſcape, reſolv'd to be reveng'd, perſwading *Khozrao Parves*, eldeſt Son to *Hormoz*, ſince he was of Right, Heir to the Crown, to enter upon the Poſſeſſion immediately. *Khozrao* gave Ear to him, coining Money in his own Name, with his Arms, and calling himſelf King of *Perſia*. Two Uncles by his Mothers Side ſupported him, the one call'd *Bandukye*, the other *Boſtam*. *Hormoz*, being inform'd of theſe Practices, thought to have diſappointed them, by ſecuring their Perſons, but they knowing it, prevented it by Flight. *Khozrao Parvez* went away into *Armenia*, and thence to *Aderbaion*; the King's two Brothers in Law were taken, but breaking the Priſon, gather'd all the Strength they could, fell ſuddenly upon *Hormoz*, took him, and put out his Eyes. *Khozrao Parvez* hearing what had happen'd, return'd into *Perſia*, and after cauſing himſelf to be receiv'd as King, begg'd Pardon of his Father, who granted it, on Condition he ſhould puniſh thoſe who had put out his Eyes, which he promis'd, but did not perform, till well ſettled on the Throne.

He is impriſon'd, and eſcapes

Hormoz depos'd, and his Eyes put out.

In the mean while, *Baharon Chuby* having rais'd a conſiderable Army, began to range through *Perſia*, with a Deſign to make himſelf Maſter of it. *Khozrao Parvez* met him, was overthrown, and fled to *Conſtantinople*, attended by his two Uncles, who adviſ'd him to leſſen the number of his Enemies, cutting off his Father, that he might have leſs to fear. *Khozroa Parves* giving no Ear to their Advice, and they fearing there was no Safety for them whilſt *Hormoz* liv'd, made an Excuſe to withdraw

Khozrao defeated by Baharon.

Hormoz *ſtrangled.* draw themſelves from *Parvez*, and going where *Hormoz* was, ſtrangled him with a Bow-ſtring, and thus ended *Hormoz*. *Khozroa Parvez*, who, as has been ſaid, fled to *Rumeſtan*, after being defeated by *Baharon Chuby*, manag'd his Buſineſs ſo well there, that the Emperor not only gave him his Daughter to Wife, but 100000 Men, under the Conduct of his Son, whom the *Perſians* call *Benathas*, for the Recovery of his Dominions; and in Return *Khozrao Parvez* preſented him with a large Piece of our Saviour's Croſs, his Father *Hormoz* had. With thoſe Forces *Khozrao* ſet forward, and was joyn'd by his Uncle *Bandukye*. *Baharon Chuby*, who by ſome is reckon'd among the Kings of *Perſia*, met him, and three of his Prime Officers came forward, challenging any other three. *Parvez* arm'd himſelf, and went out againſt them alone, much againſt his Brother-in-Law's Will. They fought Man to Man, and *Khozrao* behav'd himſelf ſo bravely, that he overcame them all one after another, which *Baharon Chuby's* Men admiring, they forſook him, and went over, and he thus abandon'd, quitted *Perſia*, and fled into *Turkeſtan*, where he ſerv'd *Aba Khon Chiny*, and was afterwards kill'd.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Khoſrao Parvez, *or* Coſroes, *the* 33*th King of* Perſia.

Koſrao *executed his Fathers Murderers.* KHOSRAO *Parvez* having ſurmounted all his Misfortunes, and being peaceably ſeated on the Throne of *Perſia*, remember'd the Promiſe he had made his Father, and ſecuring his Unkles *Boſtam* and *Bandukye*, who had

had murder'd him, caus'd them to be executed in a dreadful Manner. In the 14*th* Year of his Reign, the *Greeks* rebelling against their Emperor, kill'd him and his Son *Benathus*, who as was said had accompany'd *Khosrao* into *Persia*, another Brother of his narrowly Escaping to *Khozrao*, who receiv'd and entertain'd him very honourably, and raising a numerous Army put him at the Head of it, with able Generals, to recover his Empire. They march'd through *Syria* and *Palestine*, towards *Constantinople*, ravaging the Country, taking and destroying infinite numbers of People. The *Greeks*, after the Murder of their Emperor, had enthron'd one *Ariol*, that is, *Heraclius*, a Man of singular Wisdom and Valour, who hearing of the Approach of the *Persians*, rais'd Forces, march'd, and fought them, killing 10000 in the first Battel, the Rest flying till they return'd into *Persia*. About the 30*th* Year of *Khozrao's* Reign, the wicked Impostor *Mahomet* appear'd in *Arabia*, assuming the Title of a Prophet, and under that usurp'd Denomination, writ to several Princes and great Men in those Parts, beseeching and requiring them in the Name of God, to receive and embrace his false Doctrine. Among the Rest he writ to, *Khozrao Parvez* was one, but so far from giving any Ear to his *Enthusiasms*, that he spoke the worst that could be of him.

Rebellion of Greeks.

Defeat of Persians.

The Original of that infernal Wretch *Mahomet* being so well known, it will be needless to spend much Time in speaking of it; however, considering how much they differ, who pretend to write of it, I will with my usual Brevity deliver what I several times heard from the *Persians* and *Arabs*, which is, That *Mahomet* was an *Arab* without any Mixture,

Mahomets first Rise.

no

no Slave, but free, and when a Boy, ſery'd a Merchant, going with him to Fairs, from one Place to another. Seeing him once upon a Journey, without any Shelter againſt the ſcorching Heat of the Sun, he caus'd a ſtately Tree to ſprout up, on a ſudden to ſhade him, which we may ſuppoſe was the Work of the Devil. His Maſter having ſeen this Wonder, and others they tell held him in great Eſteem for the future. His Reputation ſtill increaſing, the Maſter hapned to dye, and he marry'd his Miſtreſs. She was rich and of good Parentage, which much enhanc'd the Opinion conceiv'd of his Sanctity. Upon theſe Motives, and his own Natural Subtilty he grounded his wild Sect, falling one Day unexpectedly with thoſe of his Faction, upon the Idols the *Arabs* ador'd, which he caſt down and beat in Pieces, teaching the People to adore one onely God of Heaven; yet mixing with it all the Venom contain'd in his *Alcoran*; ſometimes uſing Force, and ſometimes Art, which they call Knowledge and Revelations, thus to bring about the Miſchiefs, he and his Followers have brought upon the World; God in his juſt and inſcrutable Judgments permitting it. This is what the *Perſians*, and *Arabs* generally ſay of his firſt Riſe.

Khozrao's Dream. To return to our Hiſtory, *Khozrao Parvez* being in the City of *Madakem*, one Night dreamt, that the ſaid City was wall'd round, and had 11 Towers about it, all which decay'd, and fell to the Ground, one after another, till the City was left open. He awak'd out of his Dream in much Fear and Confuſion, call'd his Aſtrologers, and Soothſayers, deſiring they would expound his Dream. One among the reſt told him, That the 11 Towers

were

were ſo many Kings or Governours of *Perſia*, that were to ſucceed him, after whom that Monarchy of *Perſia* would fall. This put *Khozrao* upon contriving Means, to prevent that Ruin, which he could not; but among other Extravagancies, believing that might be occaſion'd by Diſcord betwixt his Sons, he caus'd them all to be apprehended, ordering that none of them ſhould be permitted to talk, or converſe with any Body, not ſo much as with their own Wives and Children. *Xarear*, one of them, beſides his other Wives, had one he ſingularly lov'd for her extraordinary Beauty, her Name *Xerin*, which in the *Perſian* Tongue properly ſignifies Sweet, tho' it is vulgarly taken for any thing that is excellent, and accordingly they ſay, *Doney Xerin*, a perfect fine Pearl, whence the *Portugueſes* call fine Pearls, *Aljofar Xerino*. There is a Book in the *Perſian* Tongue, in moſt ingenious Verſe, full of noble Flights, and call'd *Khozrao Xerin*, highly valu'd by the *Perſians*, as it well deſerves, and the whole Subject of it is another Lady call'd *Xerin*, and the mighty things done for her Sake by two Lovers; the one of them a Prince, whoſe Name was *Khozrao*, but not this we now write of, the other one *Ferat*, a Perſon of a lower Rank. *Xarear* thinking on his *Xerin*, was much afflicted that he could not ſee her, and Love being full of Invention and Contrivance, he found one to eaſe his Pain. He counterfeited Sickneſs, wanted to be Blooded, *Xerin* came diſguis'd like a Surgeon, was admitted into the Priſon, and from that Interview ſhe prov'd with Child, and was deliver'd of a Son, who was call'd *Jazdgerd*, and bred up in his Grandfather *Khozrao Parvez's* Court, till the Age of 5 Years, without his Knowledge. Being then told

told of it, he would have kill'd him, and was very positive in his Resolution; yet the Mother said so much, and shed such abundance of Tears, that she prevail'd, he should not be murder'd there, but expos'd in the Woods to wild Beasts. This is to be observ'd, and carried in Mind, for the better Understanding of what shall soon be said at the End of this first Part. Old Age, and Fear of losing his Crown made *Khozrao Parvez* suspicious, timorous, cruel, covetous, haughty and hateful to his Subjects, of whom he order'd many to be slaughter'd, without any other Reason or Provocation, but his own Fancy; among whom was *Keaman*, Grand-son to *Manzar*, who had done him considerable Service. *Khozrao Parvez* had reign'd 38 Years, when the *Persians*, no longer able to endure his Tyranny, unanimously depos'd, and deliver'd him up into the Custody of a trusty Commander, enthroning his Son *Kobad Schirughe* in his Stead. This happened in the 9*th* Year of the *Mahometan Era*, call'd *Hegira*, which was much about 631 of CHRIST. *Khosrao Parvez* is the same we call *Cosdroes* and *Areol*, above mention'd, as King of *Rumestam*, is the Emperor *Heraclius*.

Yazdgerd expos'd to wild Beasts

A. Ch. 631

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of Kobad Schirughe, *or* Siroes, *the* 34*th King of* Persia.

THE *Persians*, thinking to mend themselves, having depos'd *Khozrao Parvez*, and enthron'd his Son *Kobad Schirughe* soon repented; for as soon as he found himself fixt, the

Kobad murders his Father and Brothers.

the first thing he contriv'd, among other Enormities, was to murder his Father; then a Prisoner, and yet as bad as he had been, and so much hated by all Men, there was none that would embrue his Hands in his Blood. However some time after, one *Merche Ormoz*, Son to one *Mordomscha*, whom *Parvez* had order'd to be slain, undertook the Deed. This Man entering the Prison, where *Khozrao Parvez* lay, without any other Ceremony accosted him with these Words: *It is Just to kill him that kill'd my Father*, and so struck off his Head; then returning to the King, well pleas'd with the Action, and telling him what he had said and done; *Kobad* repeated the same Words, *It is Just that I kill him who kill'd my Father*, and caus'd him to be put to Death. *Kobad* being thus deliver'd from the Burden of a Father, which he thought lay heavy upon him, thought fit also to rid himself of his Brothers, and accordingly gave Orders to his *Wazirs* or *Viziers*, and Governours, who executed them so punctually, that of 15 Brethren he had, none escap'd, but two Sisters were sav'd on Account of their Sex. This was follow'd by so great a Famine, and Pestilence, as reduc'd *Persia* to Extremity. These Miseries and Calamities encourag'd *Kobad's* two Sisters, the eldest call'd *Turondoct*, and the younger *Azarmydoct*, to reprove him severely, alledging, That God scourg'd them so heavily, and yet threatned worse for his Sins and Enormities, and particularly for the base Murder of his Father and Brothers; and therefore bid him repent, and mend his Life, and to fear God, and be asham'd of his Impiety. These and such other Expressions deliver'd by *Khobad Xiruybe's* Sisters, made such an Impression, and were so much

A Traitor condemns himself.

much resented by him, that he fell sick with mere Anguish of Mind, and soon dy'd, having reign'd but eight Months, leaving only one Son an Infant, call'd *Ardxir Schirughe*, who succeeded him in the Throne.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Ardxir Schirughe, *the* 35*th King of* Persia.

Ardxir *murder'd by* Xarear.

ARDXIR Schirughe was but seven Years of Age, when he succeeded his Father *Kobad*. One *Scharear*, a Kinsman of his, otherwise call'd *Gher Khan*, at that Time Governour of the Province of *Agem*, hearing that an Infant was proclaim'd, and thinking that a proper Opportunity, gather'd all the best Forces he could, and coming to Court, upon very slight Pretences, murder'd the Child, and many others that attempted to defend him, and usurp'd the Kingdom, with the Assistance of the Soldiers he brought with him. *Ardschir Schirughe* enjoy'd the Title of King 50 Days.

CHAP. XL.

Of Scharear, *or* Siahriar, *Usurper of* Persia, *reckned the* 36*th King*.

Xarear *kill'd.*

SCHAREAR having destroy'd *Ardschir*, as has been said, possess'd himself of *Persia*, in spight of all that oppos'd him, and tho' he us'd all possible Means to gain the good Will of the great Men of the Nation, he could never

ver prevail. There were three Brothers then at Court, Men of Birth, and Soldiers of Valour, who were much concern'd, and could not bear, that a Tyrant of such small Power, should keep them under. Upon this Motive they conspir'd to kill him, as they did, waiting one Day till he was taking Horse, at the Gate, where they laid hold, threw down, and stabb'd him in several Places; being assisted by the Multitude, who long'd to be rid of him. This hapned when he had reign'd a Year, tho' some say but 40 Days.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Joon, *the* 37*th King of* Persia.

THE *Persians* being deliver'd from the Tyranny of *Scharear*, bestow'd the Crown on *Joon Schir*, of the Family of the former Kings; his Name signifying a beautiful Lion, or a Lion-like Youth. He was Nephew to *Bakaron Chuby*, who made War on *Khozrao Parvez*, and gave Hopes he might have prov'd a generous Prince, had not Death cut him off, when he had reign'd but one Year. Joon *dyes.*

CHAP. XLII.

Of Turon Doct, *Queen of* Persia, *the* 38*th in the Royal Descent.*

TURON *Doct*, eldest Daughter to *Khozrao Parvez*, succeeded *Joon Schir*. *Turon* is the proper Name of a Woman, and *Doct* in Turon Dokt *rules well, and dyes.*

the *Persian*, signifies a Maiden, or Virgin, as *Dokter* does a Sister. This was a wise and prudent Queen, pacify'd her Kingdom, making Examples of several turbulent Persons that disturb'd it, restor'd Justice, rebuilt many publick Structures ruin'd by Time, made one of the three Brothers that had kill'd *Scharear* Prime *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, maintain'd Peace, and Amity with the King of the *Rumes*, or Emperor of *Constantinople*; and at the Time the *Persians* were highly pleas'd with her, she was snatch'd away by Death, having reign'd but 16 Months.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of Jasancedah, *the 39th Monarch of* Persia.

Jasancedah, depos'd.

UPON the Death of *Turon Dokt* the *Persians* conferr'd the Kingdom on *Jasancedah*, of the Blood Royal, about whose Election there was much Strife; and being at last admitted, when they came to put the *Toge*, or as we may call it, the Crown on his Head, he said, It was very heavy, and did not fit him. Some affirm, he said it in Reference to the Weight of the Government, others, that it was out of mere Ignorance; However it was, the *Persians*, who were dissatisfy'd with him, made this a Motive to dispossess him, which they did in a shamful Manner, when he had reign'd but 6 Days.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of Azarmy Dokt, *Queen of* Persia, *and the* 40*th Sovereign.*

Jasancedah being depos'd, the Government was committed to *Azarmy Dokt*, younger Daughter to *Khozrao Parvez*, and Sister to *Turon Dokt*, a most beautifull and understanding Lady. *Ferrog Hormoz*, a famous Commander had govern'd the Province of *Karason*, ever since the Reign of *Khozrao Parvez*; he hearing the Fame of *Azarmy Dokt*, and invited by the Disposition of the Affairs of the Kingdom, left a Son he had in his Place, and went away to Court, to make Love to the New Queen, which he did with so much Importunity and Presumption, that she to save her Honour, was oblig'd to order him to be put to Death, which was accordingly executed. The News of his End, being carry'd into *Karason*, the Son he had left there in his Stead, was so inrag'd, that he march'd into *Persia* with a numerous Army, and surprising the Court, put the Queen to a cruel Death, notwithstanding the many Intreaties made, and Tears shed for her. She govern'd but six Months.

Ferrog put to Death for courting the Queen.

His Son murders her.

CHAP. XLV.

Of Kesere, *the* 41*th King of* Persia.

KESERE, whose Father *Jasancedah*, we said before, had been depos'd for Incapacity, was proclaim'd King, after the Murder of *Azarmy Dokt*. He proving no wiser than

Kesere murder'd.

than his Father, nor his Government, or Life any better, by his Indiſcretion, gave his Subjects Occaſion to murder him alſo in a very few Days.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of Ferrogzad, *the 42th King of* Perſia.

IT was ſaid in the Reign of *Kobad Schirugke*, that he murder'd his Father and 15 Brothers, which caus'd all that were a kin to him, and could eſcape, to fly, for Fear of their Lives, ſome of whom return'd into *Perſia* after his Death, and among them *Ferrogzad*, Son to *Kobad*, and Grand-ſon to *Khozrao Parvez*, who being known, was declar'd King, and would have been a good one, as appear'd by the ſhort Time of his Reign, which was not above a Month, at the End of which he was poiſon'd by a Slave of his own.

Ferrogzad *poiſon'd.*

CHAP. XLVII.

Of Yazdgerd, *the 43th and laſt King of* Perſia, *of this Race.*

IT was mention'd in the Life of *Khozrao Parvez*, that he having caſt all his own Sons into Priſon, one of them, call'd *Scharear*, had there by his Wife *Scherin*, a Son call'd *Yardgerd*, who being afterwards found out by his Grand-father was expos'd to wild Beaſts. He being left in a Wood, by thoſe that had been entruſted, was found by ſome Shepherds, who took

took Compaſſion on him, and bred him up, without knowing who he was; but ſome time after his Birth and Deſcent came to be known, and he encourag'd by it, went away to Court, in ſuch good Time, that being acknowledg'd, he was proclaim'd King of *Perſia*, and govern'd 19 Years; at the End whereof, the Period of that Monarchy being now come, there came vaſt Multitudes of *Turks* out of *Turon*, or *Turkeſtan*, who entring *Kahaoand*, deſtroy'd all thoſe Countries, obliging *Yazdgerd*, that went out to meet them to retire to *Karaſon*. There he receiv'd Advice, that the *Arabs*, *Mahomet's* Commanders, invaded his Dominions on the other Side. He march'd againſt, and ſoon came near them, but return'd to *Karaſon* without Fighting, where he dy'd ſuddenly, having been King 20 Years, and the laſt of the *Perſians* deſcended from *Kayumarraz*. In him ended that *Perſian* Monarchy, and was tranſferr'd to the *Kalifs*, Succeſſors to *Mahomet*, who ſetled their Court at *Kufa*, and next at *Bagadad*, or *Bagdat*, as will appear in the Second Book of this Hiſtory, which follows with the ſame Brevity as this Firſt.

The END of the firſt Book.

THE HISTORY OF PERSIA.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

Which of the Arabs, *and at what Time they ſubdu'd* Perſia.

THE Irruption of the *Arabs* into *Perſia*, put all Things there into ſuch Confuſion and Diſorder, that a thouſand Difficulties muſt needs occur in giving an Account of them. I ſhall therefore endeavour, as far as may be, to avoid all Controverſy, not departing from my intended Brevity, and following as hitherto, *Tarik Myrkond*, and his Method, only laying down the Succeſſion of the Kings, according to my Promiſe in the Beginning of this Work, reducing into a ſmall Compaſs, what he delivers at large in

in considerable Volumes, whose Style and Authority has the first Place among the *Persian* Writers.

To follow the said Author, according to the Chronology of that Nation, *Persia* fell under the Dominion of the *Arabs* in the Year 33 of the *Hegira*, which is the *Mahometan Era*, or Computation of Time, wherein there seems to be some Difference between the *Persians* and the *Arabs*. It being a Matter of much Difficulty exactly to reconcile the different Chronologies, I shall always therein follow our Historian, placing the Year of our Lord in the Margin, upon the most remarkable Occurrences, according to the best of my Knowledge, freely submitting my Judgment to any better Opinion. *Mirkond* tells us, that *Mahamed*, whom we vulgarly call *Mahomet*, reign'd ten Years, and he dying, after much Strife, was succeeded by *Abubakar*, with the Title of *Kalefah* or *Calif*, which was first given to him, and then continu'd to all his Successors. Being to speak of the *Kalefahs* or *Califs*, and the *Califship*, it will be convenient, before we proceed any farther, to explain the Meaning of that Title, which came from those Tyrants, erecting their Sovereignty under the specious Pretence of Zeal for Religion and Sanctity, who therefore took to themselves Names, denoting their Pride and Hpocrisy, as is that of *Kalefah* or *Calif*, properly signifying what in *Latin* we call, *A Deo Datus*, given by God, or the Gift of God, which the *Turks* and *Persians* call, *Quoda verdy*, or *Ala verdy*, being the same Thing, and a Name very proper considering their Actions, for they seem to have been given by God, for a Scourge to all those Nations they have conquer'd. I know, there

A.Ch.655.

Abubakar *first* Calif.

What Calif *signifies.*

are those that give it another Interpretation, but this is the true one, taken from the *Arabick* Root, and the Matter being of no great Consequence, needs not be further controverted. To return to the Course of our History.

Homar *the* 2*d* Calif *subdues* Persia.

Abubakar held the Government two Years and a half, and he dying was succeeded by *Homar*, who held it 10 Years and a half, at the End whereof he enter'd *Persia*, and subdu'd it, in the Reign of *Yazdgerd*, the last King, as was said in the first Book. From this Time the *Califs* are reckon'd Sovereigns of *Persia*; but it is to be observ'd, that the *Califs* here spoken of are those of *Bagadad* or *Bagdat*, by the *Mahometans* reckoned *Mahomet's* true Successors. *Homar* dying, *Osman* or *Otman* succeeded in that Empire, as third *Calif*, and held st 11 Years and a half. After him follow'd *Aly*, by the *Persians* call'd *Morts Aly*, Nephew, and Son in Law to *Mahomet*, who having rul'd 4 Years and a half, was murder'd by one of his own Servans, at the City *Cufa* in *Arabia*. His Body was bury'd in the Desert, as I have observ'd in the Relation of my Journey from *India* to *Italy*. Upon his Death there ensu'd great Distractions among the *Arabs*, about the Succession to the *Califship*, some being for *Acem* or *Hacem*, Son to the deceas'd *Aly*; and others for *Marwya*, Son to *Safion*, the Son of *Harb*, of the Hord or Tribe of *Benhumyx*, and after much Contention, the *Califship* was conferr'd on *Acem*, who enjoy'd it but 6 Months, and *Mawya* succeeded; of whom we shall speak in the next Chapter, nothing remarkable having occurr'd in *Persia* during this Time.

Osman *the* 3*d*.

Aly *the* 4*th*.

Acem *the* 5*th*.

CHAP

CHAP. II.

Of Mawya *the 6th* Calif *and Sovereign of* Persia.

ACEM, the Son of *Aly*, and Grand-son to *Mahomet*, being dead, the Califfship devolv'd upon *Mawya*, the Son of *Safion*, the Son of *Harb*, of the Hord, or Tribe of *Eben Aumya*, in the 41 Year of the *Hegira*, who was unanimously receiv'd, and acknowledg'd by all the *Mahometans*. Tho' he undertook very considerable Wars, during his Reign, there was none worth speaking of in *Persia*. One *Abdala Zyad*, a famous Commander, had been very assisting to him in his Pretensions, to reward which Service he gave him the Sovereignty of the City *Bazora*, seated near the Conflux of the two Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, where they fall jointly into the Gulph of *Persia*, as shall be said in another Place. *Mawya* held the Califfship 20 Years, and dy'd in the 61*th* of the *Hegira*, leaving his Son *Yhezid* in his Place. *An.* 662. *An.* 682.

CHAP. III.

Of Yhezid, *the 7th* Calif *and Sovereign of* Persia.

YHEZID succeeded his Father *Mawya* in the Califfship, and consequently in the Sovereignty of *Persia*. *Ocem*, Son to *Aly*, Grand-son to *Mahomet*, and Brother to *Acem*, made War on him, and was kill'd in the Plains of Yhezid *kills* Ocem

of *Kalbelah*, where the City *Mexet Ocem* now ſtands, in which I was, being founded in that Deſert, out of Devotion to his Tomb. *Abdala Zuber*, an *Arabian* Commander, pretending to revenge the Death of *Ocem*, took up Arms againſt *Yhezid*, and mantain'd a bloody War againſt him, as long as he liv'd, his whole Reign being but 3 Years. After his Death, he made a greater Progreſs, poſſeſſing himſelf of *Arabia*, *Perſia*, *Aderbajon* and *Karaſon*, when he return'd to *Egypt*, and thence to *Mecca*; a City in *Arabia*, and a noted Port on the Red Sea, and what hapned to him, we ſhall ſay hereafter. *Mawya* ſucceeded his Father *Yhezid*, in the Year 64 of the *Hegira*.

Abdala Zuber *wars on him, and proſpers.*

An. 685.

CHAP. IV.

Mawya, *the* 8*th* Calif *and Sovereign of* Perſia, *ſoon depos'd.*

MAWYA, 2d Son to *Yhezid*, and Grandſon to *Mawya* the firſt, was upon his Father's Death promoted to the Califſhip, and depos'd again 40 Days after, by the Multitude, on Account of his Incapacity. Great Strife enſu'd about chuſing another *Calif*, there being many Pretenders to it; but at length it was carry'd by *Marwan*, then Son of *Akam Eben Humya*, near Kinſman to the depos'd *Calif*, who being at *Damaſcus* during thoſe Confuſions, had uſurp'd that Title and Sovereignty, and being ſtrongly ſupported by *Abdala Zyad*, who we ſaid was made Lord of *Bazora*, fix'd himſelf on the Throne.

Mawya *the* 2*d and* Marwan *Califs.*

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Marwan, 9*th* Calif. *The* Arabs *make War on him, and deſtroy* Cufa; *he marches againſt and overthrows them, and at his Return is murder'd by his Wife.*

Marwan, Kinſman to *Mawya*, and of his own Tribe, obtain'd the Califſhip at 80 Years of Age. He was not ſo univerſally acknowledg'd, but that great Forces of *Arabs* of *Mecca* oblig'd him to take the Field, who refuſing to own him, were for transferring that Empire to the Deſcendants of *Ali*, looking on all others as Uſurpers. To this Purpoſe, a great Multitude of them took up Arms againſt *Marwan*, under the Command of one *Soliman Ben Mohaeb*; and after ranging about, attack'd *Gufa*, then a famous City in *Arabia*, and chief Reſidence of the *Califs*, now extinct, which they deſtroy'd, making a terrible Slaughter of all they found of the Tribe of *Benhumya*, of which *Marwan* was; who, being inform'd of the Enemies Deſign and March, mov'd towards and meeting them at *Orfa*, a City in *Meſopotamia*, ſo call'd at preſent, as alſo *Raha*, and formerly *Ur*, where the *Chaldeans* would have burnt the Patriarch *Abraham*, for owning and worſhipping only one God, he fought and routed them, killing *Soliman* their General. *Marwan* having obtain'd this Victory, return'd home well pleas'd; but his Wife was not ſo, being much griev'd at the Death of *Soliman*, and many more of her near Relations; and to eaſe her ſelf of that Trouble, and

Cufa City deſtroy'd.

and at once revenge her many Kindred ſlain in the War, when they were both a Bed together at Night, and he aſleep, ſhe ſtrangled
Ann. 686. him, when he was 81 Years of Age, and had reign'd a Year, in that of the *Hegira* 65. His Son *Abdel Malek* ſucceeded him.

CHAP. VI.

Abdel Malek, 10*th* Calif; *the* Schijahis *make War on him in* Perſia *with various Succeſs, and other Accidents till his Death.*

Abdel Malek, Son to the late *Marwan*, ſucceeded his Father. He liv'd not long in Peace, for a Commander of the *Schyahis*, who are the Followers of *Aly*, whoſe Name was *Moktar Eben Ebiabed Sacafy*, ſoon made War on him, ſupported by one *Ibrahim Aſchtor*, who marching into *Hyerak*, poſſeſs'd themſelves of it; as alſo of *Aderbaion*, *Diarbek* and *Awa*, Kingdoms and Provinces of *Perſia* and *Meſopotamia*, all which ſided with them in this Undertaking, wherein ſuch Cruelty was us'd, that no Perſon whatſoever of the oppoſite ſide, whether great or ſmall, was ſpar'd. *Abdel Malek* march'd againſt them with 70000 good fighting Men, and after ſome time ſpent in the Field, gave the Command of his Army to *Abdala Ziad*, for him to ſeek them out, as he did, and met *Ibrahim Aſchtor*, whom he fought, and was himſelf defeated and kill'd, after he had been 14 Years Lord of *Bazora*. *Mokter* conferr'd the Government of the Lands of *Jazirey*, which

The Califs Army routed.

which is *Meſopotamia*, on *Ibrahim Malek*, and that of *Bazora* on *Maſacb Ben Zober*, Brother to *Abdula Zober*. This Man afterwards made War on *Mokter*, and coming to a Battle, routed and kill'd him. Some time after *Abdel Malek*, the *Calif*, march'd again with his Forces againſt *Maraeb Zober* in *Hyerack* or *Perſia*, whom he fought and ſlew, recovering all thoſe Lands, and having concluded this Expedition, return'd to *Damaſcus*; whence he ſent *Oige*, or *Aſiage Benjuſſet*, with an Army againſt *Abdala Zober*, who ſtill held out in Rebellion at *Mecca*, whom he fought, vanquiſh'd and ſlew. His Death gave Peace to to *Abdel Malek* and his Dominions; and he, as a Reward for his many Services, gave *Oſiaſge* the Government of the Lands of *Ayerakhen* and *Karaſon*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 83, *Abdel Malek* founded a large and populous City in *Meſopotamia*, which he called *Waceb*, ſignifying the Middle, becauſe ſeated in the midſt between the two Rivers near *Corna*, whereof only the Ruins now remain. *Abdel Malek* having pacified his Dominions, and having reign'd 21 Years and a Month, dy'd in the 86th of the *Hegira*, leaving four Sons, *Oelid*, *Soliman*, *Yhezid* and *Oxon*.

Mokter killed.

Mazaeb and Abdalar Zober ſlain.

Ann. 703.

Ann. 706.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Oelid, *the* 11*th* Calif, *extends his Empire in* Perſia; *he poſſeſſes himſelf of all the Lands of* Maurenahar, Koaerrazm *and* Turkeſtam; *infeſts the Dominions of the* Roman *Empire; his and* Oiaſge's *Death.*

His Conqueſts.

Oelid, Son to *Abdel Malek*, upon the Death of his Father was own'd as *Calif*, and exceeded him in Wealth and Power, extending his Empire conſiderably, under the Conduct of his Generals. One of them, call'd *Koſeybah Eben Moſelem*, by his Order march'd from *Karaſon* towards *Turqueſtam*, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of all the Lands of *Maurenahar* and *Koarrazm*. Another, whoſe Name was *Moſeleima Ben Abdel Malek*, with a powerful Army invaded the *Roman* or *Grecian* Empire, advancing towards *Conſtantinople*; and having ſubdu'd and deſtroy'd many Provinces, oblig'd the Emperor to pay him a certain Tribute. *Oelid*, beſides being dreadful to his Neighbours, and indefatigable in Warlike Toils and Expeditions, was much addicted to Building, and conſequently erected many remarkable and noble Structures in ſeveral Places; but the moſt remarkable was the Moſque at *Damaſcus*, whoſe Structure and Magnificence is ſtill admir'd by all that behold it. In this *Oelid*'s Reign, and in the Year of the *Hegira* 96, *Oiaſge* dy'd at *Karaſon*, being the Commander we ſaid was ſent to govern thoſe Provinces, at 45 Years of Age; and is ſaid to have been ſo cruel, that he

And Structures.

Ann. 716.

he there slew in time of Peace, during his Government, above 100000 Men, besides the almost innumerable Multitude that perish'd in the Wars he made and Battles he fought. He left 30000 Slaves of several Nations, which is a Testimony of his Grandeur and Power. About the end of this same Year, the *Calif Oelid* dy'd at the same Age, when he had reign'd 9 Years and 8 Months, and was succeeded by his Brother *Solyman*.

CHAP. VIII.

Solyman, 12*th* Calif, *subdues the Provinces of* Gerion *and* Tabarstam *in* Persia.

Solyman, Son to *Abdel Malek*, and Brother to *Oelid*, was enthron'd in his Place. He wanted not Employment in *Persia*, the Provinces whereof, tho' reduc'd under the Dominion of the *Califs*, were always inclin'd to revolt, sometimes one, and sometimes another. Among the rest there were two, which had not been conquer'd, being those of *Gerion* and *Tabarstam*, whither he sent *Yerid Eben Makalep*, an able Commander, with a sufficient Force, who made War on and subdu'd them. During the Reign of *Solyman*, by the Advice of *Jasor Barmaky*, his *Vizier*, the Value of Money was settled in *Persia*, which till then had been very uncertain, to the great Detriment of the People. *Solyman* having reign'd two Years and six Months, dy'd at *Damascus* of a violent Pleurisy, leaving one *Hamar*, his Cousin German, to succeed him.

Revolts in Persia.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Hamar, 13*th* Calif, *the Descendants of* Abas, *make War on him, and he is imprison'd.*

HAmar, or *Homar*, Son to *Abdala Azir*, the Son of *Marwan*, Cousin German to the late *Solyman*, was rais'd to the *Califship*. Some say he usurp'd it by Force, tho' oppos'd by *Solyman*'s Brothers; others that he advanc'd him before his Death. However it was, he remain'd possess'd of the Empire. He was extraordinary zealous and superstitious in his Sect. About the Year of the *Hegira* 100, the Race of *Abas*, Unkle to *Mahomet*, rebell'd against *Hamar*, and made War on him, claiming a Right to the *Califship*, and particularly one *Aly Eben Abas*; who sending Embassadors to several Princes, excited and endeavour'd to perswade them to cast off their Obedience to *Hamar*, and own him for their Sovereign, in regard to his rightful Title to that Empire. Whilst he was managing these Affairs, *Oxon*, Son to *Abdel Malek*, Brother to *Solyman*, the late *Calif*, poison'd *Hamar*, whereof he dy'd in the 4th Yerr of his Age, when he had reign'd two Years and five Months in the 101 of the *Hegira*.

Ann. 720.

Aly Eben Abas *rebels.*

Ann. 721.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Yhezid *the* 2*d, and* 14*th* Calif. Abu Mocelem *makes War on him in* Karason, *in favour of* Aly Ben Abas, *which lasts till his Death.*

UPON the Death of *Hamar*, the Califship was conferr'd on *Yhezid*, third Son to *Abdel Malek*. Soon after he was enthron'd, one *Abu Mocelem Karasony* declar'd in *Karason* for *Aly Ben Abos*, rebelling against *Yhezid*, and Ann. 724. making War on him for two Years continually; at the end whereof *Yhezid* dy'd, without having done any thing memorable, when he had reign'd four Years and eight Months, and in the 105th of the *Hegira*. He was succeeded by his Brother *Oxon*, who we said poison'd *Hamar*.

CHAP. XI.

Oxon, 15*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Persia.

OXON, Brother to the late *Yhezid*, upon his Death obtain'd the *Califship*, and quell'd some Commotions that happen'd in *Persia*, wherein he was well serv'd by two Commanders of Note called *Nacer Sayar* and *Yucef Eben Hamar el Sacafy*, both whom he appointed Governours; *Sayar* of the Lands of *Karason*, and *Yucef Eben Hamar* of *Hyerakhen*; whereupon those Kingdoms of *Persia* continu'd peaceable and without any considera- *Peace in* Persia.

ble Diſturbance, during all the Reign of *Oxon*, which laſted 19 Years and eight Months, and he dy'd in the 124th of the *Hegira*.

Ann. 773.

CHAP. XII.

Oelid *the 2d*, 16*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Perſia.

Oelid, the Son of *Yhezid*, was created *Calif* upon the Death of *Oxon*, and maintain'd War againſt the Race of *Abas*, of whom was ſlain one *Abdalah Ben Abaz*, a prime Pretender to the Califſhip, by whoſe Death he thought himſelf more ſecurely ſetled in the Empire; and the more to eſtabliſh himſelf, he caus'd two Sons of the late *Abdalah* to be ſworn his Succeſſors in the Government, hoping by that Means to appeaſe that Family. One of the two was call'd *Ebrahem el Safa*. However all this Precaution avail'd him little, for being himſelf ill-natur'd, and of an unſufferable Temper, he ſoon became ſo univerſally odious, and particularly to the Soldiers, that he was murder'd by them, when he had reign'd 14 Months.

Oelid *murder'd.*

CHAP. XIII.

Yhezid *the 3d*, 17*th* Calif, *and Lord of* Perſia.

Yhezid, Son to *Oelid*, commonly call'd *Yhezid Nokkes*, that is, the Senſeleſs, becauſe he again re-aſſum'd all that his Predeceſſors

ceſſors had granted away, came to the Government at 40 Years of Age, and held it bout ſix Months, at the end whereof he dy'd at *Damaſcus*.

CHAP. XIV.

Ebrahem, 14*th* Calif, *depoſed by* Marwan, *who uſurps, ſeizes and murders him.*

UPON the Death of *Yhezid*, the Caliſſhip was conferr'd on *Ebrahem* his Brother, who having held it but two Months, and being diſcover'd to be a Man of no Spirit, ſeveral Perſons inſulted him, and among them *Marwan*, one of his own Tribe, who rebell'd and ſeiz'd him; and after three Months Impriſonment, order'd him to be kill'd, thruſting himſelf into the Throne.

CHAP. XV.

Marwan *the* 2*d*, 19*th* Calif, *and laſt of the Tribe of* Ben Humya; *Affairs of* Perſia *during his Reign.*

MArwan having intruded himſelf into the Caliſſhip, all things were preſently in Confuſion, and great Diſcord enſu'd among the *Mahometans*. The Province of *Karaſon* was then govern'd by *Nacer Sayar*, as was ſaid in the 11*th* Chapter, and he made War on *Malah*, who govern'd the Kingdom of *Kermon*, which

Diſcord among Mahometans

prov'd tedious and bloody. The Tribe or Family of *Abas* roſe in Arms at *Mar Wo*, and the two Governours of *Karaſon* and *Kermon* enter'd into a Confederacy againſt them. Both Sides made great Preparations for this War, and coming at length to a Battel, the Partiſans of *Abas* overthrew the two Viceroys, killing him of *Kermon* with above 100000 Men of the Faction of *Benhumia*; the Governour of *Karaſon* flying to *Sawa*, where he was kill'd. One *Abu Mocelem* had been left to command in the Province of *Karaſon*, and he laying hold of that Opportunity uſurp'd that Country. Not ſo ſatisfy'd, but ſtill aſpiring to more, he ſent *Katabey Eben Exabib* with a conſiderable Army to poſſeſs himſelf of *Hierak*, as he did; nor did he ſtop there, but proceeded as far as *Ouſa* in *Arabia*. *Marwan* was then at *Wacet* with his Army, and advanc'd towards him. Both meeting in the Night near the River *Euphrates*, they immediatly engag'd, and ſo violent was the Shock given by *Marwan's* Forces, that it oblig'd *Katabey's* Troops to retire towards the River, into which *Katabey* fell, and was drowned, unperceiv'd by his own Men, who believing he was ſtill among them, gave ſuch a vigorous Charge upon *Marwan*, that they overthrew him. It was now near break of Day, and as ſoon as it clear'd up, *Katabey* was miſs'd, in whoſe ſtead they preſently appointed his Son *Acem* General. He without loſing any Time purſu'd the Enemy, who fled to *Cufa*, and meeting there with *Safa*, of the Family of *Abas*, and one of the two whom *Oelud* the 2d had caus'd to be ſworn his Succeſſors, as was ſaid in the 12*th* Chapter, they proclaim'd him *Calif* againſt his Will. *Safa* being thus poſſeſs'd of the Empire, ſent another

Abu Mocelem *ſeizes* Karae *on and* Hierak.

Katabey *drowned, his ſon* Acem *ſucceeds him.*

other *Safa*, with *Abdula* and *Abdſamet*, all three of them his Unkles, with Forces againſt *Marwan*; who having rally'd his Troops, was again return'd near the River *Euphrates*. There they found and gave him Battel, wherein *Marwan* being routed fled to *Mecere*, that is *Grand Cairo* in *Egypt*, where he was taken and kill'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 132, with fourſcore more Men of Note, of the Race of *Eben Humia*, and for all thoſe who were dead before, if they knew where they had been bury'd, they took them up and burnt their Bones, without ſparing any one of all they could find of that Tribe, except one *Hamar Ben Abdala Azis*, on whom, for his extraordinary Goodneſs, all the adverſe Party had Compaſſion, and ſpar'd him, granting him his Life and Liberty; ſuch is the Power of Virtue even among Enemies. *Marwan* had reign'd 5 Years, when he dy'd, and in him ended the Rule of the Family of *Ben Humia*, which was tranſferr'd to thoſe of *Eben Abas*, who held it many Years, as will appear.

Marwan *routed and kill'd.*

An. 751.

CHAP. XVI.

Safah 20*th* Calif, *and firſt of the Tribe or Race of* Eben Abas.

SAFA the Son of *Abdala*, the Son of *Aly*, the Son of *Abdala*, the Son of *Abas*, was the firſt *Calif* of this Family, and rais'd to it as was ſaid above. When he was ſetled on the Throne, he appointed two of his Unkles, the one call'd *Abdula*, to govern the Dominions of *Syria*, *Egypt* and *Africk*, as Subject to him;

The Race of Abas *aſcends the Throne.*

and the other nam'd *Daud* or *David*, for thoſe of *Medina* and *Mecca*. He ſent his own Brother *Abujafar*, to quell ſome Troubles there were in the Country of *Wacet*, which he did, and when return'd, ſent him to *Karaſon*. This *Karaſon*, by the *Portugueſes* generally call'd *Corazon* or *Coraſone*, is a conſiderable Province, and one of the moſt noted in *Perſia*, for Extent, Plenty and Wealth. It contains ſeveral great Cities, the Metropolis whereof is call'd *Mexad*, where *Iſmael Sophy* and his Succeſſors lye bury'd. It is encompaſs'd with a ſtrong Wall, on which are three hundred Towers, about a Muſquet Shot diſtant from each other; the Country about it very fertile and well-ſtor'd; the Natives are fair Complexion'd, Beautiful, and Warlike; their Manners and Cuſtoms the ſame as thoſe of the other *Perſians*. I have given this ſhort Account of it, becauſe we ſhall have much Occaſion to ſpeak of it in this Hiſtory. The famous River *Jehun* parts this Province of *Karaſon* from thoſe of *Turon* or *Turkeſtan* and *Usbek*, and the Country again beyond that, the *Perſians* call *Maurenahar*, which ſignifies, beyond the River, and is to the Northward; which is requiſite to be obſerv'd for the better Underſtanding of what ſhall be ſaid of theſe Provinces. *Abuſalem*, as was ſaid above, had uſurp'd the Sovereignty of the Province *Karaſon*, or as we now call it *Choraſon*, who upon the Arrival of *Abujafar*, the *Calif's* Brother, not only ſubmitted, and put himſelf into his Power, but ſerv'd and aſſiſted him in all Points with great Loyalty; which well deſerves to be taken notice of at that Time, and among thoſe People, conſidering how faithleſs and unconſtant they then were. *Safa* employ'd, as his Grand *Vizier*, one *Abuſalemah*, a Man of ſingu-

Karaſon *Province.*

lar

lar Capacity, whom he particularly affected for his good Service; yet ſuſpecting that he had ſome Deſigns againſt his Perſon and Crown, he caus'd him to be put to Death, and conferr'd the Dignity of *Wazir* or *Vizier*, which has been ſaid above to be Prime Miniſter, on *Kaled Barmaqui*, who well deſerv'd it for his Wiſdom. *Safa* was *Calif* four Years and nine Months, and dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 136, which is of CHRIST 754. His Brother *Abujafar* ſucceeded him, he having ſo order'd it before his Death.

Safa *dyes.*

An. 754.

CHAP. XVII.

Abu-Jafar 21*th* Calif, *puts to Death the Governour of* Karaſon, *for intending to rebel; reduces the Rebels of* Mecca *and* Bazora; *builds the City of* Bagdat *on the River* Tigris, *and dyes on the Way to* Mecca.

Abujafar upon the Death of his Brother, got Poſſeſſion of the Caliſſhip, and was no ſooner ſeated on the Throne, than Advice was brought him, that *Abuſalem*, Governour of *Keraſon*, who we ſaid above had been ſo courteous towards him, when he viſited that Province in his Brother's Days, did deſign to rebel. He contriv'd to get him into his Hands, and put him to Death, by which Means *Perſia* was kept in ſome Tranquillity; but it was not ſo in *Arabia*, where the People of *Mecca* and *Arabia* had revolted, againſt whom he ſent his Generals, with a ſufficient Power, who ſubdu'd them, tho' not without much Bloodſhed. In

Rebellion in Arabia *quell'd.*

the Year of the *Hegira* 147, which is of CHRIST 763, *Abujafar* ſet out from *Cufa*, took a Progreſs through ſeveral of his Kingdoms, croſs'd the Country of *Meſopotamia*, and coming to the River *Tigris*, was ſo taken with the Situation, the Fertility of the Country, and the Conveniency of the Place to attend to all Parts of his Dominions, that he there founded a large Town, which on Account of the many and pleaſant Orchards about it, they call'd *Bagadad*, from *Baga*, a *Perſian* Word, ſignifying a Garden or Orchard; which I ſhall treat of more particularly in another Place.

Foundation of Bagdat.

Abujafar having been *Calif* 23 Years, dy'd on his Way to *Mecca*, in the Deſert call'd *Bir Maymum*, that is, *Maymum's* Well, being the Name of the Perſon that caus'd it to be made; in the Year of the *Hegira* 159, and of *Chriſt* 777.

Abujafar dyes, An. 777.

CHAP. XVIII.

Mahady Bila 22*th* Calif, *and what hapned in his Time.*

Mahady Bila, Son to *Abujafar*, ſucceeded his Father, and govern'd peaceably till the 4*th* Year of his Reign, when a Commander call'd *Akem Ben Oxem*, who had been Secretary to *Abu Maſalem*, the Governour of *Karaſon*, put to Death by *Abujafar*, having a conſiderable Body of Men, attempted to uſurp thoſe Provinces. This Man had loſt one Eye, his Countenance was frightful, and his Diſpoſition Diabolical. Not content with aſpiring to be a King, the Devil prevail'd with him ſo far, as to require to be worſhipp'd as a God.

A Rebel would be honour'd as a God.

God, and therefore he cover'd his Face with a Veil, ſaying, *that Men were not worthy to ſee it*; and as ſuch Monſters never want Followers, by reaſon of the Libertiniſm and Diſorders they allow of, many adher'd to this Helliſh Deceiver, and either through Fear or Ignorance, he was admitted by ſome Provinces. *Mahady* the *Calif*, hearing this News, drew together a conſiderable Army, and ſent it againſt him, under the Command of *Monſaeb*, who advanc'd into *Karaſon*, with all poſſible Expedition. *Akem's* Kindred and Adherents underſtanding how great a Power was marching againſt him, to ſhun the Danger and ſecure their own Lives, poiſon'd him, and hid his dead Body, where it could never be found, giving out that he was gone up into Heaven. However *Monſaeb*, when he had ſettled thoſe Countries in Peace, perceiving that *Akem* was not to be found dead nor alive, took full Revenge on his Children, Kindred and Followers, burning as many of them as he could get into his Hands, which was no ſmall Number. This hapned in the Year of the *Hegira* 163, and of CHRIST 781. Thus no other remarkable Accident hapned in *Perſia* till the Year 169 of the *Hegira* and of CHRIST 786, when *Mahady Bila* dy'd, in the 43*th* Year of his Age, having been *Calif* 10 Years and one Month.

Mahady dyes, *An.* 786.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Elady Bila Muza Ben Mahady 23*d* Calif.

Elady Bila Muza, Son to *Mahady*, ſucceeded him, and enjoy'd that Dignity but a ſhort Time; for tho' a graceful and ſprightly Youth he reign'd but one Year and 3 Months, and dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 170, of CHRIST 787, much lamented, becauſe he was a very affable and good natur'd Prince.

Elady dies Ann. 787.

CHAP. XX.

Araxid Bila Harun, 24*th Calif.*

Araxid Bila Harun Eben Mahady, Brother to the deceas'd *Elady*, ſucceeded him in the Throne, and made *Kyahya Kaled Bermaky*, a Man of great Wiſdom and Conduct, his *Wazir*, or Prime *Vizier*. *Araxid* had four Sons; *Mamed Hamin*, to whom he committed all he had poſſeſs'd from *Aleppo* Weſtward; *Mahamun*, whom he plac'd over *Perſia*, *Karaſon*, and all thoſe Parts; the third, *Kacem*, whom he made Governour of the Provinces of *Aderbaion* and *Diarbeck*; but the fourth called *Mataſem*, being then in Diſgrace, was left unprovided for, tho' he afterwards made his Lot good. In the Year of the *Hegira* 187, and of CHRIST 804, *Araxid* put to Death the *Beramequas*, Men of a noble Family, and his *Wazirs*, or Viziers, upon ſuſpi-

Araxid *gives Governments to his Sons.*

cion that they deſigned to murder him; and put *Fazel Eben Errabya* into their Places. Three Years after the Forces of the *Roman* or *Grecian* Empire, made War on him, againſt whom he ſent his Army, which not only expell'd them his Dominions, but broke into that Empire with ſuch Fury, that they oblig'd the Emperor to ſue for Peace, and purchaſe it for a great Sum of Money. When this War was ended, another broke out in *Maurenahar*, where one *Raſh Eben Nacer* of *Samarkand* had aſſum'd the Title of King, againſt whom *Araxid* march'd in Perſon; but was cut off by Death in the way, ending his Days at *Thus*, the capital City of the Kingdom, or Province of that Name; when he had reign'd 23 Years, in the Year of the *Hegira* 193, which is of CHRIST 810.

Defeats the Chriſtians.

Dies Anſt. 810.

CHAP. XXI.

Mahamed Amin, *25th* Calif; *he makes War on his Brother* Mahamun, *by whom he is defeated and killed.*

Araxid Harun had appointed his Son *Mahamed Amin* to ſucceed him in the Caliſſhip, who being accordingly rais'd to it, reſented the Dividing of the Empire among ſo many, which his Father had been poſſeſſed of alone. This Thought perplexing him, his firſt Care was to raiſe a mighty Army, with which he order'd his Generals to invade *Perſia*. His Brother *Mahamun*, who we ſaid had been left by his Father poſſeſs'd of that Kingdom, being jealous of *Mahamed Amin*'s Pre-

Preparations, was upon his Guard, and perceiving the Design was against him, sent his *Wazir*, or Vizier, *Taker Ben Ocem*, to oppose his Brother, with the greatest Force he could gather. *Naker* gave the Enemy Battle, overthrew and pursu'd him to *Bagdat*, which he also enter'd by Force, and took the Calif *Mahamed Amin*, whom he carried back half way, and then put him to Death, when he had reign'd four Years and seventh Months.

CHAP. XXII.

Mahamun Ben Arun, 26*th* Calif.

Mahamun Ben Arun, Brother to the late *Amin*, was proclaim'd *Calif*, and appointed *Fazele Ben Saleh*, a Wise and Politick Man, his *Wazir*, or Vizier. This Man, during his Authority, with great Industry and Charge, caus'd all the Books of Philosophy, Mathematicks, Astrology and Physick, that could be found to be translated out of the *Greek* and *Syrian* Languages into *Arabick*. All *Persia* was in Peace, when one *Babek Corandin* rebell'd in the Province of *Aderbaion*, against whom he sent his Forces, which were defeated; and when the War had continu'd some time in those Parts, they were at last oblig'd to come to an Agreement. In the Year of the *Hegira* 205, which is of CHRIST 821, the Calif *Mahamun* sent *Taker Zulemin* to govern the Province of *Karason*, who set out immediately for his Government; but when he was there, *Mahamun* repented, being inform'd that *Taker* aspir'd higher, than to be Go-

Translations into Arabick.

Ann. 821.

Governour under another; for which Reaſon, to prevent further Danger, he order'd *Hamed Abichaled* to prepare to march againſt him. When he was upon his Departure, News was brought of *Taker*'s Death, at which the Calif was well pleas'd; yet remembring how well *Taker* had ſerv'd him, he conferr'd that Government on a Son of his call'd *Talake Ben Taker*. *Abdula Ben Taker*, another Son of *Taker* had gone with him to *Karaſon* with the Poſt of Captain General of the Army, who, when his Father dy'd, was march'd with an Army, to make War on the *Uſbecks*, for refuſing to embrace his Sect. Returning Victorious from that Expedition, he found his Father dead, and his Brother poſſeſs'd of the Government, which he highly reſented; but his Brother *Talake*, with the Calif's Conſent, admitted him as his Companion, with equal Power in the Government. Thus *Perſia* continu'd in Peace as long as *Mahamun* liv'd, who dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 210, and of CHRIST 826, when he had reign'd 12 Years and 7 Months.

Troubles prevented in Perſia.

CHAP. XXIII.

Abu Ezach Matacon, *27th* Calif; *he builds the City* Samarrah; *Wars in* Perſia, *and other Accidents till his Death.*

ABu *Ezach Matacon*, Son to *Harun*, whom his Father, upon ſome Diſguſt, had diſinherited, his Brother *Mamun* dying, was rais'd to the Califſhip. He, upon his coming to the Throne, founded a City to the North-

Samarrah *built and abandon'd.*

Northward of *Bagdat*, three Miles from the River *Tigris*, which he call'd *Samarrah*, which having in a ſhort time grown up to be very conſiderable, afterwards declin'd ſo much, that at preſent only the Ruins of it are to be ſeen. Upon the Death of *Mamun*, *Babek Coramdin* had rebell'd again in *Aderbaion*, againſt whom the Calif ſent his Army, by which he was overthrown and taken, and the Calif caus'd his Hands and Feet to be cut off, and him to be hang'd. There were alſo ſome Commotions in the Province of *Karaſon*.

Rebel executed.

The Province of *Siſton* lies below thoſe of *Karaſon* and *Kerman*, towards the *Perſian* Gulph, and it has *Perſia*, to which it is ſubject, on the one ſide, and the Kingdom of *Macron*, bordering upon *India* on the other. In this Province of *Siſton*, a private Man rebell'd at this time, and finding many Followers, made himſelf Maſter of a conſiderable Part of it by Force of Arms. This being under the Government of *Karaſon*, *Talake*, who commanded there, drew together his Forces, and march'd againſt *Amzah*, ſo the Rebel was call'd, whom he fought and defeated; but returning to *Karaſon*, he fell ſick and dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 213, of CHRIST 829; leaving the Government to his Son *Aly Ben Talake*, on whom ſeveral neighbour Princes under the Juriſdiction of *Perſia* made War, and he was kill'd in a Fight at *Nixabur*. His Death did not put an end to the War, which rather ſeem'd to grow the hotter by it. *Abu Ezah Metacon* at this time made War on the *Grecian* Empire, and obtain'd ſome Victories, but dy'd at 48 Years of Age, in the Year of the *Hegira* 217, of CHRIST 833, when he had reign'd 8 Years. He had eight Sons and eight

Siſton *Province.*

Civil Wars.

Ann. 833.

eight Daughters, and 8000 Slaves, and took eight Cities, Capitals of eight Kingdoms, whoſe eight Kings he put to Death, and left behind him eight Millions of Gold in his Treaſury. He was a great Warrior, and at the ſame time very affable and generous, much belov'd by all Men, and more particularly by the Soldiers.

CHAP. XXIV.

Wacek, 28*th* Calif, *and all that happen'd in* Perſia *till his Death.*

Wacek ſucceeded his Father *Matacem* in the Califſhip, and did nothing remarkable during his Reign. Upon the Death of *Aly Ben Takale*, his Unkle *Abdula Ben Taker* had the Government of *Karaſon* conferr'd on him, during whoſe Adminiſtration, notwithſtanding thoſe Lands are generally extraordinary fruitful, there happen'd a dreadful and univerſal Famine, occaſion'd by Drought, which continu'd almoſt three Years, ſo that the Country was almoſt diſpeopled; but great Rains enſuing the Earth produc'd as before, ſo that the Natives return'd to their Dwellings. About this time the *Perſian Mahometans* combin'd together againſt their Heathen Countrymen, commonly call'd *Mayuſy*, being thoſe that worſhip Fire, as has been ſaid in the firſt Book, who are ſtill very numerous in *Perſia*, and made a mighty Slaughter among them. At this ſame time dy'd *Abdula Taker* in *Karaſon*, leaving his Son *Taker Ben Abdula* in his Place, who was confirm'd in it by the Calif *Wa-*

Dreadful Famine.

Slaughter of Pagans.

Wacek, and he dy'd two Years after, having reign'd five Years and nine Months, in the Ann. 838. Year of the *Hegira* 222, and of CHRIST 838, leaving the Empire to his Brother *Almoto Wakel Bila Jafar*.

CHAP. XXV.

Almoto Wakel Bila Jafar, 29*th* Calif.

Almoto Wakel Bila Jafar, Brother to the deceas'd Calif, aſcended the Throne upon his Death. The Race of *Aly* made War on him in *Perſia*, taking for their Pretence the Death of his Son *Ocem*, becauſe he us'd all poſſible means to obſtruct the Pilgrimage to his Tomb, which is at *Mexat Ocem*, in the Deſert of *Kalbelah*, where I was in the Year of our Lord 1604; and the better to keep them away, he caus'd the River *Euphrates* to be let out in ſeveral Places, to cut off the Paſſage by drowning the Fields, which was eaſy enough to be done, by reaſon of the Flatneſs of that Deſert, which I give a more particular Account of in my Travels. During the Reign of the Calif *Almoto Wakel*, dy'd *Taker Ben Abdula*, and the Government of *Karaſon* was conferr'd on his Son *Mahamed Ben Taker*; and he gave the Lands of *Tabarſtan* to his Unkle *Solyman*, Brother to his Father, for his Support; but he enjoy'd them not long, as we ſhall ſoon ſee. *Almoto Wakel* call'd *Monſacer Bila*, being ambitious of Rule, the ſooner to attain it, caus'd his Father to be murder'd by his Slaves, in the Year of the *Hegira* 234, and of CHRIST 850, when he had reign'd 12 Years.

Calif murder'd by his Son, Ann. 850.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Montacer Bila, 30*th* Calif.

MOntacer *Bila Hamed*, having murder'd his Father, took upon him the Title of Calif, which he enjoy'd but ſix Months, at the end whereof he dy'd.

CHAP. XXVII.

Abul Abas Hamed, 31*ſt* Calif, *murder'd by his Slaves.*

ABul *Abas Hamed*, Son to *Mahamed*, the Son of *Montacer*, Couſin German to the deceas'd *Montacer*, ſucceeded him; and having reign'd five Years and nine Months ill approv'd of, was ſeiz'd by the Soldiers, and cloſely confin'd, where he dy'd for Hunger. *The Calif ſtarv'd to Death.*

The Affairs of *Perſia* were at this time in ſome Confuſion; for in the Province of *Tabarſtan*, which we ſaid above was given by *Taber* to his Uncle *Solyman*, one *Acem Ben Zeyd Alawy*, which ſignifies one of the great ones, or thoſe that are near to God, becauſe he was of the Family of *Aly*, rebell'd, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of that Country, obliging *Solyman* to take his Flight to *Bagdat*, where *Moſta Hbin*, who was then Calif, gave him a favourable Reception, and did him much Honour. *Acem Ben Zeyd Alawy*, having ſecur'd the Province to himſelf by placing good Gariſons, broke farther into *Perſia*, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of thoſe of *Deilon*, *Gueylon*, *Habar*, *Succeſsful Rebellion.*

bar, *Zenion* and *Casbin*, which he held till the Year of the *Hegira* 271, when he loſt them again, as we ſhall ſoon ſee. This happen'd Ann. 860. in the Year of the *Hegira* 245, which is of CHRIST 860.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Moſta Hhin, 32*d* Calif.

THE Soldiers having, as was ſaid above, murder'd the Calif *Abul Abas Hamed*, there enſu'd great Strife among the *Mahometans* about creating another, which after ſeveral Months ended in the Election of *Moſta Hhin*, Kinſman to the laſt, but ſomewhat remote, who enjoy'd it not long; for at the end of 16 Months he fell ſick and dy'd; what was mention'd in the foregoing Chapter happning in his Time.

CHAP. XXIX.

Almater Bila, 33*d* Calif, *recovers ſome of the Lands that had been ſeiz'd by* Acem Ben Zeyd, *and is murder'd by his Soldiers.*

Almatez Bila ſucceeded in the Califſhip, and rais'd Forces to reduce *Acem Ben Zeyd*, which he put under the Conduct of one *Muza Ben Buka*, who enter'd *Perſia*, fought the Enemy, obtain'd a Victory, and recover'd the City *Rey Xarear*, *Caſbin*, *Habar* and *Zenion*. Rebels defeated, Ann. 886. Duke *Alawy*, Brother to *Acem Ben Zeyd*, fled after

after his Defeat to *Tabarſtam*, where he dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 272, which is of CHRIST 886. Another Brother of his, call'd *Mahamed Eben Zeyd*, remain'd in his Place, who held that Province till the Year of the *Hegira* 287, when he was kill'd by *Mahamed Ben Haron Samany*. Whilſt theſe Things happen'd in *Perſia*, the Soldiers taking a Diſlike to the Calif *Almatez Bila*, murder'd him; for as he was bathing in a hot Houſe, they broke in, and whilſt he was in that violent Heat, made him drink a Pot of very cold Water, which occaſion'd his ſpeedy Death, when he had rul'd three Years and a half.

CHAP. XXX.

Motady Bila, 34*th* Calif.

UPON the Death of *Almatez*, the Caliſſhip was conferr'd on *Motady Bila*, who held it but 11 Months, at the end whereof he was murder'd by the Soldiers, and was ſucceeded by *Almat Hamed Bila*.

CHAP. XXXI.

Almat Hamed Bila, 35*th* Calif; *and what happen'd under him in* Perſia.

Almat Hamed Bila, upon the Death of *Motady*, aſcended the Throne of the Caliſs; and to ſecure himſelf againſt his Kindred and Friends, for as the World went

then, the neareſt Kin were moſt to be ſuſpected, he ſent them all away with Commands to the Countries of *Hyaman* and *Medina*, in *Arabia*. In regard that we have often occaſion in this Hiſtory to mention *Medina*, it is convenient to inform the Reader, that this is not the particular Name of a Place, but ſignifies a City, or Town, and therefore they generally add another to it, to expreſs what Town they ſpeak of, as among us we ſay *Medina Celi*, *Medina Sidonia*, *Medina del Campo*; but that of *Arabia*, the *Perſians* and *Arabs*, by way of Excellency, as the Chief of all Cities, call abſolutely *Medina*, tho' ſometimes they alſo name it *Medina el Nabi*, that is, the City of the Prophet; becauſe there *Mahomet* firſt broach'd his helliſh Sect, and was himſelf there bury'd; and to this Place it is the *Mahometans* reſort, when they ſay they go to *Mecca*, tho' it be quite another Place; for *Medina* is an Inland Town, four Days Journey diſtant from *Mecca*, or *Mokah*, which is a Maritime City, ſeated on the Bank of the *Red Sea*, and the principal Mart of the *Mahometans* that ſail from thoſe Parts to the Eaſtward; and becauſe that thoſe, who come from the Eaſt, Land at *Mecca*, therefore they ſay they are bound for *Mecca*, and ſo ſay thoſe who go from theſe Weſtern Parts; becauſe when their Pilgrimage is perform'd, they go on to *Mecca*, to Trade with the Ships that reſort thither with Goods for *India*, and other Eaſtern Parts. This City being on the Shore of the *Red Sea*, and the moſt conſiderable within that Gulph, therefore the *Portugueſes* call that the *Streights* of *Mecca*. Thus the Reader is inform'd concerning *Medina* and *Mecca*, which is upon this Gulph I have here

Medina; *what it is.*

here mention'd, and not on that of *Perſia*; as a grave Hiſtorian of our Times has erroneouſly deliver'd.

To return to *Perſia*, it was about this time full of Confuſion and Troubles, whereof I ſhall mention the principal Heads, according to my uſual Brevity. A new Commander appear'd there at this time, call'd *Yacub Leis*, who, with no great Number of Men, ravag'd the Country of *Siſtom*, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of the Capital of the ſame Name, whence he made ſome Excurſions into the Province of *Karaſon*, going on ſucceſſively as far as *Harat* in *Maurenahar*, where *Mahamed Ben Taher* had a Gariſon, which *Yacub Leis* attack'd, and took the City. Thence he turn'd back againſt *Mahamed Ben Taher*, who, as has been ſaid, was Governour of *Karaſon*, and hearing of his coming, left him the Country, and fled to *Nixabur*. On the other ſide, *Acen Ben Zeyd Alawy* carry'd on his Conqueſts, and made himſelf Maſter of the Lands of *Gerion*, which ſhut up *Mahamed Ben Taher*, who, having no other Recourſe, gather'd all the Forces he was able, march'd againſt *Yacub Leis*, fought him, and was overthrown, leaving him a conſiderable Booty, with the Provinces of *Siſton* and *Karaſon*, and to *Acem Ben Zeyd Alawy* that of *Gerion* as far as *Rey Xarcer*. Himſelf, attended by a few, fled back to *Nixabur*, whither *Yacub Leis* purſu'd him. *Abdula Salch*, *Wazir*, or Vizier, to *Taher*, met him on the Way alone, and ask'd him, *By what Authority he rais'd and proſecuted the War? For, if he had any from the* Calif, *no Oppoſition ſhould be made, upon his producing it.* *Yacub Leis* drawing his Sword, anſwer'd, *That was his Title and Authority.* *Abdula Salch* returned

Yamb Leis, a Rebel.

His Succeſs.

turn'd with this Answer to *Taher*, who, tho' he endeavour'd it, could not obtain any reasonable Terms from *Leis*. In fine, they came to another Battel, and *Taher* was taken and kill'd, being the last of the Name who held that Government, and of a nobler Disposition and greater Virtue, than any of his Predecessors. The better to shew how wonderful the Affairs of *Yacub Leis* were, and the unaccountable Accidents in the Life of Man, I will give a short Account of his, without deviating from my History.

Original and Life of Yacub Leis.

In the Province of *Sistom* in *Persia*, liv'd one brought up to the Trade they call *Rug*, which with us is the same as a Brazier, whose Name was *Leis*. This Man had three Sons, *Yacub*, *Hamer* and *Aly*, of which *Yacub* was brought up to his Father's Trade, and being yet but a Boy, when he began to earn some small Wages, he spent part of it to maintain himself, and laid up the Rest to make merry at his leisure Hours among other Boys, his Friends and Acquaintance, among whom he laid out the little he had in Eating and mean Diversion. This he continu'd till grown up to Maturity, and with him his Companions, with whom from Childrens Sports and Mock Fights, he advanc'd to the Real; so that *Yacub* aspiring to something above a Brazier, and having won them by his Generosity, which is ever very powerful, they being now dispos'd to follow him, arm'd themselves the best they could, and begun to rob on the High-ways, always practising his natural Free-heartedness towards his Companions, who call'd him their Captain, and using Compassion towards the unfortunate Persons that fell into his Hands, treating them with Moderation, taking the least

leaſt part of what they had, and diſtributing it among his Men, without reſerving any thing to himſelf. At this Time, *Taher Ben Abdula*, above ſpoken of, was Governour of *Karaſon*, to whom Travellers complain'd of thoſe Robberies; and ſoon after he was inform'd, that one *Salekh Ben Azar*, being joyn'd by *Yacub Leis*, who now had enter'd himſelf and his Men into Pay, as their Captain, had broke into the Territories of *Siſtom*, and plunder'd that City. *Taher Ben Abdula* ſent his Forces againſt them, and drove them out of *Siſtom*. Soon after, *Taher* dying, and his Son *Mahamed Ben Taher* ſucceeding him in the Government, another Commander, call'd *Dram Ben Nacer*, follow'd by the ſame *Leis*, broke into the ſame Country, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of it; and *Dram* intending to carry on his Conqueſt, committed the Care of *Siſtom* to *Yacub Leis*. *Taher* laid his Buſineſs ſo well, that he took *Dram Ben Nacer*, and ſent him Priſoner to *Bagdat*, where the *Calif* kept him cloſe confin'd for a long Time. *Yacub Leis* taking all Advantages, and being now free from any Subjection to *Dram*, took upon him the Sovereignty of *Siſtom*, behaving himſelf ſo diſcreetly, that he daily gain'd the Love of his People. He fortify'd that City, and having garriſon'd it, and other convenient Places throughout the Province, made ſome Incurſions into *Karaſon*; which he enter'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 253, of CHRIST 868, with a numerous Army, and reduc'd it under his Dominion. Next he poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Kerat* and *Fuxangh*, and advanc'd to *Kermon*, and took it, driving out the Garriſon plac'd in that Kingdom by the Governour of *Schiras*, whom he alſo beſieg'd in that City, which not being tenable, he ſurrender'd, and there his

His Conqueſts.

An. 868.

Men had an extraordinary Booty, whereof he took nothing to himſelf but twenty Faulcons, that had belong'd to the Lord of *Schiras*, ten whereof were white, and the other ten of ſeveral Colours, and 200 *Manes* of pure Musk, being 450 Pounds, which, together with the Faulcons, he ſent as a Preſent to the *Calif* of *Bagdat*, offering to ſerve him to the utmoſt of his Power. Having ſetled his Affairs there, he return'd to *Siſtom*, and in the Year of the *Hegira* 257, which is of CHRIST 872, being inform'd there were Commotions at *Schiras*, he return'd thither to ſecure it. The *Calif*, who was not well pleas'd with *Yacub Leis* and his Proceedings, ſent him Orders immediately to depart *Schiras*, and the Dominions of *Perſia*, without ever preſuming to return, but contenting himſelf with what he had already unjuſtly uſurp'd. *Yacub Leis* was not then in a Condition to conteſt his Authority, but obey'd and departed *Perſia*, retiring to *Balk* in *Maurenahar*, and thence to *Cabul*, between *Karaſon* and *Maurenahar*, which Places he ſubdu'd. Thence he turn'd off to *Herat*, and ſo to *Nixabur*, where he fought *Mahamed Ben Taher*, and overthrew him, as was ſaid at firſt. Then directing his March to *Karaſon*, and paſſing by *Tabarſtam*, came to *Sary*. Thoſe Lands were in the Poſſeſſion of *Acem Ben Zeyd Alawy*, above mention'd, who advanc'd to meet *Leis* with a well appointed Army. They fought, and *Ben Zeyd* being routed, fled to *Delmon* or *Delimon* or *Delon*, for it has all thoſe Names, a City in the Province of *Gueylon*. Having remov'd this Obſtacle, *Yacub Leis* held on his Way to *Amal*, in Queſt of *Acem Ben Zeyd*. The Winter Seaſon was now come on, and thoſe Countries being very cold, ſuch mighty

An. 872.

Looſes 40000 *Men.*

Snows

Snows and Storms enſu'd, as oblig'd him at that Time to diſcontinue the Purſuit, with the Loſs of 40000 fighting Men, deſtroy'd by the hard Weather. The *Calif* thought this a good Opportunity to check the Power of *Leis*, and accordingly ſent Expreſſes into all Countries that were under his Dominion, perſwading his Governours to revolt; but it fell out quite contrary than the *Calif* expected; for *Mahamed Ben Wacel Tamimy*, one of the many *Arabian* Commanders there were in *Perſia*, conſpir'd to deſtroy the Garriſons the *Calif* had in the Cities and Fortreſſes of *Perſia*, and cutting off moſt of them, ſecur'd thoſe Places to himſelf. However, one *Muza Ben Bugan*, Lord of *Bazora*, *Hamas* and *Hyamama*, Provinces in *Arabia*, adjoyning to *Perſia*, held for the *Calif*, and hearing of thoſe Commotions, drew together a conſiderable Army, which he put under the Command of *Abderaman Ben Meſlek*, who mov'd towards *Mahamed Ben Wacel Tamimy*, whom he engag'd, but was routed and taken. *Leis* was not idle, during thoſe Troubles, but when he perceiv'd they were at the Height, advanc'd towards *Perſia*, which he invaded ſo opportunely and with ſuch Vigour, that he ſoon maſter'd the whole, ſlaying all thoſe that contended for it, and finding himſelf in a Condition to proceed, ſet forward for *Bagdat*. The *Calif* hearing of *Leis*'s Deſign, contriv'd to ſtop him by Letters, deſiring he would reſt ſatisfy'd, and yeilding up to him all he had already gain'd. He anſwer'd, *he had an carneſt Deſire to ſee him, which was the Cauſe of his marching to* Bagdat, *and that nothing ſhould divert him from it.* The *Calif* underſtanding his Reſolution, with all poſſible Expedition form'd a numerous Army, the Com-

Tamimy rebels.

Command whereof he gave to a Brother of his own, ordering him to march againſt *Leis*. He did ſo, and encamp'd cloſe by him, but *Leis* having other Deſigns, decamp'd in the Dead of the Night, and march'd through By-ways, till he came again into the Road to *Bagdat*, leaving the *Calif's* Brother in a Conſternation, not knowing which way to follow him. *Yacub Leis*, in the mean while advanc'd with all poſſible Speed, re-inforcing his Army as he went. He was got about half way, when a violent Pleuriſy ſeiz'd him, and in a Conſult of Phyſicians it was reſolv'd he ſhould take a Clyſter, which he refus'd, ſaying, he had rather dye than take it. When his Diſtemper was at the Height, he receiv'd a Meſſage from the *Calif*, adviſing him to proceed no farther. He ſat up, as well as he was able, and taking a naked Sword in his right Hand, and a *Gerda* or *Apa*, which is an ordinary ſort of Bread the *Perſians* eat with ſome Onions, in his left, ſaid to the Meſſengers, *Go tell the* Calif, *your Maſter, That if I dye of this Diſtemper, Death parts us; if I live, this Sword will clear the Way; but if I loſe the Game, I'll lay aſide all Pretenſions to a Crown, and this Bread and Onions will ſatisfy me in any remote Place.* This ſaid, he diſmiſt them, and the News of his Death came to *Bagdat* as ſoon as they; that Diſtemper ending his Days in the Year of the *Hegira* 268, and of CHRIST 882, having been Sovereign of *Perſia* 11 Years. He was an Excellent Commander, Brave, Judicious, Generous and Affable, and a ſtrict Obſerver of Juſtice. His Cooks every Day dreſs'd 20 Sheep, five Oxen, and a great Quantity of Fowl, which was always diſtributed among the Poor, as ſoon as he had din'd, and he was himſelf very tem-

Leis dyes.

temperate in Eating. Nothing was found in his Tent of any greater Value, than his Arms, a Carpet he lay on, and a Cuſhion or Pillow. He left no Iſſue, and therefore his Brother *Hamed Ben Leis* ſucceeded him; who as ſoon as ſettled, writ to the *Calif*, ſubmitting himſelf, and begging to be receiv'd into Favour. The *Calif* was ſo well pleas'd, that he not only confirm'd to him the Poſſeſſion of *Perſia*, *Karaſon*, and the other Lands his Brother had acquir'd, but alſo gave him the Inveſtiture of *Hierak*, whereof *Hiſphacn*, or *Iſpahan* is the Capital, appointing him at the ſame Time *Schena* of *Bagdat*, which is as much as Supreme Magiſtrate under the *Calif*; by whoſe Leave *Hamed Ben Leis* gave that Poſt to *Abdula Ben Taher*, marching away himſelf with his Army to *Casbin*, and thence to the City *Rey*, leaving one *Mahamed Ben Leis*, his Kinſman, Governour at *Schiras*, who, as ſoon as he was gone, took upon him the Sovereignty of the Kingdom. *Hamed Ben Leis* return'd, and *Mahamed* fled, leaving him the Kingdom, and a mighty Booty, of which he ſent a noble Preſent to the *Calif*; who receiv'd Complaints from ſeveral Parts of the Tyranny and Inſolence of *Hamed Ben Leis*; for which Reaſon he by Edict depriv'd him of all Right to the Lands he had given him, and ſent *Sayd Ben Mochaleb* with an Army, who fought, and routed him. *Dram*, who we ſaid before, had been long a Priſoner at *Bagdat*, was at this Time with *Hamed*, and they now both fled with a few Followers. *Hamed* having afterwards rally'd the Remains of his Army, made another Attempt to recover *Schiras*, which *Mouſek*, Brother to the *Calif*, *Almat Hamed Bila* underſtanding, he preſently

His Brother confirm'd by the Calif.

Is routed.

ſently threw himſelf into *Schiras*, ſo that *Hamed Ben Leis* ſeeing no Hopes of ſucceeding there, turn'd back toward *Hermon*, and paſſing through *Siſtom*, went away to *Karaſon*.

The Calif Almat dyes An. 839. About this Time dy'd *Almat Hamed Bila* the *Calif*, when he had been ſo 23 Years, in that of the *Hegira* 279, and of CHRIST 893. His Son *Matazed Bila Hamed* ſucceeded him.

CHAP. XXXII.

Matazed Bila Hamed, 36*th* Calif, *the Affairs of* Perſia *under him.*

Matazed Bila Hamed, the new Calif, was a brave and wiſe Prince, but much addicted to Senſuality. *Hamed Ben Leis* being diſappointed of his Deſign on *Schiras*, as was ſaid above, retir'd to *Karaſon*, where *Rafeaky Ben Arſoma*, a Governour in thoſe Parts, had rebell'd againſt the Calif, and ſided with *Mahamed Ben Zeyd Alawy*; *Hamed* eſpouſing the Calif's Quarrel, routed and ſlew him, and then ſent his Head to the Calif, who was well pleas'd with this Service, becauſe *Rafeaky* had made great Commotions in thoſe Provinces; and to reward *Hamed*, confer'd on him the Provinces of *Karaſon*, *Maurenahar*, *Parcy*, *Kermon* and *Siſtom*, ordering his Name to be painted on the Military Enſigns, to Honour his Loyalty, and encourage others. This was in the Year of the *Hegira* 284, and of CHRIST 898; and in 900, *Hamed*, as an Acknowledgment, ſent the *Calif* a Preſent conſiſting of a great Sum of Money, many Veſſels of Gold and Silver, a conſiderable Quantity of Ambergreaſe, Musk, and *Calumba* Sweet Wood, and many Veſts of rich Brocade.

Hamed Ben Leis great again.

His Preſent to the Calif.

The

The Country of *Maurenahar* had been very long peaceable, and almoſt exempt from any Subjection to *Perſia*, under one *Iſmael Ben Hamed*; againſt whom *Hamed Ben Leis* march'd with his Army. *Iſmael* waited his coming, near the River *Gehun*, which parts *Maurenahar* from *Karaſon*, where, after ſome time ſpent, and ſeveral Actions I paſs over, to avoid Tedioufneſs, *Hamed* was defeated, and taken by *Iſmael*; who, beſides that he was an able Commander, is ſaid to have made War on him at the Requeſt of the *Calif*, who ſupply'd him with Men and Money. *Iſmael* treated his Priſoner *Hamed* very courteouſly, and having made him ſwear to be always his Friend, and never to make War on him again upon any Account, carry'd him away to *Maurenahar*, whence he ſent an Account of what had happen'd to the *Calif*, who order'd him to ſend *Hamed* to *Bagdat*, which he did, and there the *Calif* caus'd him to be put to Death, when he had reign'd 23 Years. He had but one Eye, and was extraordinary paſſionate. *Taher Leis*, a Grandſon of his, by his Son *Mahamed*, ſucceeded him.

Is routed and taken.

His Death.

Iſmael before this, in the Year of the *Hegira* 280, which was of CHRIST 894, had march'd out of *Maurenahar* into *Turkeſtan*, where after gaining ſeveral Victories over the *Turks*, he at laſt in a Battel took the King of that Country, his Father, Wife, and 10000 Men; and ſo great was the Booty, that every Soldier of his had for his Share 1000 Dinares of Gold, which amounts to near 15000 Ducats. After theſe Succeſſes he return'd to *Samarkand*, whence he march'd with 70000 fighting Men againſt *Hamed Leis*, whom he overthrew, as has been ſaid, for which Reaſon the Calif *Ma-*

Iſmael's *Succeſſes.*

tazed

tazed gave him to Title of King of *Maurenahar*, *Karaſon*, *Schiraz*, *Siſton* and *Kermon*. *Iſmael* being inform'd that *Mahamed Ben Zeyd Alawy* was preparing at *Tabarſtam* to invade his Lands, writ to him, adviſing to deſiſt; which the other not regarding, he ſent *Mahamed Ben Aron Someny* to oppoſe him with a conſiderable Army, who routed and ſlew him, taking Poſſeſſion of the Lands of *Gerion* and *Tabarſtam*, which he govern'd under *Iſmael*. This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 287, of CHRIST 901; and in 903, the Calif *Matazed Bila* dy'd, having reign'd 9 Years and 9 Months; and his Son *Moktafy Bila* ſucceeded him.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Moktafy Bila, 37*th* Calif, *and Monarch of* Perſia.

IN the Reign of this Prince great Troops of *Arabs* revolted, and committing many Robberies in *Arabia*, infeſted the High-ways, and obſtructed the Pilgrimage to *Mecca*. In *Perſia*, *Taher Ben Hamed Ben Hamed Leis*, who ſucceeded his Grand-father in the Kingdom of *Siſton*, having gather'd the greateſt Power he could, invaded the Kingdom, deſigning to expel all the *Calif*'s Garriſons, as he actually did, and brought it under his own Dominion. Thence he proceeded to *Awas*, the Governour whereof *Calif Abdula*, crav'd Aid of *Iſmael*, King of *Maurenahar*, who writ to *Taher Leis*, requiring him to deſiſt from that Enterprize; and he, either through Fear, or Courteſy, advanc'd no farther; which prevail'd

Taker Leis ſubdues Perſia.

vail'd with *Iſmael* to interceed for him with the *Calif*, that he would confirm to him the Lands *Taher*'s Father had been poſſeſs'd of and he had ſubdu'd. The *Calif* comply'd with *Iſmael*, and *Taher* having obtain'd this Grant, return'd to *Schiras*. This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 293, of CHRIST 907, in which *Moktafy* dy'd, being ſpent with luxurious Living, when he had reign'd but four Years. He leaving no Iſſue, the Empire devolv'd to his Brother *Moktader Bila*.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Moktader Bila, 38*th* Calif, *and Monarch of* Perſia.

UNder this Calif, *Mahamed Ben Arun Somoni*, who, as was ſaid before, routed and ſlew *Ben Zeyd Alaway*, recover'd the Provinces of *Gerion* and *Tabarſtam*, and was appointed Governour of them by *Iſmael*, King of *Maurenahar*, rebell'd and march'd to the City *Rey*, which he poſſeſs'd himſelf of by Intelligence with ſome of the Inhabitants. *Iſmael* being inform'd of it, mov'd towards him, *Arun* fled, and he purſu'd him through *Casbin*, *Zemian* and *Tabarſtam*, which he recover'd, but could not take him. He ſecur'd his own Dominions, and march'd again into *Turkeſtan*, ſubduing other Provinces and Kingdoms, and having taken an ineſtimable Booty, return'd to *Maurenahar*, where he dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 295, of CHRIST 909, leaving the Kingdom to his Son *Hamed*, whom the Calif confirm'd in it, with additional Honours; becauſe the Califs being look'd upon

Iſmael's Victories and Death.

as

as Sovereigns, both in Spirituals and Temporals; they did not reckon their Title to what they poſſeſs'd as altogether good, without their Confirmation, tho' they often diſpens'd with this Nicety.

Taher being poſſeſs'd of *Schiras*, and the other Lands the *Calif* had reſtor'd to him, and being abroad a Hunting in the Province of *Siſton*; *Saughery*, a Slave to *Leis*, his Unkle *Aly*'s Son, ſurpriz'd *Schiras*, and made himſelf Maſter of it. *Taher* haſted to recover that Place, but being met by *Saughery*, was routed and taken, with one of his Brothers, and ſent Priſoner to *Bagdat*, when he had reign'd ſix Years. *Saughery*, for the more Security, ſecur'd *Leis*, the Son of *Aly*, under whoſe Pay he had roſe ſo high; as alſo another Brother of his call'd *Madel*, and ſent them Priſoners to *Bagdat*. This happen'd in the Year 300 of the *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 914.

Sanghery *ſeizes* Xiras.

Ann. 914.

Hamed, the Son of *Yacub*, great Grandſon to *Leis*, found means to eſcape, being made Priſoner, and finding the Country of *Siſtom* in Confuſion, enter'd and ſubdu'd it in nine Months, killing many of the Diſturbers, and dy'd himſelf ſoon after, leaving his Couſin German *Calif Ben Hamed* in his Place. This Man deſigning to go in Pilgrimage to *Mecca* and *Medina*, committed the Government of his Dominions to his Kinſman, *Taher Ben Ocem*, who, as ſoon as he was gone, revolted, and refus'd to admit him at his Return. *Calif* went away to *Bokara*, in *Maurenahar*, to crave the Aſſiſtance of *Manſur*, who granted his Requeſt, and he return'd to *Siſton*, whence *Taher* was fled for Fear. *Calif* being reſtor'd to his Kingdom, and ſetled in Peace, diſmiſs'd the Forces *Manſur* had ſupply'd him with,

Calif's *Viciſſitudes.*

wi'h, and *Taher* perceiving him diſarm'd, entered *Siſtom* again, and made himſelf Maſter of it. *Calef* was a ſecond time aſſiſted by *Manſur*, and in his March back to *Siſtom*, was inform'd of *Taher*'s Death, and that his Son *Ocem* had ſucceeded him, who, upon his Approach, ſhut himſelf up in a ſtrong Hold, which *Calef* ſo cloſely beſieg'd, that being deſtitute of all Hopes of holding out, he alſo had Recourſe to *Manſur*, who writ in his Behalf to *Calef*; and he for his Sake, permitted *Ocem* and his Followers to depart towards *Bokara*, where *Manſur* gave them Lands to live on. All thoſe Countries were Tributary to *Manſur*; but *Calef* being ſettled in Peace, took little Care to pay his Acknowledgment, tho' it was demanded of him; whereupon *Manſur* ſent the ſame *Ocem* againſt him, with a numerous Army. *Calef*, not daring to encounter him, withdrew into a Fortreſs, which was impregnable by Art and Nature. There he was beſieg'd for the ſpace of ſeven Years, which oblig'd *Manſur* to ſend another General call'd *Aboaly Ben Seniur* with more Forces to join *Ocem*; whereupon *Calef* abandon'd *Darek*, ſo that Fortreſs was call'd, and left it to *Manſur*'s Forces, and was by him afterwards reſtor'd to his Kingdom. He had after this many other Wars, with various Succeſs, in one of which his Son *Taher* expell'd him the Kingdom, and thruſt himſelf into the Throne. The Father finding no other way to remove him, feign'd himſelf ſick, and caus'd it to be given out, *That he was dying, and deſir'd to ſee him; pretending to diſcover where he had hid much Treaſure, and to forgive all his Faults, ſince he was his Son, and he could not but love him better than any other.* The co-

vetous and unwary Son, being more credulous than he ought to have been, went to ſee his Father, who ſlew him with his own Hand, and recover'd his Kingdom. After this he again loſt and recover'd it twice, and at laſt dy'd, leaving it to his Son *Abu Aſes*.

Hamed's Government.

Hamed Ben Iſmael, who, upon the Death of his Father, was ſetled in the Poſſeſſion of the Kingdom of *Maurenahar*, by Conſent of the Calif *Moktader*, took a Progreſs through his Dominions, and entering *Samarcand*, ſeiz'd his Unkle *Ezach*, who then govern'd that Province, upon ſuſpicion that he had Thoughts of revolting; but ſoon after reſtor'd him to his Liberty and Government. *Tabarſtam* rebell'd twice, and was both times reduc'd, and the Rebels puniſh'd. In the Year of the *Hegira* 298, of CHRIST 912, he reduc'd *Siſtom*, and the next Year gave the Government of *Nixabur* to his Couſin *Manſur*, Son to the above-mention'd *Ezach*. In the Year 914, as he was Hunting, News was brought him that *Tabarſtam* had revolted a third time, which made him withdraw diſcontented into his Tent, where his Slaves murder'd him that Night in his Sleep. His Body was carry'd to *Bokara*, and there bury'd, when he had reign'd ſix Years and four Months. He was very brave, but paſſionate and poſitive, Qualities miſ-becoming any Man, and much more in a Prince. He left a Son call'd *Nacere Ben Hamed*, ten Years of Age, whom one *Hamed Ben Hamed Leis*, then *Schena*, or Governour of *Bokara*, took upon his Shoulders, and the Multitude following him about the City, caus'd the Boy to be proclaim'd King, and all Perſons to ſwear Allegiance to him. The Child thus born about, wept bitterly, and ask'd,

Ann. 914.

Whither

Whither they were carrying of him? And whether they deſign'd to murder him, as they had done his Father? But being aſſur'd of his Safety, was quiet. *Nacere*, as has been ſaid, was an Infant, whence enſu'd all the Miſchiefs Kingdoms are uſually ſubject too, that have Children for their Kings. *Ezach*, Unkle to the deceas'd King, was at *Samarkand*, he hearing of his Nephew's Death, advanc'd with his Army to *Bokara*, where *Nacere* was, who was otherwiſe call'd *Amir Seyd*. He, tho' ſo young, upon good Advice, ſent a Commander, whoſe Name was *Hamuyhe*, againſt him, by whom *Ezach* was twice defeated, and the laſt time fled to *Samarkand*, *Hamuyhe* purſuing him. *Alyas*, or *Elyas*, Son to *Ezach*, had been left Governour of that City, who hearing of the Approach of *Hamuyhe*, forſook his Father and fled. *Ezach* deliver'd himſelf up to *Hamuyhe*, who carry'd him to *Bokara*, where *Nacere*, or *Amir Seyd*, kept him till he dy'd, and upon his Deceaſe his Son *Manſur*, who was Governour of *Nixabur*, made War on *Nacere*, and was join'd by *Ocem Ben Aly*, one of *Nacere*'s Generals, who was diſcontented. *Hamuyhe* march'd againſt them, but before he could engage, was inform'd that *Manſur* was dead. *Ocem Ben Aly* proſecuted the War by himſelf, which laſted not long; for in the firſt Battel fought, he was routed, taken, and carry'd away to *Bokara*. *Nacere* had ſent one *Hamed Ben Sal* to govern the Province of *Karaſon*, who uſurp'd the Sovereignty of it, and marching with Forces into thoſe of *Gerion* and *Marwo*, poſſeſs'd himſelf of them. *Hamuyhe*, *Nacere*'s General, march'd againſt, defeated and ſent him Priſoner to *Bokara*, where he dy'd in Gaol, a-

bout the Beginning of the Year of the *Hegira* 301, and of CHRIST 914. At the same time dy'd the Calif *Moktader*, having reign'd 7 Years.

An. 914.

CHAP. XXXV.

Jafar Ben Matazed, 39*th* Calif; *Affairs of* Persia, *during his Reign.*

UPON the Death of *Moktader* the Califship was bestow'd on his Brother *Jafar Ben Matazed*, who enjoy'd no more Peace than his Predecessors; for one *Leylahe Ben Naaman*, made a successful Irruption from the Country of *Tabarstam* into the neighbouring Provinces. *Nacere* sent an Army to oppose him, which was defeated in a Battel, fought at *Nuchan* in the Territory of *Tus*. *Leylahe's* victorious Soldiers laying down their Arms, fell to plundering the Enemies Camp, which *Nacere's* Men observing, they rally'd, and fell on them with such Resolution, that they recover'd the Victory and Booty, taking *Leylahe* Prisoner, whose Head they struck off.

Insurrection of Leylahe.

At the same Time, another rebell'd in the City *Rey*, which *Nacere* himself recover'd, and leaving *Siniur* to command there, with a good Garrison, march'd away himself to *Maurenahar*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 313, of CHRIST 926, one *Azfar Ben Schyruyhe* broke into the Dominions of *Persia*, for the better understanding whereof I will look back a little, with my usual Brevity. One *Abusuia*, a very poor *Persian*, but of a noble Family, as descended from the Ancient Kings of *Persia*, had three Sons, *Emadudauleh Aly*, *Acem* and *Akmet*, this last is said to have dreamt one Night, that

Abusuia's strange Dream.

from

from his Privities there iſſu'd a Fire, which burnt a conſiderable part of the Country, and that the Flame afterwards dividing into three Parts, continu'd for a long Time. Being frighted with this Dream, he told it to an Aſtrologer, who aſſur'd him, he ſhould Lord it over many Provinces, and his three Sons ſhould ſucceed him. One *Makon Ben Kaly* had then poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Tabarſtam*, *Abuſuia* put himſelf into his Service, with his three Sons, under the Command of *Azfar Ben Schirughe*, *Mardawege Ben Zad* and his Brother *Wazmaguir*. *Azfar* rebell'd againſt *Makon*, maintaining War againſt him a whole Year, at the End whereof *Makon* dy'd, and *Azfar* poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Roſtandade*, *Rey*, *Casbin*, *Habar*, *Zenion*, *Taromia* and *Amedon*, in the Territories whereof he made dreadful Havock. *Nacere* march'd againſt him with a powerful Army; and after ſeveral Encounters, they came to a Compoſition, in the Year of the *Hegira* 317, and of CHRIST 930, *Azfar* remaining poſſeſs'd of moſt part of what he had got. During *Nacere's* Abſence there had been ſome Commotions, which were ſoon quell'd by his Preſence, but the War did not altogether ceaſe during his Life.

Comical Superſtition of Mahometans.

Whilſt theſe Things hapned in *Perſia*, great Multitudes of *Arabs* mutiny'd in *Arabia*, who breaking into the Temple of *Mecca*, plunder'd it of immenſe Treaſure the Superſtitious Dévotion of the *Moores* had laid up there, carrying away a Stone held by them all in mighty Veneration, which was there at that Time, and perhaps is ſtill; which they remov'd to *Cufa*. The *Mahometans* tell a thouſand Fables concerning this Stone, as that *Adam* brought it from the Terreſtrial Paradiſe, when he was ex-

pell'd thence, that it afterwards fell into the Hands of *Iſmael*, *Abraham's* eldeſt Son, and in Proceſs of time came to be laid up at *Mecca*. They add, that whereas it was naturally extraordinary white, it turn'd very black upon being touch'd by Sinners, ſo that it was a ſort of Touch-ſtone for Sins. I have mention'd this Fable, becauſe it is ridiculous, and now return to Calif *Jafar*, who having been ſo 20 Years, was in that of the *Hegira* 320 and of CHRIST 933, murder'd by his Soldiers, who in his Place ſet up his Brother *Kaher Bila Mahamed Ben Matazed*.

An. 933.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Kaher Bila Mahamed *the* 40*th*; Razy Bila Mahamed *the* 41*th*, *and* Moktafy Bila Ebrahim, *the* 42*th*, *Califs*.

Kaher Bila Mahamed Ben Matazed, Brother to *Jafar* deceas'd, was advanc'd to the Califſhip, and held it but a Year and a half, when the Soldiers put out his Eyes; and advanc'd to the Throne *Razy Bila Mahamed*, Son to *Moktader*, who made one *Eben Mokal* his *Wazir* or *Vizier*, and a few Months after caus'd his right Hand to be cut off, and him to be hang'd, for having writ a Letter of little Moment in his Name, without acquainting him. Till this Time it had continu'd in uſe, that the *Califs* ſhould preach themſelves, explaining their Sect to the People, but this Man order'd that the *Wazirs* or *Viziers* ſhould do it for them. *Bila Razy* reign'd four Years, and dy'd in that of the *Hegira* 326, of CHRIST 939. His Brother *Moktafy Bila Ebrahim* ſucceeded him, in whoſe Days there was a mighty Famine in *Bagdat*, and

Famine and Peſtilence.

was

was follow'd by a dreadful Pestilence, so that the Country was almost unpeopled. When *Moktafy* had reign'd four Years, in the 330*th* of the *Hegira* and of CHRIST 943, the Soldiers put out his Eyes, without which he liv'd 24 Years, but his Son *Mostachfy Abdela* was put in his Place.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Mostachfy Abdela, 34*th* Calif.

Mostachfy Abdela being enthron'd instead of his blinded Father, to show what hapn'd in his Time, we will return to *Nacere*, who we said above had compounded with *Azfar*; who having always had Wars to employ him, fell sick of a Pthisick, by the *Arabs* and *Persians* call'd *Zeb*, and dy'd in the 38*th* Year of his Age, which was 331 of the *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 944, when he had reign'd 28 Years. He was affable, generous, and well belov'd, and caus'd his eldest Son *Ismael* to be sworn Sovereign, whilst he was himself yet living: but this Son dy'd before the Father, so that another younger call'd *Nueben Nacere* succeeded him: we will now leave him, to say something of *Abusuia* and his Sons, who serv'd under *Azfar*. Nacere dyes.

He after having made his Composition with *Nacere*, as was said above, sent *Emandudaule Aly*, the elder of the three, with his other two Brothers, and some Forces to *Carge*, and march'd himself towards *Hisphaon*, the Capital of *Hierak*, then govern'd for the *Calif* by one *Mozafar Ben Yacut*, who not daring to give him Battel, abandon'd the Country, and went away to *Schiras*, where his Father *Jacut* was Go- Emanudaule *possesses himself of* Persia.

Governour. Being both joyn'd, they advanc'd together towards the Enemy, whom they met, fought, and routed, and he eſcap'd by Flight. *Emandudaule Aly* was at this Time with his two Brothers at *Loreſtam*, *Yacut* mov'd towards them, and gave the firſt Charge with his Infantry, who had all Pots full of *Naphte*, or *Bitumen*, with lighted Matches to caſt in among the Enemy, as they did; but the Wind hapning to be contrary, were ſo far from doing any Harm to their Adverſaries, that the very Men who threw them were burnt. *Yacut's* Horſes being frighted at the Flame, fled full Speed, and he follow'd them, leaving *Edmandudaule Aly* a rich Booty, with abundance of Gold and Silver, which increas'd his Power, and encourag'd his Men, with whom and his Brothers he enter'd *Perſia*, and ſubdu'd it, without much Bloodſhed. He ſettled his Reſidence at *Schiras*, the Capital, which he forbid his Army to plunder, ranſoming it with his own Money. *Emandudaule* took up his Quarters in *Jacut's* Houſe, and ſoon after began to grow uneaſy for Want of Money to pay his Army, which long in Arrears, demanded it in an inſolent Manner. This Care perplexing him, he withdrew into his Bed-chamber, and threw himſelf on the Bed, where looking up towards the Ceiling he perceiv'd a hideous Snake, ſeveral times thruſt its Head out at a Hole and draw it back again. *Aly* in a Fright call'd out ordering the Ceiling, which was of Plaiſter, as they are all in *Perſia*, to be pull'd down; and the Snake to be kill'd, no ſooner had he ſpoke but it was done, and that with many other Snakes found there kill'd: but at the ſame Time was diſcover'd a mighty Treaſure *Jacut* had hid there, and which prov'd more than enough to pay the Soldiers.

Great Treaſure found.

Soon

Soon after hapned another pleaſant Accident, which was this. *Emamdudaule* ſent for a Taylor, to cut out ſome Garments, and when he was come, through a Miſtake, inſtead of calling for a Yard to meaſure with, ask'd for a Stick; the Taylor, who had ſerv'd *Yacut*, thinking it was to beat him, told him, he might ſave himſelf that Trouble, for he would confeſs all the Truth without it, which was, that he had ſeventeen Cheſts in his Houſe, left him to ſecure by *Yacut*. *Aly* was well pleas'd with the Diſcovery, and the Cheſts being brought appear'd full of Brocades, all ſorts of Silks, and other things of extraordinary Value, whereof the Taylor had his Share. *Pleaſant Accident.*

Whilſt theſe Things hapned in *Perſia*, *Nue* had ſucceeded his deceas'd Father in the Government of *Maurenahan*, *Karaſon*, *Nixabur*, and other neighbouring Provinces. *Hamuybe*, the famous General above ſpoken of, who had ſerv'd *Nacere*, ſeeing his Son in the Throne, immediatly departed his Dominions, fearing leſt he ſhould keep in mind ſome Uneaſineſs there had been between them before he was King, and revenge himſelf now he was ſo. *Nue* being inform'd of it, writ to him in ſuch affectionate Manner, that *Hamuybe* thought good to return, and *Nue* made him Governour of *Samarkand*. *Nue* made War in ſeveral Places, under the Conduct of his Generals, but always unſucceſſfully. He therefore reſolv'd to try his own Fortune, took the Field, and detatch'd one *Aboaly* to the City *Rey*, who poſſeſs'd himſelf of it, in the Year of the *Hegira* 333, of *Chriſt* 946, and was appointed Governour of it, till many Complaints being brought againſt him, *Nue* ſent *Ebrahem Ben Siniur* to ſucceed him, whom *Aboaly* after ſeveral Encounters, defeat- Nue *ſucceeds* Nacere. *An.* 946.

ed

ed twice, and advancing to *Bokara*, enter'd, and would have burnt it to the Ground, had he not been prevail'd upon by Entreaties to deſiſt. *Nue* afterwards recovering his Loſſes made moſt dreadful Examples of many, who had deſerted him, and gone over to his Enemy.

Marda-wege *murder'd.*

Emandudaule Aly ſtill continu'd at *Schiras*, where News was brought him, that *Mordawege*, whom he had ſerv'd, was murder'd by his Slaves, as he bath'd himſelf. Hereupon he immediatly ſent away his Brother *Rokna Daule Acem* to *Hyerak* and *Rey*, who poſſeſs'd himſelf of them; and entering into a Confederacy with *Aboaly*, who was with Variance *Nue*, obtain'd of the *Calif* the Inveſtiture of *Karaſon*, which being granted *Aboaly* went thither, and *Nue* dy'd ſoon after, for Grief as was reported, leaving his Son *Abdul Malek* to ſucceed him. As ſoon as *Emandudaule Aly* had diſpatch'd his Brother *Roknadaule Acem*, as was ſaid above, he alſo ſent out the other *Mokayzedudaule Achmet* to *Kermon*, which he made himſelf Maſter of, and having ſecur'd it with ſtrong Garriſons, advanc'd to *Bagdat*, enter'd it by Force, and having taken the *Calif Moſtachfy Abdala*, put out his Eyes, when he had reign'd 4 Years and 4 Months, in the Year of the *Hegira* 334, of CHRIST 947, ſetting up *Motyah Bila Fazele Ben Moktader* in his Place.

Calif *blinded and depos'd,* Ann. 947.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Motyah Bila Fazele, 44*th* Calif.

THIS *Calif* being enthron'd, the Superſtitious Stone, mention'd above to have been carry'd away by the *Arabs* from *Mecca*

to

to *Cufa*, was now ranſom'd, for ten times its Weight in Gold, and reſtor'd to the Place from whence it had been taken. To this purpoſe I remember a Paſſage, which being very remarkable, and an Inſtance of true Chriſtian Zeal, I will briefly inſert in this Place. *Don Conſtantine de Braganza*, being Vice-Roy of *India* for the Crown of *Portugal*, among the other noble Actions becoming his high Birth by him perform'd in thoſe Parts, was the Subduing of the Kingdom of *Jafanapatan*, whence, beſides many other Things of Value, was brought away a Monkey's Tooth, held in mighty Veneration, and ador'd by thoſe Heathens, as having belong'd to a Monkey, into which they ſaid one of their Gods had transform'd himſelf, and done mighty Wonders in reſcuing the Wife of one of thoſe Gods, which had been ſtolen away from him, as may be ſeen in the Idolatrous Stories of *Goninda*, *Ramak* and *Quiſna*. This Monkey's Tooth being carry'd to *Goa*, the neighbouring Infidels were much concern'd to be depriv'd of a Thing they had ſo great a Value for, which made them reſolve to ſend a ſolemn Embaſſy to *Goa*, to propoſe the Ranſoming of it. They went and deliver'd their Meſſage, offering a vaſt Treaſure for the Tooth. A Council was call'd to debate about it, and many learned Men admitted, and the Reſult was, *That notwithſtanding the Sum offer'd for the Tooth was ſo conſiderable, yet they ought rather to prefer their Zeal for God's Honour, and to deprive the* Gentiles *of ſo conſiderable an Object of Idolatry and Scandal.* This being reſolv'd, they brought the Embaſſador to the open Place before the Vice-Roy's Palace, which they call *Terreiro do Viſorey*; that is, the Vice-

Zeal of Don Conſtantine de Braganza.

Vice-Roy's Court, or Square, and in the Preſence of a vaſt multitude of People, and all the principal Perſons in the City, the Tooth was ſhew'd them, and they ask'd, *Whether that was the very Tooth they demanded and offer'd to ranſom?* They anſwer'd, with moſt reſpectful Awe and Submiſſion, *It was.* Then immediately before their Faces it was caſt into the Fire, prepar'd on purpoſe, where it was burnt; then taken out again in their Preſence, put into a Mortar, and pounded to fine Duſt, which they caſt into the River that runs cloſe by. Thus giving them to underſtand what ſort of Gods they worſhipp'd, and the uncorrupted Zeal of Chriſtian Religion. I have here mention'd this, in reference to what was ſaid of the *Arabs* ranſoming their Stone.

In the Year of the *Hegira* 337, which was Ann. 949. of CHRIST 949, *Emandudaule Aly* fell ſick, and perceiving his End drew near, call'd to him his Nephew *Azududaule*, Son to his Brother *Rocknadaule Acem*, appointing him his Succeſſor, and dy'd the beginning of the following Year. About the ſame time *Waxmagnir* being a Hunting, a Wild Boar he had wounded turn'd upon his Horſe, diſmounted and kill'd him. Beſides theſe, other Princes and famous Generals departed this Life much about the ſame time, among which were *Mozezedudaule Achmet* at *Bagdat*; *Acem Ben Feruzan* in *Tabarſtan*; *Kafur Haxidy* at *Grand Cayro*, and the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*; *Abowly Ben Machamed Algas* at *Bokara*, and *Seyfdaule* at *Damaſcus*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 345, and of CHRIST 957, there rag'd a great and univerſal Peſtilence throughout *Karaſon*, *Koeſtam*, and the other Dominions of Per-

Death of great Men.

Peſtilence and Broils.

Perſia; which was follow'd by freſh Commotions and the greateſt Confuſions, that had ever been yet, for all Men did what Miſchief they could to others, every one was afraid of his Neighbour, and no Perſon thought himſelf ſafe.

In the height of this Confuſion, which laſted ſome Years, and the Year of the *Hegira* 350, which was of CHRIST 962, *Abdul Malek*, Son to *Nue*, playing at Bandy a Horſeback, as is uſual in *Perſia*, and I have ſeen it ſeveral times, fell from his Horſe and dy'd, when he had reign'd ſeven Years and ſix Months. His Brother *Manſur* ſucceeded him. *Albataquin* was *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, to the late *Abdul Malek*, whilſt he was living, and now with all his Might oppos'd the Enthroning of *Manſur*, whoſe Party nevertheleſs prevail'd, and *Albataquin*, attended by 3000 Horſe that adher'd to him, fled to *Gazmin*. *Manſur* ſent 15000 Men after him, who coming to a Battel on the Borders of *Balk*, were defeated. The ſame Fate attended a ſecond Party ſent after him. *Manſur* conſidering his good Fortune, and that he did not deſign him any farther harm, forbore ſending after him any more, and march'd with his Forces to *Hyerack* and the City *Rey*. *Rocknadaule Acem*, who was in Poſſeſſion of that Country, took the Field, and ſent one of his Sons with ſome Forces into *Karaſon*, to give *Manſur* a Diverſion. *Schamguir*, who was *Rocknadaule's* General, happen'd to die at this time, and his Poſt was given to *Abul Ocem*, who finding both Princes inclinable, propos'd a Peace, which was concluded; upon Condition that *Rocknedaule* ſhould pay to *Manſur* 150000 Dinars of Gold, as a Yearly Tribute, which amounts

Ann. 962. Manſur ſucceeds Abdul Malek.

to

to above 220000 Ducats; and as a farther Confirmation of what had been agreed, *Mansur* took to Wife *Rocknadaule*'s Niece, Daughter to his Brother. In the Year of the *Hegi-*
Ann. 975. *ra* 363, of CHRIST 977, the Calif *Motyah Bila* having reign'd 29 Years and 6 Months, was seiz'd with a violent Palsy, which oblig'd him to resign the Government to his Son *Tayha Abdel Camin*, and he dy'd two Months after, as did *Mansur* two Years after, when he had reign'd 15 Years, and his Son *Nue* succeeded him.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Tayha Abdel Carim, 45*th* Calif.

Tayha Abdel Carim, Son to *Motyah*, succeeded his Father in the Califship, as was said above, or in the Year 367 of the
Ann. 979. *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 979, dy'd *Rocknadaule*, leaving his Son *Azududaule*, King of *Hierak*, who extended his Dominions considerably. *Nue Ben Mansur*, who had succeeded his Father in *Maurenahar* had soon Business enough upon his Hands; for tho' *Albataquin*, who had fled from him, and whom he had Cause to fear, was dead; yet *Schabus*, the Son of *Schamguir*, his Father *Mansur*'s General, seiz'd on his Provinces of *Gerjom* and *Tabarstam*.

Discord among the Daules.

Some Differences arose between *Azadudaule* and his Brother *Fakoradaule*, whom the other invaded, and he fled to *Kabus*, who receiv'd and entertain'd him with extraordinary Civility and Respect, offering to assist him with his Person, and all he was worth. *Azadudaule* offend-

offended at his Courteſy, march'd againſt them, and gaining a Battel, recover'd *Geriom* and *Tabanſtam*. Soon after *Kabus* and *Fakora*, being aſſiſted by *Nue Ben Manſur*, turn'd again upon *Azadudale*, and reducing *Geriom*, oblig'd him to retire into a Fortreſs, which they laid Siege to. Within two Months, the Beſieged began to want Proviſions, and therefore corrupted one of the Enemies Commanders, and ſallying on a ſudden, as had been concerted between them, the ſaid Commander fled with all his Men, which others obſerving they did ſo too, and by that means the Siege was rais'd. *Nue*, who at this time was at *Nixabur* (we will here go on with him to the end of his Life, and then return to the *Daules*, to avoid Confuſion) underſtanding the ill Succeſs of his Confederates, order'd his *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, *Abul Acem*, to raiſe freſh Forces, with which he ſet out towards *Azadudaule*; but falling ſick, deſiſted from his Enterprize at that time, and *Fakorodaule*'s Brother dying ſoon after, he became Lord of all his Dominions. There enſu'd mighty Troubles, which ſoon ended with the Death of the Ringleaders. At this time dy'd *Abul Ocem*, *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, to *Nue*, a very ſtrange Account whereof was given, *viz.* That being with a ſhe Slave, he was extreamly fond of, he dy'd ſuddenly, which was very ſurprizing to all that heard of it. He left two Sons, the one call'd *Boaly*, who ſucceeded him in the Government of *Karaſon* and *Nixabur*; the other *Faech*, whom *Nue* made *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, of *Hyerat*. Theſe two envying one another, their Enmity grew ſo high, that it broke out into a War. *Boaly* march'd againſt *Faech*, who fled to *Marvo*, where he form'd a numerous Army,

Sudden Death of Abul Ocem.

Army, with which he mov'd towards *Bokara*.

His Sons Boaley *and* Faech.

Nue was highly offended, and ſent againſt him his two Generals *Junabak* and *Baktuzun*, with a ſufficient Power to curb him, as they did, and he being routed, fled to *Balk*, whence he proceeded to *Tremed*, and thence writ to *Bokrakham*, King of *Turkeſtan*, exciting him to make War on *Nue*. Whilſt theſe Diſorders were ſtill afoot, *Aboaly Ben Acem* writ to *Nue*, demanding in Return for the mighty Services done by himſelf and his Forefathers, to him and his Predeceſſors, to be made ſupream and only Governour of the Provinces of *Karaſon* and *Maurenahar*. *Nue* granted it, believing he had a faithful Subject of him. *Aboaly* being once poſſeſs'd of thoſe Lands began to play the Tyrant, and tho' ſeveral times admoniſh'd to behave himſelf with more Moderation, was ſo far from complying, that whilſt he made his own Preparations, he writ to *Bokrakan*, King of *Turkeſtan*, inviting him to join in invading the Dominions of *Nue*, which they would conquer and divide between them. *Bokrakan* was eaſily perſwaded, and they both began to break into thoſe Provinces. *Nue* ſent his General *Junaback*, who had defeated *Faech*, to oppoſe them, but he was routed and ſent Priſoner into *Turkeſtan*. *Nue* found himſelf in Diſtreſs by this Loſs, and thinking it a prudent Part, in time of need, to make uſe of Friends and Enemies, was reconcil'd to *Faech*, and concluding that the Kindneſs he had ſhew'd him, had ſecur'd him to his Intereſt, ſent him to ſecure *Samarkand*. As ſoon as he was there, being inform'd that *Bokrakan* was advancing towards him, tho' he might have defended himſelf, he would not;

Nue *expell'd his Kingdom.*

but

but leaving all the Country to him, he went away to *Bokara*, out of mere Spight to *Nue*, who he pretended had wrong'd him. This Action quite ſunk all *Nue*'s Reſolutions, ſo that being deſtitute of all means to oppoſe the Enemy he left the Kingdoms. *Bokrakan* with all poſſible Speed poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Samarkand*, and proceeded thence to *Bokara*, where *Faech* join'd him, and was by him diſmiſs'd with a good Army, towards *Balk* and thoſe Parts. *Nue* skulking about, croſs'd the River *Gehun*, and made a Stand near *Hamuxet*, where abundance of his People reſorted to him by ſeveral ways; which daily increaſing, and with them the Hopes of Succeſs, *Nue* writ to *Aboaly*, putting him in Mind of the Favours he had receiv'd at his Hands, and perſwading him, with Promiſes of ſtill greater Rewards, to return to his Service. *Aboaly* return'd a plauſible Anſwer, at the ſame time contriving to kill him. *Bakrakan* now fell dangerouſly ſick, and no Medicines availing, by the Advice of his Phyſicians, he return'd towards *Turkeſtam*, hoping his own Country Air would recover him, but the Diſtemper increaſing, he dy'd by the way. The People of *Bokara* being inform'd of it, purſu'd his Army, making a mighty Slaughter of them, and recovering the Booty they were carrying off, which was of an immenſe Value. Upon this good Succeſs, *Nue* return'd to his Dominions, where he was receiv'd with univerſal Joy. The King of *Turkeſtam*'s Death put *Aboaly* to a Nonplus, whereupon he reſolv'd to put himſelf into *Nue*'s Hands, which his Brother *Faech* underſtanding, tho' his mortal Enemy, he procur'd an Interview, to diſſwade him from that Deſign, as he did, and they both reſolv'd

Reſtor'd to it.

to make War joyntly on *Nue*; who before theſe Troubles had ſent a famous General call'd *Sabutaquin*, to make new Conqueſts in *India*, whence he was now return'd victorious, with a mighty Booty and the Reputation of a wonderful Maſter in the Art of War. *Nue* gave him the Charge of this War, who gathering what Forces he could, advanc'd to *Gaznehen* a famous Territory in *Karaſon*. *Aboaly* being inform'd of the Preparations that were making againſt him, thought fit to provide againſt any Misfortune, and to that End courted the Friendſhip of *Fakorodaule*, which he purchas'd with many Preſents of great Value. *Nue* and *Sabutaquin* ſet out from *Nixabur* in Queſt of *Aboaly*, attended by the Governours of *Balk*, *Geriom* and *Gergeſtam*. *Aboaly* expected them with a good Army, which *Fakorodaule* had reinforc'd with ſome Veteran Troops, and *Darab Kabus* had joyn'd them with a good Body of Men.

Routs Aboaly, and Faech. Theſe advancing from *Hierat*, the two Armies encamp'd in Sight of one another. When they were to ingage, *Aboaly* took upon him the Command of the main Body, committing the right Wing to *Faech*, and the left to his other Brother call'd *Abul Kocem Ben Siniur*. *Nue* gave the Command of his two Wings to able Generals, and was himſelf in the Center, with *Amir Sabutaquin* and *Seyfadaule*. At the firſt Charge *Aboaly*'s two Wings broke thoſe of *Nue*, who concluding himſelf loſt, gave ſuch a furious Onſet with all the main Body of his Army, as oblig'd his Enemy to give Ground. This was the Poſture of Affairs when *Darab Kabus* deſerting *Aboaly* went over to *Nue*, which ſo daunted *Aboaly*'s Troops, that they were eaſily put to the Rout, and he with his Brother *Faech* fled to *Nixabur*. After this Victory and Dividing the

the Spoils, which were very considerable, *Nue* appointed *Mahamud*, the Son of *Amir Sabutaquin* his General, at the Request of his Father, and went away himself to *Bokara*, *Sabutakin* to *Gaznehen* and *Mahamud* to *Nixabur*; whence the two Brothers *Aboaly* and *Faech*, withdrew themselves to *Geriom*, in the Dominions of *Fakorodaule*, who receiv'd and entertain'd them with much Affection; but they by their ill Carryage so much disgusted him, that they lost his Favour. *Aboaly* perceiv'd it, and in Return for all the Favours receiv'd at his Hands would have murder'd him, and usurp'd his Kingdom. *Faech* would not consent to it, but diswaded him from entertaining any such Thoughts, advising, that since *Nixabur* was ill provided, they should make an Attempt upon it. *Mahamud* suspected their Design, and gave notice to the King and his Father, demanding some Supplies, but before they could come, the two Brothers defeated him, taking Possession of the Country, and he fled. *Sabutaquin* being informed of what had hapned, march'd his Forces with all possible Speed from *Sistom* to *Nixabur*. He found *Aboaly* at *Thus*, and gave him Battel, in the Heat of which *Mahamud* appear'd with the Forces he had rally'd, and falling on the Enemies Rear, they made a dreadful Slaughter of them, most of those that were left alive being taken Prisoners. The two Brothers, with much Difficulty got into *Colat*, a very strong Place, whence with some small Remains of their routed Army they got away to *Marwo*. Thence they made Application to *Nue* for Pardon, who granted it to *Aboaly*, upon Condition he should not go out of *Gerionia* without his Leave, which he accepted of, tho against *Faech*'s Will, who went away to *Ilechkan*,

They are again defeated.

kan, King of *Turkeſtan*, Succeſſor to *Bokrakan*. One *Abu Abdula*, Governour of *Koarrazm*, was an Enemy to *Aboaly*. This Man ſurpriſing *Gerionia*, carry'd him away Priſoner. The Governour of *Gerionia*, who had him in Charge from *Nue*, drew out his Forces, attack'd *Kat*, where the Governour of *Koarrazm* then was, and with much Expence of Blood took him Priſoner, and recover'd *Aboaly*. Returning into his own Province, he cloſely confin'd the Governour of *Koarrazm*, and treated *Aboaly* very courteouſly, feaſting him highly every Day, and upon one of them, when they had drank plentifully, *Mahamud*, the Governour of *Gerionia*, order'd the Governour of *Koarrazm* to be brought before him, and ſtruck off his Head. This done he writ to *Nue*, begging *Aboaly*'s Pardon, who anſwer'd, he had long ſince forgiven him, and ordering he ſhould be ſent to him, becauſe he had Matters of great Moment to communicate to him. *Mahamud* ſent him, and as ſoon as arriv'd at *Bokara*, he was cloſely confin'd, where he dy'd.

Aboaly dyes in Priſon.

His Brother *Faech*, who had fled to *Ilechkan*, perſuaded him, to make War on *Nue*, who being inform'd of what was in Agitation, order'd *Sabutaquin*, with the Troops under his Command, to expect him between *Kehx* and *Necaf*, where he was joyn'd by his Son *Mahamud*, with a good Body of Men from *Nixabur*, which with another Supply ſent by *Nue* form'd a potent Army. Things being in this Poſture, an Accommodation was propos'd, and concluded on Condition, that *Faech* ſhould have the Government of *Samarkand*. This ended all thoſe Confuſions in the Year 385 of the *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 996, *Nue* enjoying Peace all the reſt of his Life, which ended in the Year.

An. 996.

of

of the *Hegira* 387, of CHRIST 998, when he had reign'd 22 Years, leaving a Son call'd *Abul Hares Manſur* in his Place.

Whilſt theſe things hapned in the Provinces of *Uzbek*, *Maurenahar* and *Karaſon*, the lower Parts of *Perſia* were not idle; for the *Daules*, of whom we ſhall now treat again, continuing their Broils kept it continually harraſs'd. *Azududaule*, with whom we broke off above, as ſoon as he came to the Crown, ſent his Son *Abul Favares* to *Kermon*, to reduce a Governour of his, who had there revolted from him, whom he overthrew. At this Time dy'd *Moezedudaule*, King of *Bagdat*, Brother to *Azudu*, leaving the Throne to his Son *Baktear*, and charging him before his Death, in all things relating to the Government, to be adviſ'd by his Unkle, and ſome diſcreet *Wazirs* or *Viziers*, he left him. He did quite the contrary, which gave Occaſion to *Sabutaquin*, and after him to *Albataquin*, to invade his Territories with great numbers of *Turks*, and advancing as far as *Wacet*, they brought him to Diſtreſs. *Baktear* deſir'd Aid of *Azudu*, who made great Expedition with it, and they overthrew the *Turks*, purſuing them to *Bagdat*, where they ſhut themſelves up, and *Baktear* beſieg'd them. They after performing Wonders in their Defence, being compell'd by Neceſſity, abandon'd the City, and went away with the *Calif* to *Tecrit*, a Town in *Diarbek*, on the Banks of the River *Tigris*. *Baktear* took the City, and calling home the *Calif*, deliver'd it up to him. *Azududaule* was much offended at it, and ſecur'd his Nephew, but ſoon after releas'd him. Having put an End to his Expedition, *Azududaule* bent his Force againſt *Hyerak* in *Arabia*. *Baktear* during his Abſence, invaded his Dominions, making mighty

The Actions of the Daules.

Of Azududaule.

Havock. The Unkle turn'd back upon him, upon the first Notice, and *Baktear* retir'd to *Mosul*, a great City in *Diarbek*, where many believe *Ninive* stood. One *Abusaleb* was then Governour of it, who joyn'd *Baktear* with 20000 Men. The two Armies met at *Tecrit*, *Azududaule* obtain'd the Victory, *Abusaleh* fled, and *Baktear* was taken, whose Head his Unkle caus'd to be immediatly struck off, being then 36 Years of Age, and having reign'd eleven Years and some Months. *Azududaule* lik'd the Country of *Mosul*, which is very good, and staid there, subduing other Provinces from thence. In the Year of the *Hegira* 368, and of CHRIST 980. He order'd *Bagdat* to be rebuilt, because it had been almost ruin'd during the late Troubles. He for some Years eas'd the People of the mighty Taxes they paid, caus'd many Wells to be dug along the Roads; encourag'd the Learned Men of his Sect, Philosophers, Physicians and Poets; gave the Christians that liv'd in his Dominions Leave to build Churches, allowing them something of his own towards the Charge, in the Year of the *Hegira* 371, and of CHRIST 982 he built a noble Hospital at *Bagdat*, and endow'd it with a considerable Revenue, and another not inferior to it at *Schiraz*, and having perform'd many other Works becoming a good Prince, he was seiz'd with a *Sara*, which is a Frenzy, and dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 372, of *Christ* 983, when he had liv'd 47 Years, and reign'd 34. He left three Sons, *Scherfadaule*, *Schamsdaule*, otherwise call'd *Abulganiar Marsabane*, and the 3*d* *Babaodaule*. The two eldest divided the Dominions between them; but were not so satisfy'd. *Scherfadaule* kept *Persia*, and *Schamdaule Bagdat*, whom *Scherza* seiz'd at an Interview;

An. 982.

His Death.

An. 983.

view; but *Scherfa* dying, in the Year of the *Hegira* 379, of CHRIST 990, his Brother *Schamſdaule* or *Abulganiar Marſabane*, who was then a Priſoner, was ſet at Liberty and enthron'd in his Place. This Man made his younger Brother *Boahodaule* his Aſſociate in the Government, but ſome Differences ariſing between them they fell out, and *Schamſdaule* made War upon the other by Means of one *Boyaly Ben Hoſtud Hormez*, who perſecuted him to the utmoſt, and when he had leaſt Hopes of Redreſs, News was brought him, that the Soldiers having demanded their Pay of *Schamſdaule*, and he refuſing to give it, they mutiny'd, and ſcaling a ſtrong Hold, where four Sons and ſome Kinſmen of *Baktear*, above ſpoken of, were Priſones, they ſet them at Liberty. Then many more joyning them, they aſſaulted *Schiras*; *Schamſdaule*, who was in that City fled, they purſu'd and took him at *Dudmon* two *Farſanges* or Leagues from the City, whither he was brought back, and put to Death, with his Mother, after he had reign'd nine Years and 6 Months, in the Year of the *Hegira* 380, and of CHRIST 991. *Bohaodaule* ſucceeded him without any Oppoſition. Schamdaule's Death. *An.* 991.

Fakorodaule, as has been ſaid above, was King of *Geriom*. He being ingag'd in a War with one *Sahayd Hebad*, who had more Men and Money, obtain'd a Victory over him, and took a mighty Treaſure. Having put an End to this and other Wars of no great Conſequence, in the Year of the *Hegira* 378, of CHRIST 989, being in his Fortreſs of *Tabarak* at Dinner, he fell eagerly upon ſome roaſt Beef, and eat Grapes after it extravagantly, which gave him ſuch a terrible Pain in the Stomach, that he expir'd in a few Hours, his Death was very little la- Fakorodaule's Death. *An.* 989.

mented by reason of his tyrannical Life; and there ensu'd such Commotions and Confusions in the City, that they could not find Leisure to bury him, till the unsufferable Stench of his Body oblig'd them to lay it under Ground. He left several Sons, the eldest of which, as yet very young, was call'd *Maindudaule*, with whom and his Mother *Sayda* we shall soon go on. We must now return to *Bahao Daule*, who being advanc'd to the Throne, took into his Service *Boaly*, that Commander, who made War on him for his Brother, and employ'd him to expel the Sons of *Baktear* out of *Persia*. The eldest of them call'd *Abu Nacere* went away towards *Kermon*, and falling unexpectedly with some Forces that attended him on *Abujafar*, who was Governour there, drove him out of that Country, and possess'd himself of it. *Bahao Daule* sent *Mouseck* against him, who fought and routed him, and as he fled, a Servant of his own met and ran him through, which Death, they say, had been long before foretold him. *Mouseck* plac'd faithful Governours in *Kermon*, and being satisfy'd with his Victory, return'd to the King, who gave him an honourable Reception; but being misrepresented by some of his Enemies, he was seiz'd that very Day, and soon after put to Death. In the first Year of his Reign *Bahao Daule* depos'd the *Calif Tayha Abdel Carim Ben Mutya*, when he had held it 17 Years and 2 Months, and in his stead set up *Kader Bila Hamed Eben Ezach Eben Mohtader*, to such a Condition was the Califship then reduc'd. After this *Boaly* dy'd at *Bagdat* in the Year of the *Hegira* 401, and *Bahao Daule* in 401, which is of CHRIST 1013, at the Age of 42 Years and 9 Months, and having reign'd 24.

Abunacere *murderd by his Servant.*

Bohao Daule's *Death.* *An.* 1013.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

Kader Bila Hamed, 46*th* Calif.

KAder *Bila Hamed*, the Son of *Moktader*, was promoted to be *Calif*, in the Place of *Mutya*, as was said above, and tho' this Dignity was now come to such a Pass, that only the Name of it seem'd to subsist, the Power being quite lost, yet it still preserv'd a sort of Spiritual Authority and Jurisdiction, and as supreme in that Sense was in some measure respected, according to the more or less religious Disposition of the Princes that sat on the Thrones of the several Kingdoms. Thus the *Califs* continu'd for several Years longer, sometimes rising and sometimes declining, as the Times prov'd, but always much more inconsiderable than they had been.

It was said above, that *Fakare Daule*, King of *Gerion* dy'd of a Surfeit of roast Beef and Grapes. His Son *Maindu Daule* succeeded him, and tho' under Age was proclaim'd King, his Mother *Sayda*, a Woman of extraordinary Wisdom governing for him, and by her Prudence maintain'd the Kingdom in Peace and Prosperity. The Son grew up, would needs take upon him the Government, and began to bestow Commands, without the Advice or Consent of his Mother, which she resenting, retir'd to the Fortress of *Tabarak*. One *Aboaly*, who had been made *Wazir* or *Vizier* against her Liking, fearing she might occasion some Troubles, if she departed the Kingdom, caus'd Guards to be posted on the Roads, to prevent her. His Care prov'd ineffectual, for she found Means to escape, and went away to *Kuseſtam*, where one *Badre Acem Nuybe* was Gouvernour, who being in-

Maindu Daule *King of* Gerion.

inform'd by her of what had hapned between her Son and her, rais'd a considerable Army, and they both march'd against *Maindu Daule*, who was in the City *Rey*. The King and his Minister *Aboaly* were routed and taken, and the Government fell again into the Hands of *Sayda*, who manag'd it with much Wisdom and Discretion. *Mamud Gazney* was at this Time King of *Karason* and *Maurenahar*, and had been always victorious in Warlike Expeditions quite round him. He now sent an Embassy to *Sayda*, asking her Consent, that no Money might be current in his Kingdom but his own, coin'd in his Name and bearing his Arms, signifying he should resent a Refusal. She answer'd with a manly Resolution, that were her Husband alive, she would not be very apprehensive of his Threats, because being a Man, they two might happen to meet; but that she being a Widow Woman, was fully perswaded, he was of too generous a Temper to wrong her. This appeas'd him for the present. Some time after, she was reconcil'd to her Son, but did not put him into full Possession of the Government; but sent *Scham Daule*, another Son, Governour to *Amadon*, and a third call'd *Abu Jafar* to *Ispahan*. She kept the Kingdom in Peace and Quietness till the Year of the *Hegira* 420, of CHRIST 1030, when she dy'd, and all fell into Confusion; for Sultan *Mamud Gazney* march'd to *Hierak*, being joyn'd at *Mazanderon* by *Manucher*, the Son of *Kabus*, and Grandson to *Wax Maguir*, of whom mention has been made; yet he believing the others Company might prove dangerous to his Dominions, return'd home on a sudden, departing the Camp without *Mamud*'s Leave; however fearing he might take Offence at it, he endeavour'd

His Mother Sayda *usurp'd the Throne.*

She dyes. An. 1030.

vour'd to appeaſe him with many Gifts of great Value, Abundance of Proviſions for his Army and 400000 *Dinares* in Gold, which amount to near 600000 Ducats. But in regard it is long ſince we left *Karaſon*, it will be proper for us to return thither.

Nue dying, as was ſaid above, his Son *Abul Hares Manſur* ſucceeded him in his Throne, who made *Baktuzun* his General. *Ileckkan* invaded him, as he had done his Father, and being come to *Samarkand*, was there join'd by *Faech*, who was Governour there, whom he ſent with a ſufficient Force to *Bokara*, the Reſidence of *Manſur*. He abandon'd the City, and fled beyond the River *Amuye*. *Faech* enter'd the City, and having aſſur'd the Citizens, that he came not to wrong the King, but to ſerve and aſſiſt him, he return'd, and being convinc'd that what *Faech* ſaid was real, gave him *Baktuzun*'s Poſt, and *Baktuzun* the Government of *Karaſon*. *Sabutaquin* dy'd about this time, and great Strife enſu'd between his Sons *Mamud* and *Iſmael* about dividing his Lands and Inheritance, which was decided by the Sword, and *Iſmael* being too weak for *Mamud* fled. Then *Mamud* march'd to *Karaſon*, which was his Government, and finding it poſſeſs'd by *Baktuzun*, on whom the King had conferr'd it, ſent to complain of it by Letter, deſiring it might be reſtor'd to him, who in lieu of it gave him the Government of *Balk*, *Termed* and *Herat*. This did not ſatisfy *Mamud*, but in his Diſcontent he march'd towards *Nixabur*, where the King was, who not daring to ſtand him, fled, without ſtopping, as far as *Cerkas*, which I ſuppoſe to be *Circaſſia*. However *Mamud*, fearing to be look'd upon as a Rebel, turn'd off without ſeeing

Manſur King of Karaſon.

Flies from Mamud.

seeing *Nixabur*. Upon the News hereof *Maktuzun* was come to assist King *Mansur*, whom he met returning after his Flight, and complain'd to *Faech*, that he had not been treated by him with the Honour he expected. *Faech* laying hold of this Opportunity, disclos'd his Mind, telling him what his Intentions were towards *Mansur*, against whom they both conspir'd, and put out his Eyes at an Entertainment, when he had reign'd but one Year and seven Months, and enthroning a younger Brother of his call'd *Abdel Malek*. *Mamud* hearing what had happen'd, march'd against the Traytors, who not daring to oppose him, made away with speed, *Baktusan* for *Nixabur*, the new King with *Faech* for *Bokara*, and *Abul Cazem Siniur* for *Koestam*. Thus *Mamud* remain'd possess'd of all *Karason*, against whom *Baktuzan* and *Faech* join'd their Forces again; but *Faech* dying, the Expedition came to nothing.

His Eyes put out.

Ilechkan, King of *Turon*, or *Turkestan*, hearing of these Troubles, advanc'd with his Army near *Bokara*, whence he sent to acquaint *Abdel Malek*, That he was come thither to assist him. The poor Youth giving Credit to his Words, sent the best Commanders he had to return him Thanks, whom *Ilechkan* secur'd. *Abdel Malek* in a Fright contriv'd to make his Escape, and absconded till a fair Opportunity offer'd. *Ilechkan* march'd up to the City, and took it, order'd the Roads, Gates and Walls to be guarded, and a strict Search being made for *Abdel Malek*, he was found, and sent away to *Uskand*, where he dy'd in close Confinement. His Subjects proclaim'd a younger Brother of his King, but he held it not long.

Ilechkan takes Abdel Malek.

This

This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 398, of CHRIST 1000. An. 1000.

Ilechkan being thus possess'd of *Bokara*, secur'd the blind King *Abul Hares Mansur*, his Brothers *Abu Ebrahem Montecer* and *Abu Yacub*, all Sons of *Nue*, and their two Unkles *Abu Zacharia* and *Abu Saleck*, with others of the Royal Family, all whom he confin'd a-part from one another, where they were attended by *Ilechkan*'s Women Slaves, each of them having one appointed to serve him. She that waited on *Abu Ebrahem Montecer* took a Kindness to him, and resolving to set him at Liberty, cover'd him one Day with her *Chandel*, which is a Cloth us'd by the Women like the Veils in *Spain*, and thus disguis'd she convey'd him out of Prison to a Friends House of hers, where he continu'd conceal'd, till the Search after him was over. Then he departed *Bokara*, and went away to *Koarrazm*, where great Numbers resorted to him, so that he sent an Army to *Bokara*, under the Command of a General call'd *Arsalon Balu*, who coming to a Battel with *Jafar Taquin*, *Ilechkan*'s General, defeated and took him, with many other Persons of Note. *Arsalon Balu* march'd on ravaging the Country, as far as *Litele Cantarcy*, where he was met by *Taquin Kan*, *Ilechkan*'s Governour of *Samarkand*, who was also routed. *Montecer* return'd to *Bokara*, where he had a good Reception. *Ilechkan* soon came against him, and *Arsalon Balu* join'd *Montecer*, both of them passing the River *Gehun*. When they came to *Nixabur*, *Amir Nacer*, the Son of *Mamud*, who was Governour there, abandon'd the Country, and fled to *Herat*, where his Father resided; who understanding what had happen'd, took the

Confines all the Royal Family.

Montacer *escapes.*

Makes War on Ilechkan.

the Field with his Forces, to meet *Montecer*, who not daring to meet him, went off by the way of *Efferaken* to the Dominions of *Kabus*. This Prince sent to receive him with many Presents of great Value, which, if we may believe *Merkand*, were ten Horses, with all their Firniture of Gold, thirty of Silver, and thirty of Silk; thirty Camels loaded with rich Carpets, Brocades, and many other Things of Value; fifty Vests of rich Brocade, and a great Sum of Money, besides Gifts in particular for all his Commanders. *Kabus* had intended to succour him, and advis'd him to go away to the City *Rey*, whither he would send him a considerable Supply, under the Command of his two Sons *Darab* and *Manucher*, to secure that Place. He did so, but then changing his Mind, he went away from *Rey* to *Damion*, and *Darab* and *Manucher* return'd to their Father *Kabus*. This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 391, of CHRIST

An. 1002. 1002.

At this time *Mamud* sent his Son *Amir Nacer*, with a General call'd *Altuntax* to recover *Nixabur*. *Abul Kacem* and *Arsalon Balu* oppos'd him for *Montecer*, but lost the Day.

Various Events of his. *Nacer* took *Nixabur*, *Montecer* fled towards *Iburd*, *Nacer* pursu'd him, and he turn'd back towards *Gerion*. *Kabus* being inform'd of it, and offended at his Incivility towards him, posted 2000 Men in a Pass to obstruct him entring his Dominions. *Montecer* took another way, and upon a small Disgust, put *Arsalon Balu* to Death, which render'd him very odious to all his Men. The War was prosecuted between him and *Nacer* with various Success, till at last he was entirely defeated in a Battel, and having lost most of his Men, as he

as he fled with ſome few Followers, fell into the Hands of the *Turkimans*, that is, the *Turks*, who live in the open Fields and Deſerts with their Cattle, like the *Arabs*, as ſhall be elſewhere more particularly deſcrib'd. They knowing him, as having been in Amity with his Father, entertain'd him courteouſly. He gather'd a good Number of them, and march'd into *Maurenahar*, where *Ilechkan* met him with a conſiderable Army. As they lay incamp'd near one another, the *Turkimans* one Night by Surprize fell upon *Ilechkan*'s Camp, and killing many of his Men, put the reſt to Flight, and return'd to their Hords with the beſt Part of the Booty, about the beginning of the Year 393 of the *Higira*, and of CHRIST 1004. The *Turkimans* being gone back to their Families, *Montecer* croſs'd the River *Gehun*, without Bridge or Boats, becauſe it was frozen over in that cold Seaſon. The *Turkimans*, who had aſſiſted him, repenting that they had left him any Part of the Booty, return'd to take it away, but coming to the River by Day, found it thaw'd, ſo that they could not purſue, and he went off ſafe. One *Abu Jafer*, a mean Fellow, who from being a Highway-Man, was grown up to a Prince, had poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Marwo*. *Montecer* crav'd ſome Aid of him, which he not only refus'd, but oppos'd him. They came to Blows, and *Montecer* routed him. An. 1004.

In his way from thence to *Iburd*, he had another Encounter with *Abu Nacer*, the Governour of that Province, which prov'd very bloody and dangerous, hapning in the Night, but *Abu Nacer* was routed, and kill'd. *Montecer* finding no place of Safety beyond the River, repaſs'd it again, and meeting with the *Schena*, or

or Governour of *Bokara*, lost the most of his Men, and with such as could follow him, he assaulted *Bokara* by Night, and took it. *Ilech Kan* hasted thither immediatly, they met in the Territory of *Samarkand*, fought, and *Ilech Kan* was overthrown, with whose Plunder *Montecer*'s Army was enrich'd. This was in the
An. 1005. Year 394 of the *Hegira*, and of CHRIST 1005. *Ilech Kan* having recruited his Army, advanc'd again towards *Montecer*, and found him when those who had assisted him, were gone, and what was worse, one of his Generals went over to *Ilech Kan* with 4000 Men, which made him despair of being able to stand it, and he fled. Being come to the River *Gehun*, and finding no Possibility of fording it, nor any other Conveniency to cross it, he lay there all that Night, without any other Provision for himself, or Men, but the Beasts that had been kill'd in the Frost. He made several Countermarches to blind the Enemy, till he came to *Koestam*, always pursu'd and hated on Account of the Inconstancy of his Fortune. He came to *Bokara* with very few Followers, most of his Men disgusted having deserted to *Soleymon* and *Safay Ilek Kan's* Generals. The Governour of *Bokara* promis'd to assist him, but he knowing that the aforesaid *Soleymon* and *Safy* were in Pursuit of him, left the City. *Mamud*, who was then Lord of *Karason*, had committed certain Lands to the Custody of *Ebenbayg*, an *Arabian* Commander. *Montecer* enter'd his Liberty, and hid himself in a poor House. *Maruyh*, who was in Search for him, was inform'd of it, attack'd the House at
His Death. Night, with some *Arabs*, and kill'd him. Thus ended the troublesome Life of *Montecer* in the
An. 1006. Year of the *Hegira* 395, of CHRST 1006.

Maha-

Mahamud, tho his Enemy was much concern'd at his Death, and kill'd *Maruyb*, who had ſlain him, with exquiſite Torments.

Kabus Ben Waxmaguir had been peaceably poſſeſs'd of his Lands, in the Province of *Karaſon*, eighteen Years. He was deſcended from the ancient Kings of *Perſia*, and the only Man that had no ſhare in the late Troubles; for being diſcreet and rich, he ſo manag'd his Affairs, that by Dexterity and Preſents he gain'd the Affections of thoſe whoſe Ambition ſpar'd no Man. *Amir Sabutaquin*, after defeating *Aboaly* in *Karaſon*, came to *Bokara*, where he contracted ſtrict Friendſhip with *Kabus*, whom he was very deſirous to ſerve and oblige. *Fakoro Daule*, as has been ſaid, was Lord of *Gerion*, him *Sabutaquin* reſolv'd to diſpoſſeſs, in order to ſettle *Kabus* in that Government. To this purpoſe he borrow'd 10000 Men of *Ilech Kan*, which with his own Troops would have form'd a conſiderable Army, and he mov'd to expect them at *Balk*, but before they could come, Death ſnatch'd him away. *Fakoro Daule* dy'd alſo, and left his Son *Mayndu Daule* to ſucceed him, under the Tuition of his Mother *Sayda*, as was ſaid before. *Abul Kacem* reſided at *Kumes*, and upon the Death of *Sabutaquin* took part with *Kabus*, with whom he agreed to conquer the Lands of the deceas'd *Fakoro Daule*, and to divide them between themſelves. They invaded the Country two ſeveral ways. *Kabus* advanc'd to *Nixabur*, whence he detatch'd *Sfabed Scharear*, one of his Commanders, who meeting with *Roſtam Marzabah*, Uncle to *Daule*, that was marching with his Forces to defend the Frontiers of *Gerion*, fought with and routed him. By this Victory he not only got a great Booty, but reduc'd a

Kabus deſcended from the Kings of Perſia.

Invades Gerion.

considerable Parts of the Province under the Obedience of *Kabus*; and they possess'd themselves of *Amal*, a Place of Consequence in the Province of *Tabarstam*. *Acen Feruzan* advancing to recover this Place, those who were in it, with *Sfabed Scharear*, gave him Battel, which he lost, and was made Prisoner, with 20 more of his Commanders. These Successes put *Kabus* in Hopes of greater, and therefore to lose no Time, march'd immediately into *Gerion*, where he was proclaim'd King, in the Year of the *Hegira* 400, of CHRIST 1011. He had afterwards some Rencounters with the Enemy, but was always so fortunate, that he reduc'd all *Gueylon*, a very large Province, where he plac'd his Son *Manucher* Governour, sending mighty Presents to *Mamud*; by that means to secure himself the better in his new acquir'd Dominions. *Kabus* valu'd himself so much upon doing impartial Justice, and was so rigorous in the Execution of it, that tho' he had been before much belov'd, he came to be hated for Cruelty, and his People resolving to endure him no longer, some rush'd into his Tent, in the Camp, whom he with much Difficulty escap'd, and made his Way to *Bostam*; whilst they, venting their Spleen on the Tent, plunder'd all they found in it, which was of a considerable Value. Next they sent for *Manucher*, the Son of *Kabus*, who was Governour of *Gueylon*, offering to enthrone him, upon Condition he should neither revenge the Wrong done to his Father, nor any way aid him against them. *Munucher* would have accepted, provided his Father consented, but requir'd his Leave first, which they would not agree to, and he preferring his Duty to his Father before the Crown, left them and went away

Is proclaim'd King. An. 1011.

Dutifulness of his Son.

to

to his Father; who having Regard to the Dutifulneſs of his Son, would not permit him to continue in his Service as he deſir'd, but ſent him back, reſigning up the Crown and all the Right he had to it. Thus *Manucher* was put into Poſſeſſion of the Throne, with the Approbation of all Men, and *Kabus* retir'd to live in the Fortreſs of *Kaſchek*, where the People of *Gerion*, fearing he might whilſt living do them ſome Harm, murder'd him; *Manucher* at that Time being ignorant who the Aſſaſſines were, tho afterwards he diſcover'd it, and made Examples of them. *His Death.*

Manucher, the Son of *Kabus*, otherwiſe call'd *Malech Almaly*, being poſſeſs'd of the Lands his Father had enjoy'd in the Provinces of *Gerion* and *Gueylon*, where *Maydu Daule* had ſtill a good Share, ſent Embaſſadors to *Sultan Mamud*, to put himſelf under his Subjection, paying 50000 *Dinares* a Year, which amounts to about 70000 Ducats. *Mamud* gave him one of his Daughters to Wife, but ſoon after the Wedding *Manucher* dy'd, leaving his Crown to his Brother *Darab*. Manucher *Son of* Kabus *King.*

Darab the Son of *Kabus* and Brother to *Manucher*, was concern'd, as has been ſaid, in the Troubles that hapned between *Nue* and *Boaly*, ſiding at firſt with the latter, tho' afterwards he went over to *Nue*, upon whoſe Death he poſſeſs'd himſelf of his Part of the Kingdom of *Gerion*, and went to ſerve his Father, who ſent him to *Tabarſtam* to ſecure his Poſſeſſions there. Some Miſdemeanours in that Government being laid to his Charge, he clear'd himſelf before his Father, but taking Offence that he had been accus'd, he went away to *Mamud*, who receiv'd and entertain'd him honourably; yet he by his ill Behaviour loſt *Mamud*'s *His Brother* Darab *ſucceeds him.*

Favour, and being ſenſible of it, ſtole away to *Schaſchar*, King of *Gurgeſtam*, who at the Requeſt of *Mamud* ſent him back. At laſt he ſucceeded his Brother in the Throne, where he ſat not long.

Here *Mirkond* inſerts all the Exploits of *Sabutaquin* in *India*, which I omit, as not properly belonging to this Hiſtory, tho' I ſhall briefly recount the Actions of his Son *Mamud* in thoſe Parts; between whom and his Brother *Iſmael*, upon their Father's Death, there enſu'd much Strife, which was decided by the Sword, as was ſaid above. *Iſmael* being defeated, fled, and *Mamud* having ſetled perpetual Amity with *Ilech Kam*, made ſeveral Invaſions, as his Father had done, into *India*, where the great Victories he obtain'd, and the Booties he carry'd off, made him powerful and terrible. However, *Ilech Kam* not regarding the Friendſhip that had been contracted between them, took the Opportunity of his Abſence once, to invade his Country, ſending his Kinſman *Jafar Taquin* with Forces to *Balk*. *Arſalon Balu* had the Government of *Herat* and all *Gaznehen*, as far as *Bagon*, which are large Provinces, under *Mamud*. The Garriſons of theſe Places oppos'd *Ilech Ham* and *Jafar Taquin*. At the ſame Time *Mamud* being inform'd of this Breach, left the War he was engag'd in with *India*, and return'd with all poſſible Speed to *Karaſon*. He advanc'd towards *Jafar Taquin*, who broke up his Siege from before *Balk* and retir'd. *Mamud* ſent *Arſalon Balu* after him, but *Taquin* went away into the Province of *Maurenahar*. *Moeen Ben Tak*, one of *Mamud*'s Commanders met him in *Serkas*, but was defeated and kill'd by *Taquin*, whom *Arſalon Balu* ſtill purſu'd, till being attack'd by the People of *Gueylon*, he was by

Actions in Karaſon *and* Maurenahar.

Mamud *King there.*

by them overthrown, and eſcap'd with a few Followers to *Marwo*, where *Mamud* expected him; who underſtanding which Way *Taquin* had taken, purſu'd him, marching his Army ſeveral Ways, that they might not miſs of him. *Abu Abdalu*, an *Arab* and one of his Commanders met and routed him. *Taquin* having loſt a Brother and ſeveral Kinſmen, and Perſons of Note, that were taken Priſoners, with thoſe few that could eſcape, paſs'd the River *Gehun*, and joyn'd *Ileck Kam*, who was much concern'd at this Loſs, and being himſelf unable to begin a new War, begg'd the Aſſiſtance of *Kader Kan*, King of *Ketao Kotan*, which we call *Cathay*, who complying with his Requeſt, rais'd a numerous Army in *Ketao Kotan*, *Turkeſtan* and *Maurenahar*, and having joyn'd *Ileck Kan*, they paſs'd the River *Gehun*. *Mamud* hearing of theſe mighty Preparations, went away from *Tabarſtam*, where he then was, to *Balk*, and march'd thence with a noble Army of *Turks*, *Colanys*, *Gazneys* and *Avegarys* to meet his Enemies. They came to a Battel, and *Mamud*'s Forces began to give way, which he obſerving, almoſt in Deſpair, ruſh'd into the thickeſt of the Enemies, making a mighty Slaughter, and met with *Ileck Kan*, whom his Elephant toſs'd up into the Air. Then *Mamud*'s Men took Courage again, and preſſing upon their Enemies, put them to Flight. This was one of the moſt bloody Battels that was fought in that Age, and hapned in the Year of the *Hegira* 397, of CHRIST 1008.

He defeats Ileck Kan.

An. 1008.

This Victory enabled *Sultan Mamud* to proceed in the Performance of his Vow, which was to undertake an Expedition yearly, either in Perſon or by his Generals into *India*, to convert thoſe Heathens to his Sect. Being

His Actions in India.

now at Leiſure, he march'd himſelf, and was met by *Bal*, one of the Kings of thoſe Parts, with a numerous Army. The Fight laſted a whole Day, and at length *Mamud* obtain'd a compleat Victory over the *Indians*, who leaving behind a rich Booty, and 40 warlike Elephants, retir'd to a Fortreſs, that was look'd upon as impregnable, as being ſeated in the midſt of a ſpacious and deep Lake, where they had laid up all the Wealth and Treaſure of their Pagods, or Idol Temples, which was ineſtimable. *Mamud* beſieg'd them, Proviſions fell ſhort, they ſurrender'd, and *Mamud* entering the Place, took all the Booty, which according to *Mirkond*, was ſeven Millions of *Drachmas* of Gold; 700 Mans of Gold in Ingots, which is 2800 Marks, at 8 Ounces a Mark; a great Quantity of Pearls and precious Stones, and many other things of great Value, all laid up in a Houſe where that Treaſure was ſecur'd. *Mamud* return'd with this Booty, and what he found in other Places, to *Gaznehen*, leaving truſty Perſons to ſecure the Provinces he had conquer'd in *India*. This was in the Year of the *Hegira* 400, of CHRIST 1011. The next Year he made another Expedition, penetrating as far as the Lands of the *Gaoſes*, which is *Guzarat*, *Mahamed Ben Sury*, General of the *Banеans*, offer'd to make good a Paſs againſt him, but was routed, and a Son of his taken, who rather than continue in Captivity, made away with himſelf, taking ſome Poiſon carry'd in a Bracelet.

An. 1011.

There happen'd a great and general Famine at this time in the Country of *Karaſon*, wherein ſeveral Mothers eat their own Children, and Men and Women devour'd one another, without regard to Age, Sex, or Condition. *Nechkan*, after loſing the mighty Battel above ſpoken

Dreadful Famine.

ſpoken of, was gone into *Maurenahar*, and underſtanding that his own Brother *Togan Kan*, who had been with him in that Fight, had ſent to make his Excuſe to *Mamud*, he march'd againſt him; but *Mamud* interpoſing, they were reconcil'd. *Mamud* having compos'd theſe Troubles, march'd to *Bagdat*, and laid cloſe Siege to it. The Calif *Kader Bila* was in the City, who ſeeing no Poſſibility of making a Defence, ſurrender'd, and ſatisfying him with five Millions of *Drachmas*, every *Drachma* is a Royal Plate, or Six-pence, *Mamud* left him, and return'd to *Perſia*. *Schiror Abu Nacer*, the Son of *Abu Mahamed*, was poſſeſs'd of the Lands of *Gurgeſtam* ever ſince the Days of *Nue*, the Son of *Manſur*, having had the Government deliver'd up to him, when he was come to Age, by his Father, who retir'd to lead a private Life. When *Aboaly* rebell'd againſt *Nue*, he invaded *Schaſchar*, and drove him out of his Province, and *Amir Sabutaquin*, Father to *Sultan Mamud*, receiv'd him into his Service, and having afterwards poſſeſs'd himſelf of thoſe Lands, reſtor'd him to them. *Abu Mahamud* afterwards ſerv'd *Mamud*, who rewarded him with confirming the Kingdom to him, and many other Favours. *Mamud* was about marching into *India*, and would have taken *Abu Mahamud* with him, who excus'd himſelf; *Mamud* took no Notice of it then, but after his Return ſent *Altun Tax* and *Arſalon Balu* againſt him; the Father had Recourſe to him, whom *Mamud* treated very honourably, and ſent him away to *Bagdat*, but depriv'd his Son of the Kingdom. He withdrawing into a Fortreſs, was there taken, and put to the Rack, to oblige him to diſcover a mighty Treaſure he was reported to have; then carry'd to *Mamud*, who

Mamud *takes* Bagdat.

again caus'd him to be cruelly scourg'd, and cast into Prison. He sent for the Father from *Bagdat*, and giving him the Value of all the Possessions he had in *Gurgestam*, remov'd him to *Gaznehen*, where he gave him better Lands to live on near his Person, and there continu'd till the Year of the *Hegira* 406, of
An. 1016. CHRIST 1016, when he dy'd.

Mamud having settled his Affairs at home, went again into *India*, where he gain'd mighty Victories, and took an immense Booty. At this time dy'd *Maman Koarrazin Scha*, and left his Son *Aboaly* to succeed him. This
His other Expeditions. Prince marry'd one of *Mamud*'s Sisters, by which he gain'd his Friendship, and enjoy'd Peace the short time he liv'd; but after his Death, his Dominions fell to his Brother *Maman Ben Maman*, who soon after dy'd suddenly, not without suspicion of Poison, suppos'd to have been given him by one of his Commanders, call'd *Nealataquin*. A Son of his succeeded him; but *Mamud* being concern'd at his Death, and resolv'd to revenge it, march'd his Army into *Korrazon*. *Nealataquin* attack'd him one Morning at break of Day by Surprize, with such Vigour, that the Event was long doubtful; but at length *Mamud* obtain'd the Victory. *Nealataqain* in his Flight would have cross'd a River, and quarrelling with the Owner of the Boat, because he went too slow, he knew him, and being imboldned by his Condition, with the Help of his Comrades, bound and deliver'd him to *Mamud*, who was well enough inclin'd to have pardon'd him, but for his Insolence and Disrespect to his Person, caus'd him to be hang'd, bestowing the Government of *Korazon* on *Altuntax*. *Mamud*, after this, march'd

again

again into *India*, where he gain'd a notable Victory over *Gulkand*, a Heathen King, who being thus vanquiſh'd with the Loſs of 50000 Men, rather than a beautiful Wife he was extreamly fond of, ſhould fall into the Hands of his Enemy, he kill'd her firſt, and himſelf after: *Mamud* made other Expeditions into *India*, where he overcame the Kings *Gipal* and *Tandebal*, taking a mighty Booty, which *Mirkond* gives an Account of at large; and I forbear, to obſerve my uſual Brevity. *Mamud* returning to *Gaznehen*, built a ſtately Moſque, as a Thankſgiving for his many Victories, and then entring *Perſia*, poſſeſs'd himſelf of the Cities *Rey* and *Iſpahan* in *Hyerack*, both which, as has been ſaid, belong'd to *Main du Daule*, leaving his Son *Maſud* Governour there, and having been himſelf two Years in a ſickly Condition, dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 421, of CHRIST 1031. Two Days before his Deceaſe, he caus'd all that was moſt valuable in his Treaſures to be brought before him, and looking on it wept; but as he ſaid nothing, it is not known what Motive he had; but in regard he order'd all to be carefully laid up again, it is ſuppos'd it was for Grief that he could no longer enjoy that Wealth. Being at the Point of Death, he ſent for his youngeſt Son, who it is likely was of a Warlike Diſpoſition, and deſir'd he would promiſe, *That after his Death, he would carry himſelf lovingly towards his Brothers, and pay due Reſpect to the Eldeſt.* The young Man anſwer'd, *He needed not to be concern'd, for he would behave himſelf towards them, as he would have done himſelf towards his own.*

His Death. An. 1031.

Whilſt theſe Things happen'd in the Provinces of *Karaſon*, *Maurenahar* and *Uzbek*, the Affairs

Affairs of *Perſia* were in no better Condition; *Magidu Daule*, the Account of whom we will now bring to a Concluſion, being King of *Gerion*, was ſlothful and negligent in his Government. *Mamud*, we have juſt now been ſpeaking of, would not let ſlip that Opportunity, but ſent a General with a conſiderable Army againſt him, to whom *Magidu Daule* ſubmitted, without ſtriking a Stroke, and put himſelf into his Hands, not queſtioning, but that ſince he had no way offended *Mamud*, he would not deprive him of his Kingdom; but he was deceiv'd, for as ſoon as ever *Mamud* was inform'd that he and his Son *Abuzcif* were taken, he repair'd to the City *Rey*, and making Search for *Magidu*'s Treaſure, found a Million of *Dinares* in Gold, which is almoſt a Million and half of Ducats, and the Value of five hundred thouſand *Dinares* in Jewels, beſides a great Quantity of Gold and Silver Plate, and other Things of much Value. *Mamud* caus'd *Magidudaule* to be brought before him, and ask'd him, *Whether he had read* Schanoma, *which is the Chronicle of the Kings?* He anſwer'd, *He had.* Then *Mamud* ask'd, *Whether he could play at Cheſs?* He ſaid, *He could*; and *Mamud* proceeded, *Tell me then, Did you ever read in the Book, that two Kings ever reign'd together in one Kingdom? Or did you ever ſee at Cheſs two Kings upon one Checker? Maindu* anſwering in the Negative, *Mamud* rebuk'd him ſeverely, ſending him, his Son, and his *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, to *Gazneben*. Here *Mamud* found a noble Library, which he order'd to be carry'd to *Karaſon*, whither he went himſelf, leaving his Son *Maſud* at *Rey*, as has been ſaid.

Magidu Daule unthron'd.

We gave an Account before, how *Babao Daule* dying in the Country of *Ariam*, his Son *Sul-*

Sultan Daule succeeded him, who sent his Brother *Gebela Daule* to *Xiras*, and another call'd *Abul Favares* to *Kermon*. This last rebell'd, and gathering a mighty Army, mark'd to *Schiras*, which he possess'd himself of, with other Lands, his Brothers being then absent; but *Sultan Daule* being inform'd of it hasted thither. *Abul Favares* not daring to encounter him, retir'd to *Kermon*. *Sultan* pursu'd, and he abandon'd that Country, and went away into *Karason*, to *Hyamin Daule Hamud*, who gave him a favourable Reception, and some time after sent one *Aby Said Tabi*, and a sufficient Force with him, to invade *Hyerak*. They took *Kermon*, and proceeding thence into *Persia*, made themselves Masters of *Schiras*. *Sultan Daule* was then at *Bagdat*; and upon the Receipt of this News, gathering what Forces he could, advanc'd towards *Schiras*. *Abul Favares* fled to *Kermon*, and thence to *Amadam*, the Government of *Schams Daule*, the Son of *Fakero Daule*; and thence again to *Fakkey*, in the Dominions of *Mazabu Daule*, who treated him honourably. *Gelala Daule*, Brother to *Sultan Daule* and *Abul Favares*, was at this time in *Bazora*, and writ to the latter very affectionately, desiring he would go to him, and they should both enjoy what he had. An Accommodation was now propos'd and concluded with restoring of *Kermon* to *Abul Favares* in the Year of the *Hegira* 409, of CHRIST 1019. *Acem Ben Bakar Daule* was possess'd of some Lands in *Diarbeck*, and held private Intelligence with one of *Sultan*'s Prime Commanders, which being discover'd, could not be disappointed, without coming to Blows; yet, after several Encounters, they agreed, That *Moxaraf Daule* should continue Governour

Troubles in Persia and Kermon.

An. 1019.

nour of the Lands of *Hyerak* in *Arabia*, and *Sultan Daule* remain poſſeſs'd of *Awaz* and *Perſia*. When they were both withdrawn to their Governments, *Sultan Daule* ſent *Eben Salah*, with a good Army to invade *Moxaraf Daule*, who met him with few, but Veteran Troops, and routed him. *Eben Salah* in his Flight took up in a Fortreſs, where he was ſo cloſely beſieg'd by *Moxaraf Daule*, that after devouring Rats, and all other loathſome Vermine, he and his Garriſon were oblig'd to ſurrender, upon no other Terms than to have their Lives ſpar'd. This Victory ſunk the Reputation of *Sultan Daule* very low, and *Moxaraf Daule* was ſo much puff'd up with it, that he took the Title of *Schachan Scha*, which is as much as King of Kings. This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 411 of CHRIST

An. 1021. 1021.

The next Year *Moxaraf* joining with *Gelala Daule*, he ſecur'd *Eben Salah*, and put out his Eyes. At the ſame time *Gelala Daule* was declar'd King of *Bagdat*, and *Abuyaleb* his *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, being a Pickthank, and ill natur'd, tho' naturally Warlike, was kill'd by his Soldiers, upon whoſe Death, by the Mediation of *Abul Ganiar*, the Son of *Sultan Daule*, there was a new Accommodation concluded between him and *Moxaraf Daule*, in the

An. 1023. Sultan Daule *dies.* the Year of the *Hegira* 413, of CHRIST 1023; *Sultan* remaining poſſeſs'd of *Perſia* and *Kermon*, and *Moxaraf* of *Hyerak* in *Arabia*. Two Years after *Sultan Daule* dy'd at *Schyraz*.

His Son *Abul Ganiar* was then at *Awas*, and had Advice ſent him by *Abu Mokarram*, one of his Fathers Prime Commanders, with ſome Troops to attend him on the Road. But the *Turks*, or *Turkymans*, for they are the ſame, who

who were ſettled at *Schiraz* and in *Perſia*, call'd in *Abul Favares*, Brother to *Sultan*, who was then in *Kermon*, who loſt no time, but haſted thither with ſuch Expedition, that he was there before his Nephew had made any Motion, and as ſoon as arriv'd, caus'd *Eben Mokarram* to be ſecur'd. *Abul Gamar* perceiving how the Affairs ſtood, rais'd Forces, and putting them under the Command of *Abul Kacem*, the Son of *Mokarram*, ſent him to *Schyraz*, and follow'd himſelf, with all the Troops he could draw together. *Abul Favares* abandon'd that Province, and fled to *Kermon*. *Abul Gamia* entring *Schiraz*, there enſu'd other, no leſs dangerous, Commotions. Some were for making War on *Abul Favares*, others were more inclin'd to Peace. Beſides, the Soldiers demanded their Pay, and ſome Bounty over and above of the new King. There was no Money, and the King was a Youth, and unus'd to ſuch Exigences. To avoid Trouble and Uneaſineſs, he went away to *Noabandian*, where abundance of his Men dy'd, through the exceſſive Heat, which oblig'd him to remove from thence to *Schabo* and *Baſto*. *Abul Favares*'s Followers, who had been left at *Schiras*, ſent for him, and he returning, was proclaim'd King. He preſently march'd his Army againſt his Nephew, with whom he agreed, before any Engagement, granting him the Sovereignty of the Lands of *Awaz*, and keeping *Perſia* to himſelf. The Friends of *Abul Ganiar*, who were in *Schyraz*, and other Parts of *Perſia*, ſeeing *Abul Favares* left in Poſſeſſion of it, went away to *Awaz*, and being numerous, encourag'd the Youth to have Recourſe to Arms again. He advanc'd againſt

Abul Ganiar, *King of* Persia. An. 1026.

against his Unkle, and after several Incounters with him, *Abul Favares* proving unsuccessful abandon'd *Schyraz*, which his Nephew enter'd, and was again saluted King of *Persia*; of whom we shall soon speak again.

In the Year of the *Hegira* 416, of CHRIST 1026, *Moxarat Daule* dy'd at *Bagdat*, aged 23 Years and some Months, when he had reign'd 5 Years and 25 Days. On his Death, *Galala Daule* was call'd from *Bassora*, to succeed him; but he not coming so soon as he should have done, the Government was bestow'd on another; which he resenting, march'd against *Bagdat*. The Calif *Kader* endeavour'd to appease him with fair Words and Intreaties, which failing, they came to the Decision of the Sword. *Gelala* being at length totally routed, fled to *Bassora*, with the Loss of many Men, and a considerable Booty. The next Year a great Multitude of *Turks* came down upon *Bagdat*, which they took without any great Opposition, then plunder'd and set fire to it, which consum'd the greatest and best part of it. This done, to secure themselves against the *Curdes* and *Arabs* inhabiting that Country, they call'd *Gelala Daule* from *Bassora* to be King of *Bagdat*; and upon his Arrival, and going to *Kader*, the Calif's House, to kiss his Foot, was by him courteously receiv'd. In the Year of the *Hegira* 419, of CHRIST 1029, the *Turks* and other Soldiers demanding their Pay, and none being given them, they broke into the House of *Aboaly Ben Makula*, *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, to *Gelala*, which they plunder'd, carrying away all they found in it, which was of no small Value. *Gelala* coming to oppose the Mutiny, was by them confin'd to a House, whence they suffer'd him not to depart

Gelala Daule, *King of* Bagdat.

An. 1029.

part, till the Calif undertook they ſhould be paid, which he perform'd himſelf, ſelling for that Purpoſe all he had of any Value.

At this time, as was ſaid above, *Mamud Gazneky* was marching towards the City *Rey*, to poſſeſs himſelf of it, as he did, and deſign'd to do by all *Perſia*. *Abul Ganiar* writ to his Unkle *Gelala Daule*, telling him, *That it was the time for them to unite, and jointly oppoſe the Enemy, who was invading their Dominions*. *Gelala* was ſo far from complying, that he rais'd Forces, and enter'd *Awaz*, plundering it, and carrying away a conſiderable Sum of Money out of his Nephew's Treaſuries. At this time there happen'd much Diſcord at *Baſſora*, between the *Turks* and the People of *Dialema*. *Malek Aziz*, Son to *Abu Manſur*, and Grandſon to *Gelala Daule*, of whom we are ſpeaking, favour'd the *Turkiſh* Party, which diſguſting the People of *Dialema*, they went over to *Ile*, and the War continu'd between them. *Abul Ganiar* was at *Awaz*, and taking Advantage of theſe Troubles, march'd his Army to *Baſſora*, and took it. Thence he proceeded to *Wacet*, where all the Wealth of *Gelala Daule*'s Kindred and Followers fell into his Hands, and *Gelala* thinking to have march'd to prevent it, his Troops would not move without their Pay. He wanted Money, and upon that Exigency, would have made uſe of the richeſt Inhabitants of *Bagdat*, deſiring to borrow it of them, which drew upon him the general Diſlike of the People. *Abul Favares* was ſtill in *Kermon*, and perceiving that all Things were in Confuſion, rais'd Forces to invade *Perſia*, but dy'd by the Way; whereupon all the great Men of *Kermon*, by unanimous Conſent, call'd in *Abul Garni-*

Garnia, and conferr'd the Government on him; and thus he became King of *Perſia* and *Kermon*. He immediately drew together a conſiderable Army, and advanc'd towards *Bagdat*. *Gelala Daule* met him, they fought obſtinately; *Abul Ganiar* was defeated, and fled to *Awaz*, having loſt abundance of Men. *Gelala Daule* left ſufficient Garriſons at *Wacet*, and return'd to *Bagdat* in the Year of the
An. 1032. *Hegira* 422, of CHRIST 1032. At the ſame time dy'd the Calif *Kader*, when he had been ſo 41 Years and 4 Months.

CHAP. XLI.

Kahem, *or* Alkahem Beamaryla Abu Jafar Abdula, 47*th* Calif.

Kahem, or *Alkahem Beamaryla Abu Jafar Abdula*, the Son of *Kader*, ſucceeded his Father in the Califſhip, in as troubleſome Times as there had been before. Holding on to our uſual Method, we will return to *Karaſon*, where we left *Sultan Mamud Gaznebi* newly dead, and his Son *Muhamed* enthron'd in his Place. He had, among others, a Brother call'd *Maſud*, to whom his Father, before his Death, as has been ſaid, had committed the Government of *Rey* and *Iſpahan*. This Man hearing of his Father's Death, and his Brother's Advancement to the Throne, drew out his Forces and march'd towards *Karaſon*. The People of *Iſaphan*, who hated him for his Cruelty, as ſoon as he had turn'd his Back, rebell'd, and put the Garriſon to the Sword. *Maſud* return'd, laid Siege to the City,

Mahamed *reigns in* Karaſon.

City, enter'd it, puniſh'd the Ringleaders of the Revolt, and leaving a double Gariſon, march'd again towards *Karaſon*; by the way writing to his Brother, that he was going only to viſit, and ſerve him, for he had Lands ſufficient to maintain him. *Mahamed* was not at all pleas'd with *Maſud's* Compliment, and ſent to deſire he would ſave himſelf that Trouble, and return home. *Maſud* took this as a Pretence to be offended, for a leſs Motive would have ſerv'd him, and accordingly he declar'd againſt *Mahamed*, whom many Perſons often advis'd to be reconcil'd to his Brother; but he not regarding their Advice, ſent one *Iſſuf Sabutaquin* againſt him, and follow'd himſelf with all the Forces he could raiſe. He ſtay'd at *Tangarabat* a whole Month, to keep the *Ramadan*, which is their Time of Faſting, like our Lent. About the latter End of it, *Maſud* came up unexpected and beſieg'd him. Not long after, by the Treachery of his Unkle *Iſſuf Sabutaquin*, and one *Amir Aly*, a conſiderable Man, *Mahamed* was ſeiz'd and deliver'd up to *Maſud*; who having ſecur'd him, puniſh'd the Traytors as they deſerv'd, caſting the Unkle, loaded with Irons, into a Dungeon, and hanging *Amir*. This done, he advanc'd to *Gaznehen*, taking his Brother *Mahamed* along with him, whoſe Eyes he there cauſed to be put out; thus remaining poſſeſs'd of the Kingdoms of *Karaſon* and *Gaznehen*, beſides *Hyerak*, which his Father had given him, the Government whereof he beſtow'd on *Abuſalem Hamduny*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 422, of CHRIST 1032. His Unkle *Aladaule Ben Kakuya*, Brother to his Mother, whoſe Daughter he took to Wife, was made Governour of *Iſpahan*, with Orders to be aſſiſting, as far as he could, to *Abuzale*. *Hamed Ben Ocem Maſſoud* was made his *Wazir*, or *Vi-*

Traytors well rewarded.

An. 1032. *Maſud blinds and depoſes Mahamed.*

zier. The following Year he ſent *Altuntax*, Governour of *Koarrazm* againſt *Aly Taquin*, who had poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Samarcand* and *Bokara*: *Altuntax* ſet out by the Way of *Hamuyhe*, reducing all Parts that had revolted. Being come to *Samarkand*, *Aly Tarquin* met him with his Army, they ingag'd, *Altuntax* was hard ſet by reaſon of an Ambuſh *Taquin* had laid for him; yet he obtain'd the Victory, which coſt him beſides the Loſs of many Men, his own Life, and he perceiving it to draw to an End, caus'd his Troops to come to an Accommodation with the Enemy, to ſecure them from any Danger after his Death, which hapned the next Day. *Maſud* was much concern'd at it, and gave his Poſt to his Son *Aron Ben Almatax*.

Rebellion in Perſia *and* India.

In the Year of the *Hegira* 424, of CHRIST 1034, the Territories of *Gibal* and *Rey* in *Perſia*, rebell'd againſt *Maſud*, as did the Garriſons left by his Father in *India*. At this time dy'd his *Wazir* or *Vizier Hamed Rea Ocem*, a Man of great Wiſdom and Conduct, whoſe Place was given to *Abu Nacer Hamed*, *Wazir* or *Vizier* to *Altunta*, who was in *Koarrazm*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 426, of CHRIST 1036, he march'd with his Army to *Geriom* and *Tabarſtam*, which he ſubdu'd. During his Abſence, two *Turkiſh* Commanders, call'd *Togorek*, or *Togozelbek*, and *Jakarbek Salinguis* had made ſome Commotion, but ſat ſtill upon his Return. *Maſud* made ready to enter *India*, contrary to the Advice of all his Council, becauſe the Affairs of the *Turks* were not yet thoroughly ſetled. They upon his Abſence, began to make In-roads barefac'd, throughout all the Country from *Karaſon* to *Perſia*, with ſo much Succeſs, that they oblig'd *Alao Daule Ben Kakuya* and *Abuſale*, to abandon their Governments

vernments with Precipitation, leaving them that Kingdom, which they poſſeſs'd themſelves of, with other adjacent Parts of *Perſia*. During theſe Troubles *Abul Ganiar* poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Tabarſtam*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 428, of CHRIST 1038. By this Time *Maſud* return'd from his *Indian* Expedition, and two Years after ſet out again from *Gazneben* towards *Geriom*. By the way he was inform'd, that a Robber, who committed many Outrages on the Roads, ſhelter'd himſelf with 100 Companions in a Fortreſs near by. He drew them out with a Safe-conduct, but as ſoon as brought before him, caus'd them all to be hang'd, alledging, that ſuch Criminals ought to be brought to condign Puniſhment by any Means whatſoever. As he proceeded on his March, ſome Towns complain'd to him, that *Nur Taquin*, Governour of *Balk*, oppreſs'd them with Tyranny and Extortions. He mov'd towards him with very much Difficulty, becauſe it was Winter and froze hard, and when he had advanc'd about half way was inform'd, that one *Daud Saliuk*, a *Turkiſh* Commander, was marching to *Balk* with conſiderable Forces, to aſſiſt *Nur Taquin*. *Maſud* being unwilling to leave any Enemy behind, turn'd back againſt *Daud*. *Nur Taquin* having notice of this Counter-march, fell upon his Rear, and killing many of his Men, took moſt of his Baggage. *Maſſud* thus roughly handled, held on his Way till he met with *Daud Saliuk*, by whom he was overthrown, and fled to *Gazneben*, where he put to Death many of the *Turks* that ſerv'd under him, becauſe they had miſsbehav'd themſelves in the Battel, and then ſent away to *Balk* his Son *Mandud*, attended by *Abu Nacer Hamed* his *Wazir* or *Vizier*, with a conſiderable

ſiderable number of Troops. He himſelf taking along his blind Brother and Sons, went away to *India*. Being come to the Bank of the River *Send*, which the *Perſians* call *Pang Ab*, and is the *Indus*, he and his Favourites paſs'd over to rights, leaving his blind Brother, with the Treaſure on this Side, under the Direction of a Commander call'd *Muſſaquin*, who looking upon that as a favourable Opportunity, fell with his Men upon the Treaſure, and dividing it among themſelves, declar'd the blind Man King; he at firſt refuſing, but afterwards conſented for Fear of Death, wherewith they threatned him, if he did not comply. With him they paſs'd the River, the reſt of the Army, ſubmitting to him, and ſecuring *Maſud*, deliver'd him up to him; of whom he took no other Revenge, than to deſire he would be ſatisfy'd to live quietly in any Place, which *Maſud* agreed to, praying it might be in the Fortreſs of *Kobrakebir*, which was granted him with a good Guard. At Parting *Maſud* ask'd his Brother to give him ſome Money to ſpend by the Way, and he, being very covetous, order'd him 500 *Drachms*, which are but five hundred ſingle Royals, or about 12 Pounds ten Shillings. *Maſud* was much concern'd at it, but the Perſon who was to deliver it, gave him of his own 1500 *Dinares* in Gold, amounting to near 2000 Ducats, which was afterwards well repaid. King *Mahamed* being ſenſible of his Incapacity for Government, becauſe of his Blindneſs, put it into the Hands of his Son *Hamed*, who by the Advice of a Son of *Iſſuf Taquin*, and another of *Amir Aly Kaxavand*, whoſe Fathers *Maſſud* had put to Death, for their Treachery, towards the blind Man, went away privately to *Kobra-Kebir*, and murder'd him, when he

Mahamed *the Blind enthron'd again.*

His Avarice.

Maſud *murder'd.*

he had reign'd ten Years, having been a brave and generous Prince. His Son *Maedud* had been left at *Balk*, where being inform'd of his Father's Misfortune, and *Mahamed*'s Return from *India*, he march'd to meet him in *Gaznehen*, with a well disciplin'd Army. They met, and fought, *Mahamed* was routed and taken, with his Son *Hamed*, the two Advisers of *Maesud*'s Murder and many more Courtiers, who were all immediatly put to Death, except one *Abderrayn*, Son to the blind Man, whom *Maodud* pardon'd, because he having gone with his Brother *Abderramon*, to visit their Unkle *Masud*, when Prisoner, they found him with a *Tage* or Crown on his Head, which *Abderraman* snatch'd off and cast on the Ground, with much Passion and Contempt. *Abderrayn* blam'd him much for so doing, and taking up the *Tage* or Diadem, put it again on his Unkle's Head with Expressions full of Compassion. *Maedud* was inform'd of this Merciful Action, and was now mindful of it to requite him. *Maedud* caus'd a magnificent Structure to be erected on the Ground where he gain'd this Victory, and call'd it *Fat Habad*, signifying in the Language of *Karason*, the Place where I gain'd. The Death of *Masud* occasion'd new Commotions throughout all the Dominions of *Persia* and *India*, whence *Maedud* apprehended some Disturbance from his Brother *Maiudud*, who was there preparing for it, but dy'd suddenly by the Way, by which Means *Maurenahar* and that Part of *India* fell to *Maedud*. However the *Salinqui Turks* inhabiting *Maurenahar* and *Karason* would not own him. He sent an Army against them in the Year of the *Hegira* 435, of CHRIST 1045, which was met by *Olob Arsalom*, the Son of *Jakarbek*, with a considerable Force, who overthrew *Maodud*'s

Compassion requited.

Maodud *succeeds* Mahomed

An. 1045.

Troops. On the other Side, great Numbers of *Turks* breaking out of *Turkestam*, into the Lands of *Gaomacer* and *Kandachar* to plunder, were entirely routed by *Maedud*'s Garrisons, which drew together to oppose them. At this Time, all the Kings in *India* that were subject to *Maedud*, revolted, and confederating together, laid Siege to *Lahor*. *Maedud* sent Relief with all possible Speed, and whilst that was marching, the Besiegers fell at Variance among themselves, so that they had Recourse to Arms: Some of them declar'd for *Maedud*, and prevail'd against the others; then joyning the Troops sent by him, soon reduc'd the Rest under his Obedience. *Maedud* marching against the *Salinqui Turks*, who had made themselves Masters of *Karason*, dy'd by the Way, of the Colick, in the Year of the *Hegira* 441, of CHRIST 1050, and tho' he left two Sons, yet his Officers and Army gave the Crown to his Brother *Aly Ben Masud*.

His Death. *Aly succeeds.* An. 1050.

It was said before, in the Life of *Maedud*, that when he had defeated, and kill'd his Uncle *Mahamed*, he left none alive of all that Royal Stock, but only one Son of the blind King call'd *Abd Rahym*, or *Abd Raschid*. This Man was then in Custody, and upon the Death of *Maedud*, a *Wazir* or *Vizier* releas'd and proclaim'd him King. *Aly Ben Masud* finding all things in Confusion, and himself in no Condition to overcome all the Difficulties that presented, fled the Country. *Abd Raxid*, whose Capacity was not extraordinary, confided so much in *Togorel* or *Tokzel*, one of his Commanders, that he not only depriv'd him of his Dominions, but of his Life, as will soon appear.

Abd Rahim out Aly.

We left *Kahem* newly made *Calif*, soon after whose Promotion, the Soldiers in *Bagdat* mutiny'd

Confusions at Bagdat.

tiny'd again, plundering the House of *Gelala Daule's Wazir* or *Vizier*, and in Hatred to him, proclaim'd *Abulganiar* King of *Bagdat*, and sent for him; but he being better advis'd, excus'd himself; and was in the Right, for when his Answer return'd, the *Turks* had again agreed with *Gelala Daule*, yet this Reconciliation was not lasting, for they very soon after, throwing off all Respect, committed a thousand Insolences, and destroy'd the City, setting Fire to it in open Day, that they might have an Opportunity to plunder. In the Year of the *Hegira* 427, of CHRIST 1037, they openly revolted against *Gelala*, and would have expell'd him the City, had he not oppos'd them with Wisdom and Resolution. He continu'd in Peace till the next Year, when the General of the *Turks* was kill'd in a Mutiny, which made them somewhat abate of their Fury. At this Time a Peace was concluded between *Gelala* and *Abul Ganiar*; and in the Year of the *Hegira* 430, of CHRIST 1040, there fell such a Snow in *Bagdat* and the adjacent Parts, that it lay on the Ground three Spans in Depth; and the River *Degila*, which is the *Tigris*, on whose Bank the City stands, was frozen over, for the Space of twelve Days; a wonderful thing, considering the Situation of the Place, which I take to be in 34 Degrees of North Latitude. The next Year there hapned fresh Debates between the *Turks* and *Gelala Daule*, who brought them a little more under Subjection. In the Year of the *Hegira* 434, of CHRIST 1044, *Ebrahem Neali Salinqui*, a *Turkish* Commander breaking into the *Persian* Province of *Hyerak*, took *Amedon*. *Tokzelbek* did the same after him, and possess'd himself of the City *Rey*, and the following Year *Gelala Daule* dy'd, when

Prodigious Frost and Snow.

An. 1044.

Gelala King of Bagdat

when he had reign'd 17 Years. His Son *Abu Mansur* was then at *Wacet*, who being sent for to succeed his Father in the Throne, was so long detain'd there by Commotions, that they who had sent for him, not able to wait any longer, gave the Government to *Abul Ganiar*. *Tokzelbek* was then ranging victorious through *Persia*, for which Reason *Abul Ganiar* concluded an Allyance with him, marrying his own Son to a Daughter of *Daud. Salinqui*, and Niece to *Tokzelbek*. The following Year, which was of the *Hegira* 440, and of CHRIST 1049, *Abul Ganiar* dy'd in the Province of *Kermon*, four Years after *Gelala Daule*, leaving five Sons, *viz.* *Aba Mansur Fulath Sotun*, that is, Pillar of Steel, *Kozrao Feruz*, *Abu Faher*, *Abucayd Aboaly* and *Kay Kozrao*. *Sotun*, who was the eldest, went away to *Schiras* to succeed his Father, but *Kozrao Feruz* who was there, caus'd himself to be proclaim'd King, and changing his Name with his Condition, call'd himself *Malek Rhaym*. Then gathering a moderate Army, set his Brother *Abu Sayd* at the Head of it, to go meet *Fulad Sotun*, following after himself with all the Forces he could raise. When they were come near *Stahkar*, where *Sotun* was, all the *Turks* and most of the other Troops went over to him, leaving the two Brothers to themselves: *Malek Rhaym* retir'd to *Awaz*, but soon left that Place to his Brother, who still pursu'd him. Lastly he withdrew to *Wacet*, with his Brothers *Abu Taher*, and *Abu Sayd*, where the War was continu'd with various Success, till the Year of the *Hegira* 447, of CHRIST 1056, when *Malek Rhaym* being inform'd, that *Takzebek*, at the Instigation of *Abu Mansur*, had possess'd himself of *Schiraz*, and most of the Dominions of *Persia*, and perceiving all Places full-

And King Abul Ganior,

full of Diviſion and Deſtruction, he made his utmoſt Effort, and raiſing all the Forces he was able, march'd and poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Schiraz*, and having furniſh'd him with all that was neceſſary for Defence, return'd to *Wacet*.

Diſcord ſtill prevail'd at *Bagdat*, where one *Beſancery*, a Commander of the Standing Forces, at the Inſtigation of the *Calif* of *Damaſcus*, who was then of the Family of *Iſmaelga*, conſpir'd againſt the Calif *Kahem*, or *Alkahem Beamarila*, and preſs'd him ſo hard, that he was oblig'd him to quit the Country, and fly to the Protection of *Fokzelbeck*, with whom he had before contracted ſome Friendſhip, and who receiv'd and promis'd to ſupport him, as he did. He march'd with him and all his Forces to *Bagdat*, which was enter'd by Force, plunder'd, and deſtroy'd with Fire and Sword, ſparing neither the Living nor the Dead, whoſe Tombs were all open'd, to ſee whether there was any thing to ſteal in them. *Malek Rhaym* was then in *Bagdat*, and fled with his Friends, in hopes to eſcape the Fury of the Soldiers to the Calif *Kahem*'s Houſe, who did all he could to ſave him, but unſucceſsfully, for he fell into the Hands of *Tolzelkek*, who caſt him into Priſon, where he dy'd. This did not put an end to the War, which *Abu Sayd* continu'd againſt *Manſur*, who, after ſeveral Engagements, over-threw his Brother *Abu Sayd* in Battel, and kill'd him, ſecuring to himſelf the Lands and Title of King of *Perſia*. One who had been *Wazir*, or *Vizier*, to his Father, held the ſame Poſt under him, whom he put to Death upon Suſpicion, and gave that Place to one *Fazel Ben Acen*, or *Fazel Huye*. This Man, when well ſettled in his Employment, in Requital for ſuch a Favour, receiv'd

The Calif Kahem *flies from* Bagdat.

Badgat *deſtroy'd.*

of

of *Manſur*, confin'd him in a ſtrong Hold, where he dy'd; and *Fazel Huye* aſſum'd the Title of King of *Perſia*. A *Salinque Turkiſh* Commander, call'd *Malek Maverd*, was then in the Province of *Kermon*, who, being inform'd of what had happen'd, march'd with his Army againſt *Fazel Huye*. He fled to another call'd *Oleb Arſalom*, whoſe Lands he farm'd, and growing very rich by that means, revolted from him; yet not ſo ſucceſsfully, but that ſoon after both he and a Son of his call'd *Nuzon all Molk* were both taken, and ſecur'd in the Fortreſs of *Strahhor*, where they dy'd. This was in the Year of the *Hegira* 448, of CHRIST 1057.

Aboaly Kay Kozrao, the Son of *Abul Ganiar*, who had ſucceeded his Father in the Government, voluntarily deliver'd himſelf up to *Oleb Arſalom*, who gave him the Lands of *Naobandian* and *Aktak* to live on, always treating him with much Honour and Civility. He liv'd 40 Years after his Brothers, and dy'd in that of the *Hegira* 487, of CHRIST 1095, when the Sovereignty and Government of the Family of the *Daules* ended in *Perſia*. To ſpeak of *Togorel* or *Tokzelbek*, and the Affairs of *Perſia*, we left *Abd Raxid*, who being inform'd of the Practices of *Tokzel* againſt his Perſon, retir'd to *Gaznehen*, whither the other purſuing beſieg'd him, and entring the City by Force, *Abd Raxid* withdrew into a Fortreſs there was in the midſt of it. After ſome Days Siege, *Tokzel* perceiving he could not take it by Force, prevail'd by Treachery, corrupting the Governour and Garriſon, and thus he got *Raxid* into his Hands, whom he immediately put to Death, with many more of his Kindred and Friends, and took to himſelf

End of the Race of the Daules in Perſia.

ſelf the Title of King, marrying a Siſter of the Deceas'd. A few Days after, as he ſat in publick to receive the Compliments of the great Men, as is the Cuſtom in thoſe Parts, ten of the Prime Nobility approach'd together to pay their Submiſſion, and coming up cloſe, drew their Swords and kill'd him. Not long after, *Charkir*, a Commander, arriv'd there from *India*, who releas'd out of Priſon, where he was confin'd, *Ferrogh Zad*, the Son of *Maſſud*, and Brother to *Abd Raxid*, whom he ſet upon the Throne. *Daud Salinqui* made War on him, but *Ferrogh Zad* defeated him, and then march'd his Army into *Karaſon*, where he was met by the Generals of *Salinquah*, King of *Turkeſtam*, whom he alſo overthrew. At laſt *Olob Arſolem*, Son to that King, came againſt him in Perſon, and routed him, carrying away many of the *Gazney*'s Priſoners, who were afterwards exchang'd for *Turks*, that were Priſoners in *Gaznehen*. *Ferrogh Zad*, having reign'd 6 Years, dy'd, leaving the Crown to his Brother *Ebrahen Ben Maſud*. At this ſame time dy'd *Kahem*, or *Alkahem*, the Calif, in the Year of the *Hegira* 467, of CHRIST 1074, when he had enjoy'd that Dignity 44 Years and 4 Months.

The Calif Kahem dies. An. 1074.

CHAP. XLII.

Almoktady Bila, *the* 48*th*, Almaſtacer Bila, *the* 49*th*, Almoſtarxed Bila, *the* 50*th*, Raxet Bila, *the* 51*ſt*, *and* Almoktafy Bila, *the* 52*d* Calif.

Almoktady Bila, Grand-ſon to *Kahem*, was, upon his Grand-father's Death, choſen *Calif*; in whoſe Days *Perſia* was not free from Com-

Commotions, but ſince they did not amount to make any Change in the Government, we ſhall not loſe much time upon them. In the Dominions of *Karaſon* and *Maurenahar*, *Ebrahem*, Brother to *Ferroghzad*, who, upon his Death, ſucceeded in the Throne, concluded a Peace with the *Turks*; and having ſettled Affairs at home, went over into *India*, where he undertook freſh Conqueſts, and ſubdu'd many Provinces, taking an ineſtimable Booty, whereof *Mirkond* gives a large Account. He return'd into *Perſia*, and thinking to enjoy Peace, was inform'd that *Malek Scha*, King of *Turkeſtam*, was making mighty Warlike Preparations to invade him; but he ſent Embaſſadors, who prevail'd with him to deſiſt; and as a farther Bond of Amity, *Ebrahem* marry'd his Son *Maſud* to a Daughter of *Malek Scha*.

Ebrahem, King of Karaſon.

After this, *Ebrahem* dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 481, which is of CHRIST 1089; leaving the Crown to his Son *Maſud*. In 487, or 1095, the Calif *Almoktady Bila* dy'd ſuddenly, when he had rul'd 19 Years and 5 Months.

His Son Maſud ſucceeds him.

An. 1089. An. 1095.

His Son *Almoſtacer Bila* ſucceeded him. The City of *Bagdat*, which was at firſt ſeated in *Meſopotamia*, on the Banks of the *Tigris*, being ruin'd by the over-flowing of that River, he remov'd it to the other ſide of the ſaid River, which was more commodious, where it now ſtands, oppoſite to the former, when 25 Califs had reign'd ſince the firſt Founding of it by *Abu Jafar*, and it is worthy to be obſerv'd, that not one of them dy'd in it. *Almoſtacer Bila* enjoy'd Peace almoſt all the time of his Government, which was 25 Years and 6 Months, at the end whereof he dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 512, which was of CHRIST 1119.

Bagdat City remov'd.

An. 1119.

His

His Son *Almoxstarced Bila Fazele* succeeded him; he prov'd a resolute Martial Man, and made War on some *Persian* Princes. *Masud Salinquin*, King of *Karason*, invading some Provinces of *Persia*, *Almoxstarced* oppos'd him, and fought several Battels, with various Event. At last the decisive Stroke was given at *Maragah*, near *Tauriz*, where the *Calif* was routed, and fled; but being afterwards taken, and deliver'd to *Masud*, he caus'd him to be put to Death, in the Year of the *Hegira* 529, of CHRIST 1136, when he had reign'd 17 Years and 2. Months. An. 1136.

Baxet Bila inherited the Califship by his Father's Death, and being resolv'd to revenge it, rais'd the greatest Force he was able, and march'd towards *Masud*, who still ravag'd all *Persia*, and had made himself Master of the greatest Part of it. They met, a Battel was fought, and *Raschat* overthrown, who fled to *Ispahan*, the Capital of *Hyerack*, in *Persia*, where he was afterwards kill'd, having govern'd but two Years, in the Year of the *Hegira* 532, of CHRIST 1139. *Masud*, after routing and putting him to Death, march'd to *Bagdat*, where he was receiv'd, without any Opposition, and gave the Califship to *Almoktasy Bila*, Unkle to the Deceas'd. *Masud subdues Persia.* An. 1139.

Not long after *Masud* dy'd in *Persia*, and every one of his Generals and Governours, kept what he had been entrusted with. *Almoktasy* took the Field, and recover'd almost all that *Masud* had possess'd himself of in *Persia*, which having enjoy'd about 24 Years, without any considerable Disturbance, he dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 555, of CHRIST 1161. *Dies.* An. 1161.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

Almoſtanger Bila Iſſuf, *the* 53*d*; Almoſtanzy Benur Elah Acen, *the* 54*th*; Nacer, *or* Nacere Ladinla, *the* 55*th*; Alhazer, *or* Altaker Bila Mahamed, *the* 56*th*; Almoſtancer Bila Manſur, *the* 57*th*; *and* Almoſtacem Bila Abdula, *the* 58*th*, *and laſt* Calif *of* Bagdat.

ALmoſtanger Bila Iſſuf, Son to the Calif *Moktafy*, ſucceeded his Father. *Maſur* dy'd in *Perſia*, as was ſaid above, in the Days of this *Almoſtanger*'s Father, leaving his eldeſt Son *Arſalom Scha* to ſucceed him in *Gaznehen*. This King, as ſoon as ſeated on the Throne, ſeiz'd all his Brothers, who were numerous, except one, who made his Eſcape, call'd *Baharon Scha*. At this time two Brothers, related to the Royal Family, held the two Governments of *Karaſon* and *Hyerack* in *Perſia*; *Saniar* had the former of them, and *Mahamed* the latter. *Baharon* flying from his Brother, had Recourſe to *Saniar*, who protected and endeavour'd to reconcile him to *Arſalon Scha*, but could not prevail. *Saniar* eſpouſing *Baharon*'s Quarrel, rais'd Forces, and advanc'd towards *Gaznehen*. *Arſalon Scha* being inform'd of it, made his Complaint to *Mahamed*. *Saniar*'s Brother, who was Governour of *Hyerack*, who us'd ſome Endeavours, but could not reconcile them. The War was carry'd on, *Saniar* march'd his Army to *Baſt*, where *Abufazel*, Governour of *Siſton*, join'd him. *Arſalon Scha* met them, and coming to a Battel, was routed. An Aunt of his afterwards made them Friends, but *Saniar*, at the Requeſt of *Baharon Scha*, had Recourſe to Arms again, and having gain'd a ſecond Victory over *Arſalon Scha*, enter'd *Gaznehen*,

Arſalon ſucceeds Maſud.

hen, where he had a mighty Booty, and putting *Baharon Scha* into Possession of that Country, return'd to his own. As soon as he was gone, *Arsalon Scha* invaded *Gaznehen*, which *Baharon Scha* abandon'd, and flying to *Sanian*, was again restor'd by him. *Arsalon Scha*, not daring to stand him, made the best of his way; but being closely pursu'd was taken, and deliver'd to his Brother *Baharon*, who caus'd him to be immediately put to Death, in the Year of the *Hegira* 512, of CHRIST 1119, when he had reign'd 3 Years, and *Baharon* was settled on the Throne. He prov'd a good Prince, Magnificent, Generous, and well qualify'd; a great Lover of natural Sciences; a Favourer of Learned Men, and writ himself some Philosophical Tracts; yet did not Learning make him e'er the less Warlike, for he made some Invasions into *India*, and into *Persia*, where he dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 547, of CHRIST 1153, when he had reign'd 35 Years, and left the Crown to his Son *Kozrao Scha*.

Baharon Xa *kills him, and succeeds.* An. 1119.

He dies.

This new King, not thinking himself safe in these Lands, by reason of the many Tumults, remov'd from thence to *Lahor* in *India*, whence, returning again to *Gaznehen*, he found that Kingdom in the Possession of *Saniar*, King of *Karason*; and perceiving he could not prevail against him, return'd to *Lahor*, where he dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 555, of CHRIST 1161, having reign'd 9 Years, and leaving the Crown to his Son *Kozrao Malek*.

His Son Kozrao *reigns.*

Dies. An. 1161.

He succeeded his Father in the City *Lahor*, Capital of the Kingdom of *Multan*, in *India*, now the Court of the *Great Mogul*; for *Persia*, and his other Kingdoms and Dominions were in other Hands, and it requir'd a more Martial and less vitious Disposition than his to retrieve them, which gain'd him the ill Will of all his People, and particularly of the Soldiers. One Sultan *Guayacadin Mahamed Guary* govern'd a Part of the Country of *Gaznehen*; this Man, after some Incursions made into *India*, laid Seige to *Lahor*, took it, and carry'd away *Kozrao Malek* to *Gaznehen*, where he dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 563, of CHRIST 1169; and in him ended the Family of the *Sabutaquys*. Three Years after dy'd *Almostanger Bila Issuff*, the *Calif*, after enjoying that Dignity 11 Years, which he left to his Son. *Al-*

His Son Kozrao *last of the Race.* An. 1169.

Almostanzy Benurelak Acen, who was a good Prince, generous, and belov'd by his People, rul'd 9 Years and 8 Months, and dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 575, of CHRIST 1180. Nothing remarkable happen'd during his Reign.

An. 1180.

Upon his Death, the Califship devolv'd to his Son *Nacer*, or *Ladinla*, who held it 47 Years, in whose Days *Bagdat* throve very much. During his Reign, the *Koarrazmites* invaded the *Salinquys*, and subdu'd them; and the *Tartars*, under *Chinguys Kan*, possess'd themselves of the Lands of *Turon* and *Agem*, putting them to Fire and Sword. *Nacer* dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 622, of CHRIST 1226.

His Son *Alhazer Bila Mahamed* was made Calif in stead of his Father, and enjoy'd it only 9 Months and 13 Days, dying in the Year of the *Hegira* 623, of CHRIST 1227, leaving that Dignity to his Son.

An. 1227.

Almostacer Bila Mansur, who valu'd himself so much upon being generous, that he became prodigal, and so fell to Poverty. During his Reign, when *Persia* enjoy'd almost an universal Peace, the *Mogols* or *Tartars* made their first Incursion into it. When they had possess'd themselves of some Provinces the Calif *Almostancer* oppos'd, and oblig'd them to quit most of what they had gain'd, and having given them several other Repulses, dy'd in the 17th Year of his Government, of the *Hegira* 640, and of CHRIST 1244. His Son

An. 1224.

Almostacem Bila Abdula succeeded in the Califship, and was the last of the Family of *Ben Habaz*. The Tartar *Olaku Kan* invaded, routed, and kill'd him, when he had been Calif 15 Years and 7 Months, putting all the People of *Bagdat* to the Sword, as shall be mention'd in the following Chapter, and brief Account of the *Mogols* or *Tartars* that over-ran *Persia*. In this Man ended the Califs of *Bagdat*, vulgarly call'd of *Babylon*, and sometimes of *Baldak*. There were 37 of this Family, who held that Dignity 523 Years, little over or under. I have mention'd them all, in regard that in the Chronicles of *Persia* they are reckon'd Monarchs of that Kingdom; and in what remains to be said of the rest of them, I shall observe the same Method that is follow'd by *Tavarick* and *Mirkond*, their Historians. The Calif *Almostacem* dy'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 655, of CHRIST 1258.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIV.

An Account of the Mogols, *or* Tartars, *that Conquer'd* Persia.

IN the most Eastern Parts of *Asia*, not far from *Ketao Kotan*, which, as has been said, is *Cathay*, bordering on *China*, liv'd one *Buzaniar*, who by his Valour and other Virtues, made himself Master of most of those Provinces. His Successors, no less potent and active than himself, being possess'd of those Countries, and subduing others, extended their Empire over many Regions of a vast Extent; but my Design being only to treat of those who have been Soveraigns of *Persia* till our Days, I shall say no more of these than is barely requisite for my Purpose, beginning with *Chinguis Kan*, the First of them that brought the *Mogols* or *Tartars* into *Persia*, and was the Ninth Descendant from *Buzaniar*, as follows. *Chinguis Kan*, the Son of *Sukyh Badur*, that is, the Brave, the Son of *Partan Badur*, the Son of *Fil Kan*, the Son of *Tomanah Kan*, the Son of *Bukah Kan*, the Son of *Buzaniar*, who is the first above-mention'd, and Eighth Grandfather of *Chinguis Kan*, with whom we are now to proceed.

Chinguis Kan, *King of* Tartary.

Chinguis Kan, the Son of *Sukyh Badur*, was born in the Year of the *Hegira* 546, of CHRIST 1152. When he was thirteen Years of Age his Father died, and being left so Young there follow'd much Contention among those People, about his Succession and Protectorship, and grew to such a Height, that they could not be quell'd till the Year of the *Hegira* 599, of CHRIST 1204. when *Chinguis Kan* over-coming

all Difficulties, in spight of all those that opposʼd it, made himself King, and absolute Monarch of all that his Father and Ancestors had been possessʼd of. His Name before was *Tamachin*, and three Years after he found himself fixʼd on the Throne, which was in the *Ann.* 1207. Year of the *Hegira* 602, of CHRIST 1207, he orderʼd himself to be callʼd *Chinguis Kan*, which is said in their Tongue to signifie, *King of Kings*. By Degrees he became extraordinary Powerful, subduing all the Hords, or Tribes of *Tartars*, as also the Kingdoms of *Ketao Ketan*, *Helan*, *Tangar*, and others; and having settled them all in Peace, in the Year of the *Hegira* 615, of CHRIST 1219, he marchʼd out of his own Dominions, and advancʼd with an innumerable Army against *Mahamad Koarrazm Scha* in *Maurenahar*, who after some Resistance made, perceiving how little he was able to do against so formidable an Enemy, left him his Dominions, and withdrew into *Karason*. *Chinguis Kan* enterʼd *Maurenahar* in the Year of the *Hegira* 620, of CHRIST 1224, putting every living Creature he met with to the Sword. The same he did at *Balk*, and thence sent 30000 Horse in Pursuit of *Mahamud Koarrazm Scha*, who fled before him. They overtook him at *Abishon*, in the Province of *Gueylon*, and slew him, ravaging all that Country with Fire and Sword. It is positively affirmʼd, that the *Mogols* or *Tartars* destroyʼd Seven hundred thousand Souls in the City *Rey*, and the Country about it; and in the Provinces of *Nixabur*, a Million one hundred and fifty thousand, some say a Million and six hundred thousand Men, besides Women and Children, and proportionable in several other Provinces. When they had spent a whole Year ranging about *Persia*, and

Terrible Slaughter he makes in Maurenahar.

and making such dreadful Havock in all Parts, *Almostanzer Bila Mansur Ben Alzaker*, the *Calif* of *Bagdat*, having rais'd the greatest Power he was able, both as to Men and other warlike Preparations, march'd against them, and either for that they were divided, and their Numbers lessen'd, or because they had a Mind to be gone with their Booty, oblig'd them to depart almost all *Persia*, and they return'd to *Maurenahar*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 623, of CHRIST 1227. *Retires out of Persia. Ann.* 1227.

Upon the Death of *Mahomed*, King of *Koarrazm*, his Son *Sultan Gelaladin* fled into *India*, whom the *Mogols* pursu'd, and overtaking him near the River *Indus*, fought and routed him, and he retir'd to the Kingdom of *Multan*, farther up in *India*. *Chinguis Kan* having shown his Men the way into *Persia*, and left some Commanders there, return'd to *Ketao Kotan*, where he died in the Year of the *Hegira* 624, of CHRIST 1228, being Seventy eight Years of Age, and having reign'd as absolute Sovereign of his Dominions Twenty five. He had Four Sons, the Eldest call'd *Tuxy Kan*, whom his Father had constituted Governor of the Kingdoms of *Dast*, *Kapechah*, *Ross*, and *Abulgar*, died Six Months before him; The Second, call'd *Chagatay Kan*, who was Governor of the Kingdoms of *Maurenahar*, *Cayger*, and *Koarrazm*, held those Dominions till the Year of the *Hegira* 638, of CHRIST 1241, when he died; The Third, whose Name was *Oktay Kan*, succeeded his Father; The Fourth, *Tuly Kan*, to whom his Father, besides some Provinces, left all his Treasures, died in the Year of the *Hegira* 628, of CHRIST 1232. So that of *Chinguis Kan*'s four Sons, only *Oktay Kan* liv'd to enjoy his Inheritance, tho' the others left *Dies. Ann.* 1228.

Sons, some of which afterwards succeeded, as shall be said in its Place. *Mirkond* writes, as a certain Truth, That when *Chinguis Kan* was born, he brought out a little Blood hard grasp'd in each Hand, which was an Omen of his Cruelty.

His Son Oktay Kan succeeds him. Ann. 1230.

Oktay Kan, Third Son to *Chinguis Kan*, upon his Death, succeeded in the Throne, at the beginning of the Year of the *Hegira* 626, of CHRIST 1230. He was as good as his Father had been wicked, and among other Virtues, was singular for Generosity, a Quality well-becoming Princes, and very necessary. *Mirkond* tell us, He laid out, during the whole Course of his Life in extraordinary Gifts and Presents, 666 Purses, as the *Persians* express it, each Purse containing 1000 *Tomans* of Gold, and every *Toman* is worth Sixteen Ducats; so that the whole amounts to Ten Millions six hundred and fifty six thousand Ducats. He appointed *Gerbakhon Noyn* his *Wazir* or *Vizier*, a Martial Man and of great Wisdom, whom he immediately sent against *Gelaladin*, who we said was withdrawn to *Multan*, and coming out to oppose him, was routed and slain, the Family of *Koarrazm Scha* expiring in him. Then he bent his Force against *Persia*, and reduc'd it all under his Dominion, except *Bagdat*; and having reign'd Thirteen Years, died in the Year of the *Hegira* 639, of CHRIST 1242, of excessive drinking of Wine, leaving a very young Son, call'd *Gayuk Kan*, for which Reason his Mother held the Government Four Years, and in the Year of the *Hegira* 643, of CHRIST 1246, he took it into his own Hands.

Dies. Ann. 1242.

He

He approv'd himſelf a good Prince, being a Lover of Juſtice, Generous, and no Enemy to Chriſtians, whom he very much favour'd; but was ſnatch'd away by Death, when he had Reign'd one Year only. *His Son* Gayuk Kan *Emperor.*

His Succeſſor was *Manchu Kan*, his Couſin-German, Son to *Tuly Kan*, and Grandſon to *Chinguis Kan*, a good Prince, brave, generous and affable. He favour'd the *Mahometans* very much, and was not unkind to the Chriſtians, but hated the *Jews*, and perſecuted them. To his Brother *Kablay Kan* he gave the Lands of *Ketuo Kan*, who much enlarg'd his Dominions. This Man founded the great City of *Kanbulek*, now the Great *Tartar*'s Court. To another Brother, call'd *Ulahku Kan*, he gave the Dominions of *Perſia*. *Manchu Kan* died when he had Reign'd Thirteen Years, in the Year of the *Hegira* 657, of CHRIST 1260. Manchu Kan *Emperor.*

Ann. 1260.

Ulahku Kan ſucceeded his Brother, came into *Perſia*, as has been ſaid, in the Year of the *Hegira* 657, of CHRIST 1256; and to keep himſelf in Action, attack'd *Iſmaelya*, a City of Conſequence, which he took, and ſpar'd not the Life of any Soul within it. Next he march'd into *Hyerak*, and ſubdu'd it. The next Year he march'd his Army to *Bagdat*, the *Calif Almoſtacem* venturing a Battle with him, was Overthrown and Slain, as were his four Sons; the ſame Fate attended all that were found in *Bagdat*, and the Country about it, which many ſay amounted to a Million and ſix hundred thouſand Souls. In the Year of the *Hegira* 658, of CHRIST 1261, he proceeded to *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, both which he took, and leaving one *Kaptu Kan* Governor in thoſe Parts of *Syria*, return'd himſelf to *Perſia*, and died at *Meragah*, near *Tauris*, in the Ulahku Kan *Emperor.*

Ann. 1261.

Province of *Aderbaion*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 663, of CHRIST 1266, being the Sixth of his Reign. Before his Death, he divided his Dominions between the three Sons he had; to *Haybkay Kan*, the Eldest, he gave the Kingdoms of *Hyerak*, *Mazandaion*, and *Karason*; to the Second, call'd *Hyaxemet*, *Aron*, that is, *Armenia*, and *Aderbacon*; to *Tandou*, the Third, he left *Diarbek* and *Rabyah*, which is *Mesapotamia*. Besides all this, he gave to *Atulmok Jaryng*, one of his *Wazirs*, or Viziers, the City of *Bagdat*, to rebuild it, as he did; and to another, call'd *Mahynedin Paroaney*, some Lands in *Rumestan*. At this Time flourished in *Persia*, *Coaja Naciradin Tussy*, a famous Astrologer, who writ a Book, Intituled, *Zich el Kong*, Of Judgments, and Figures, much celebrated among the *Persians*. Besides the Three Sons above-mention'd, *Ulahku Kan* had two others; the one call'd *Nicudar Oglan*, the other *Targahe Kan*, and tho' assign'd no Share in their Father's Dividend, yet one of them obtain'd one himself, and so did the Children of the other.

Haybkay Kan, *King of* Persia.

Haybkay Kan, Eldest Son to *Ulahku Kan*, succeeded him in the Sovereignty of *Persia*, and had War with *Bora Kan*, who march'd with an Army against him from *Chagatay*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 668, of CHRIST 1217. *Haybkay Kan*, ingag'd, defeated, and drove him back to *Maurenahar*. He Reign'd Seventeen Years, and then died at *Amadon*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 680, of CHRIST 1282.

Ann. 1282.

Hamed Kan *King*.

His Brother *Hamed Kan*, before call'd *Nicudar Oglan*, which imports, *Nicudar* the good Son, ascended the Throne next, turn'd *Mahometan*, and then chang'd his Name. He Reign'd

Reign'd but two Years and two Months, and died without performing any Thing remarkable, in the Year of the *Hegira* 687, of CHRIST 1285, when the Crown return'd to the Sons of *Habkay Kan*; the Eldest whereof,

Argon Kan, succeeded his Uncle, Reign'd Seven Years, and died in that of the *Hegira* 690, of CHRIST 1292. Argon Kan.

Five Months after the Death of *Argon Kan*, his Brother *Ganiatu Kan* was admitted to the Government. He was generous, and had other good Qualities, but sully'd them all by being extraordinary Lewd and Incestuous. He would have brought Paper-Money into *Persia*, as was us'd in the Provinces of *Ketao Kotan*, but it would not be admitted; and the chief Opposer of it was one *Badu Kan*, his own Uncle, who on this Pretence made War, and slew him in a Battle, when he had been King three Years, in that of the *Hegira* 693, of CHRIST 1295. Ganiatu Kan.

Badu Kan, the Son of *Turgahe*, the Son of *Ulahku Kan*, and Uncle to the King that was slain, as above, succeeded him in the Throne, and having ascended it by Force, was oppos'd by *Gazun*, the Son of *Argon Kan*, who march'd against him out of *Karason*, with a numerous Army, himself and they being all become *Mahometans*: They met at *Nakxoan*, where *Badu Kan* was defeated and fled, but discover'd, and taken, by a *Wazir*, or Vizier of *Gazun*, who convey'd him to *Tauris*, where he was put to Death, having Reign'd but one Year. Badu Kan.

Gazun, the Son of *Argon*, the Son of *Habkay Kan*, the Son of *Ulahku Kan*, made himself King of *Persia*, upon the Death of *Baydu*, and was a great Lover of Justice. In the Year of the *Hegira* 696, of CHRIST 1298, *Da-* Gazun Kan.

mascus, and some other Parts of *Syria*, revolted from him, joyning with *Bendokar* King of *Egypt*, against whom he march'd his Army; and having overthrown him, and reduc'd those Provinces to his Obedience, return'd to *Persia*, and died at *Casbin*, since the Court of those Kings, in the Year of the *Hegira* 703, of *Ann.* 1305. CHRIST 1305, when he had Reign'd Eight Years and Nine Months. His Body was buried at *Tauris*, in *Zambgazun*, a magnificent Mosque he had built in his Life-time. This is the only Monument of the Princes of this Race that is preserv'd entire to this Day.

Alyaptu King. *Alyaptu*, who afterwards, turning *Mahometan*, took the Name of *Sultan Mahamed Ben Argon*, upon the Death of his Brother *Gazun*, took upon him the Government of *Persia*, at Twenty three Years of Age. He settled his Residence at *Tauris*, was extraordinary severe in the Execution of Justice, by which Means he kept his People in Subjection, and easie. This Man first brought up the Custom of taking away the Children of Christians and *Jews*, to breed them up after his Manner, and be serv'd by them. In the Year of the *Hegira* 705, of CHRIST 1306, he founded the City *Sultania*; and the following Year possess'd himself of *Gueybon* and *Raxt*; in 712, which is 1313, he march'd to *Scham*, or *Damascus*, which had revolted again; and having recover'd it, return'd to *Persia*, and died at *Sultania* in the Year of the *Hegira* 716, of CHRIST 1317, having Reign'd Twelve Years and Nine Months.

Sultania City built. *Ann.* 1306.

Sultan Abusayd. *Sultan Abusayd Baheder Kan*, the Son of *Alyapsu*, inherited his Father's Kingdom at Twelve Years of Age. He chose for his *Wazir* or Vizier, one *Amir Chupon*, who had an extra

extraordinary beautiful marry'd Daughter, with whom the King fell in Love upon Sight; demanded her of the Father, who excus'd himſelf, alledging ſhe was Marry'd, and in her Husband's Power. *Abuſayd* enrag'd by his violent Paſſion of Love, took her by Force, killing the Father, the Husband, and all thoſe he thought would oppoſe him, and gave her the Title of *Kandekar*, which was the Royal Style, doating on her ſo violently, as to reſign all the Government into her Hands, which ſhe manag'd with much Wiſdom and Diſcretion, whilſt he, indulging his Eaſe, diverted himſelf in Reading, being very Bookiſh. His Perſon was graceful, and his Judgment ſound, and he generally ſpent the Summers in *Sultania*, and the Winters in *Bagdat*. He reign'd Nineteen Years, and died in the Year of the *Hegira* 736, of CHRIST 1337. By his Death the Power of the *Tartars* in *Perſia* was divided, every Governor taking upon him the Title of King; and ſo it continu'd till the coming of *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, who ſubdu'd all, as we ſhall now declare. *Tyrannical Act.*

Teymur Langh, which ſignifies *Teymur* the Lame, becauſe he was ſo, as was ſaid in our Firſt Book, and whom we commonly call *Tamerlan*, was the Son of *Bujan Kan*, and Thirteenth Succeſſor of *Chinguis Kan*, from whom he was Deſcended, and no Robber, nor Carrier, nor Herdſman, as has been already obſerv'd, but a Martial Man, and Brave as appears by his Actions. He was born at *Samarkand*, and addicted himſelf to Arms, as his Forefathers had done. His Fifth Grandfather, *Charachar Nuyon*, came out of *Tartary* with *Chinguis Kan*; and when he ſent his ſecond Son *Chagatay Kan* to govern the Kingdoms of *Tamerlan.*

Mau-

Maurenahar, *Augor*, and *Koarrazm*. *Chagatay Kan* took along with him his near Kinsman *Carachar*, whom he appointed his Prime *Wazir*, or Vizier, and he and his Posterity remain'd in his Service, in Posts suitable to their Quality, till the Days of *Teymur*. *Soyorgat Mex Kan* and *Teymur Langh* were Contemporaries, the former being King of *Chagatay*, and *Teymur* his *Wazir*, or Vizier, or Generalissimo. *Soyorgat Mex Kan* died in the Year of the *Hegira* 771, of CHRIST 1370, and upon his Death, by the unanimous Consent of all the People, *Teymur Langh* was proclaim'd King. When well settled on the Throne, he march'd out of his Kingdom with an innumerable Army, and never undertook any Thing but what prov'd Successful. In the Space of Thirty six Years, which was the length of his Reign, he added to the Kingdoms he had Inherited, those of *Maurenahar*, *Turkestan*, *Koarrazm*, *Karason*, *Siston*, *Indostan*, *Hyerak*, *Parz*, *Kermon*, *Mazandaron*, *Aderbaion*, and *Kusistam*, all which, besides others, at his Death, were divided among his Sons and Commanders. It was in the Year of the *Hegira* 789, of CHRIST
Ann. 1388. 1388, on account of a Rebellion rais'd against him in *Ispahan*, the Capital of *Hyerak* in *Persia*, march'd thither, and having taken it by Force, put 70000 Men, Women and Children, to the Sword. *Tocktamex Kan*, who had been by him made King of *Kapechak*, rebelling, he sent part of his Army thither, which utterly destroy'd the Country, and *Toktamex Kan* fled to *Gurgestam*. In the Year of the *Hegira*
Ann. 1402. 803, of CHRIST 1402, he enter'd *Syria*, took and destroy'd *Aleppo* and *Damascus*; routed *Sultan Farache*, King of *Egypt*; turn'd back again to *Bagdat*, and took it, and thence proceeded

ceeded to *Kabka*, near *Tauris*, where he winter'd. The next Year he march'd towards *Angora*, to meet *Sultan Bajazet*, the Great *Turk*, whom he vanquiſh'd and took, ſubduing and waſting a great Part of his Dominions; and *Bajazet* being carried about a Priſoner in his Army, died the enſuing Year. Whilſt *Teymur* was marching againſt *Bajazet*, one *Kara Iſſuf* aſſaulted *Bagdat*, and drove out *Sultan Weyſhelkong*, whom *Teymur* had appointed Governor there. He returning from *Rumeſtan*, ſent his Grandſon *Abubakar* againſt *Kara Iſſuf*, who recovering the City, put it again into the Hands of *Sultan Weys*, as ſhall be obſerv'd hereafter. *Teymur*, after this, went away to *Ardivil*, where he ſtaid ſome Time, and gave *Xeque Safy* a great Number of Captives, whereof more in its Place. Then leaving *Perſia* he march'd towards *Karaſon*, and thence to *Samarkand*, his Native Country, where he ſpent ſome Months in Feſtivals and Rejoycing, celebrating the Nuptials of many of his People. Laſtly, He march'd to *Amzar*, a Country beyond *Cathay*, where he died, in the Year of the *Hegira* 807, of CHRIST 1405. *Teymur Langh*, of whoſe Name I gave ſome Account in the firſt Book, had four Sons; the eldeſt call'd *Joon Guyr*, who died a Year before his Father, leaving two Sons, *Mahamed Sultan* and *Pyr Mahamed*. This laſt *Teymur* appointed his Succeſſor in the Kingdoms of *Gaznehen* and *India*, and he was afterwards kill'd by *Pir Aly*. *Teymur*'s ſecond Son, call'd *Hamar Xeque*, being Governor of *Perſia*, whilſt his Father was ſtill living, was kill'd in the Fortreſs of *Chormatu*, now call'd *Kormanat* in *Loreſtam*. *Mirun Xa*, the third, who ſucceeded in the Government of thoſe Provinces, we ſaid above *Ulabkia*

Takes Bajazet.

His Death. Ann. 1405.

His Iſſue.

Kan

Kan was poſſeſs'd of in *Hierak*, *Aderbaion*, and onward, as far as *Damaſcus*, was kill'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 810, of CHRIST 1408, in *Aderbaion*, by *Kara Iſſuf*, the *Turkoman*. *Mirzah Scharok*, *Teymur*'s fourth Son, who had always kept his Father Company, ſucceeded him in the Empire.

Mirzah Scharok *ſucceeds him.*

Mirzah Scharok, the fourth and youngeſt Son of *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, was in *Karaſon* when his Father died at *Anzar*, and ſucceeded him in the Throne, tho' he had enough to do to reduce thoſe who were not for owning him in *Hyron* and *Turon*. When thoſe Troubles were over, he march'd his Army againſt *Kara Iſſuf*, in *Aderbaion*, who advanc'd to meet him, but died in the way. He left two Sons, *Mirzah Scandar* and *Mirza Joonxa*, who oppos'd *Scharok* inſtead of their Father, but he defeated them, and afterwards took *Mirzah Joonxa* into his Service, and reſtor'd him the Kingdom of *Aderbaion*. *Scharok* built a City in *Maurenahar*, which from his own Name he call'd *Scharokya*; and in the Year of the *Hegira* 850, of CHRIST 1447, died in the City *Rey*, when he had Reign'd Forty three Years. He had Five Sons; to *Mirzah Ologh Beg* he gave the Lands of *Turkeſtam* and *Maurenahar*; *Ebrahim Sultan*, the Second, died before his Father, when he had govern'd *Perſia* Twenty Years, in the Year of the *Hegira* 838, of CHRIST 1435, leaving ſeveral noble Fabricks and Structures erected during his Government; a Year before him died the Third, call'd *Baesfangor*; the Fourth, was call'd *Mirzah Soyorgat Mexhkon*, who died before his Father, being Governor of *Gazna*, or *Gaznehen*, and *India*; the Fifth, *Mirzah Mahamed Juguy*, died alſo before his Father.

Dies. Ann. 1447.

His Iſſue.

The

The People of *Samarkand* had, when *Tamerlan* died, proclaim'd King one *Sultan Kalil*, a Kinſman of his. Againſt him, a Subject of his, whoſe Name was *Kadahdad Hoſceny*, took the Field, made him Priſoner, and calling in *Xama Joon*, King of *Mogolſtam*, or *Tartary*, deliver'd him into his Hands, with his Dominions. The *Tartars* being in Poſſeſſion, put to Death *Kodahdad Hoſceny*, a juſt Reward of his Treaſon, and gave *Kalil* another Kingdom in lieu of his own, where he liv'd contentedly. *A Traytor well Rewarded.*

Ologh Beg, who whilſt his Father *Mir Scharok* was living, govern'd the Provinces of *Turkeſtam* and *Maurenahar*, as ſoon as he heard of his Death, in the Year of the *Hegira* 851, of CHRIST 1448, he went away to *Balk*; and being there inform'd that *Mirzah Alahdaolet*, his Kinſman, took upon him the Title of King, in the City *Herat*, in *Koraſon*, he mov'd towards and met him at *Morgab*. They came to a Battle, and *Alahdaolet* being routed, fled to his Brother *Mirzah Babor*; with him he turn'd again upon *Ologh Beg*, who abandon'd *Herat* to them; and retiring to *Balk*, found that his Son *Mirzah Abdelatife*, whom he had left there, had Rebell'd. They ingag'd, and *Ologh Beg* loſt the Battle and his Life, as did another of his Sons, call'd *Mirzah Abd-Razis*. This was in the Year of the *Hegira* 853, of CHRIST 1450, when *Ologh* had Rul'd there Forty one Years, but only Two ſince he ſucceeded his Father. Ologh Beg *ſucceeds.*

Mirzah Abdelatife, having kill'd his Father and Brother, remain'd King, but enjoy'd it not long; for Six Months after, his own Soldiers ſhot him to Death with their Arrows. Abdelatife *Reigns Six Months.*

His

Abdula, a Year.

His Brother *Mirzah Abdula* succeeded him; and when he had Reign'd one Year, *Mirzah Sultan Abusayd* invaded his Dominions, defeated and kill'd him, and so possess'd himself of the Throne, in the Year of the *Hegira* 855, of CHRIST 1452.

Anno 1542.

Abusayd succeeds.

Mirzah Sultan Abusayd, the Son of *Mahamed*, the Son of *Mirom Scha*, the Son of *Tamerlan* being King, new Wars broke out between *Mirzah Ebrahem* and *Mirzah Scha Mahamud*, of which more hereafter. *Mirzah Joon Scha* attack'd them both, they fled, and he took Possession of their Dominions. *Abusayd* march'd against him, but they agreed, without Fighting, dividing the Governments. No sooner was this Matter adjusted, than *Mirzah Saniar*, with *Mirzah Aladaolet* and his Son *Mirzah Ebrahem*, all of them private Princes, fell upon *Abusayd* at *Saraks*, who defeated them, killing *Saniar*, and putting the others to Flight. *Abusayd* was possess'd of the Kingdoms of *Badaxon*, *Gaznehen*, *Kabul*, *Sistom*, and *Koarrazm*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 872, of CHRIST 1468, *Mirzah Acembek Ben Alybek Ben Kara Otman* kill'd *Mirza Joon Scha*, upon whose Death *Abusayd* was call'd in, to take upon him the Government of *Kermon*, *Hyerak*, and *Aderbaion*. *Acembek* was jealous of him, and sent an Embassador to treat of Peace, which *Abusayd* rejected; and thereupon *Acembek* expected him at *Karabag*, being a mountainous Place near *Tauriz*, whither he was marching, and when *Abusayd* was within it, secur'd all the Passes, by that Means so distressing him for want of Provisions, that he fled himself, leaving all his Army behind him; but was taken and deliver'd up to *Mirzah Yadigar Mahamed*, who had joyn'd *Acembek*, and

and he put him to Death in the Year of the *Hegira* 837, of CHRIST 1469. *Is kill'd. Ann.* 1469.

His Son *Mirzah Sultan Hamed* succeeded him in the Kingdom of *Maurenahar*, and held it Twenty six Years, at the End whereof he died, in the Year of the *Hegira* 899, of CHRIST 1495. Hamed *King.* *His Death.* *Ann.* 1495.

Mirzah Babor, Nephew to *Hamed*, and Grandson to *Abusayd*, upon his Uncle's Death, inherited the Kingdom of *Maurenahar*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 904, *Kaybek Kan* came against him out of *Uzbek*, and drove him out of his Kingdom, where no other of the Race of *Tamerlan* Reign'd afterwards. But *Mirzah Babor* being expell'd *Maurenahar*, retir'd to *Gazneken*, and thence into *India*, where he settled; and having Reign'd Thirty eight Years in both Places, died in the Year of the *Hegira* 937, of CHRIST 1532. He left two Sons, *Homayon Mirzah*, and *Kamoran Mirzah*, who both Reign'd after their Father. *Homayon Mirzah* possess'd the largest and most wealthy Kingdoms of *India*. He had a *Wazir* or Vizier call'd *Schyr Kan*, who rebell'd, rais'd War, and oblig'd him to abandon his Dominions, and fly into *Persia*, where *Scha Thamas* then Reign'd, who furnish'd him with 12000 chosen Men, under the Command of a Prime Commander, call'd *Beyram Kan*, who taking *Homayon* along with him, restor'd him to his Kingdoms, reducing them all to their Duty, killing the Rebel *Schyr Kan*. This *Homayon* was Father to *Gelaladin Akbar*, mention'd in our first Book, from whom the present *Mogol* is descended. Babor *expell'd* Maurenahar. *Dies. Ann.* 1532.

Mirzah Hyadigar, the Son of *Mirzah Sultan Mahamed*, the Son of *Mirzah Baesfangor*, or *Bayfangor*, the Son of *Mirzah Xarrok*, the Son of *Wars between* Hyadigar *and* Ocem.

of *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, having, as was said above, in the Year of the *Hegira* 873, of CHRIST 1469, slain *Abusayd*, when he was joyn'd with *Acembek*, was by him furnish'd with an Army, with the which he march'd to *Strabat*. *Ocem Mirzah*, the Son of *Mansur*, the Son of *Babekara*, the Son of *Hamar Scheque*, the Son of *Teymur*, was then King of *Karason*, who being inform'd of *Hyadigar*'s Design, advanc'd with Speed to relieve *Strabat*, and ingaging *Hyadigar*, routed him, in the Year of the *Hegira* 874, of CHRIST 1470. After this Defeat he fled to *Acembek*, who was then at *Tauriz*, and furnish'd him again with a better Army than the former, and with it he march'd back, to seek out *Ocem Mirzah*, whom he overthrew, and compell'd to quit the Kingdom, flying toward *Fariab* and *Mayman*, on the Side of *Balk*. *Hyadigar* being possess'd of the Government, so entirely indulg'd his Ease, Pleasure, and Sensuality, that *Ocem* being attended by no more than a Thousand choice Men, assaulted him by Night, took and put him to Death, reseating himself on the Throne, in the Year of the *Hegira* 875, of CHRIST 1471. In *Hyadigar* ended the Race of *Myr Scharrok*.

Ann. 1471.

Ocem, *a good King.*

Mirzah Sultan Ocem, the Son of *Mansur*, the Son of *Babe Kara*, the Son of *Hamar Scheque*, the Son of *Teymur*, or *Tamerlan*, who recover'd the Kingdom *Hyadigar* had depriv'd him of, prov'd a good King, a Lover of Peace, and Justice, and affectionate towards his People. He adorn'd his Dominions with magnificent Structures, one of the chief whereof was a famous *Madrasa*, or Hospital, for entertaining of the Poor and Pilgrims, a Work becoming so great a Prince. In his Days the

the *Usbeks* invaded *Maurenahar*, and possess'd themselves of those Lands, taking them from the Progony of *Tamerlan*, who had held them till that Time. *Ocem* design'd to have oppos'd them, advanc'd towards them, and died by the way at *Wadekis*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 911, of CHRIST 1506, when he had Reign'd Thirty eight Years and four Months over all *Karason*, and at the Age of Seventy, Twenty whereof he had been sick of a Palsie, and not able to Ride. He had Fourteen Sons; Ten of whom succeeded him together. *His Death Ann.* 1506.

Bahady, or *Pedy Amazon*, and *Muzafar Mirzah*, Brothers, and Sons to the late *Ocem*, Reign'd both together at *Herat*, after their Father's Death, were invaded by *Schaybeck*, the *Usbek*; and they finding themselves too weak to oppose him, fled, and left him the Country. *Bahady Azamon* went away to *Kandar*, and thence to *Truxys*, whence he return'd with what Forces he could gather, against the *Usbek*, but was overthrown, and fled into *Persia* to *Scha Ismael*, who then Reign'd there, and gave him a favourable Reception, with the Lands of *Zambe Gazon*, about *Tauriz*, for his Support, besides Ten *Xorafines* in Gold every Day for his Table. The Gold *Schorafy* of *Persia* is worth Eight *Larines*, and every *Larine* about Two Royals Plate, little over or under. *Bahady* continu'd at *Tauriz* Seven Years, till that of the *Hegira* 920, of CHRIST 1515, when *Sultan Selim*, the Great *Turk*, taking that City, carried him away to *Constantinople*, where he died, in the Year of the *Hegira* 923, which was of CHRIST 1518. *Bahady expell'd his Kingdom.* *Ann.* 1515.

Mirom Scha, the Third Son of *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, had two Sons, *Mirzah Homar* who succeeded him in the Government of

Aderbaion, and *Abubaka* in that of *Bagdat*. *Teymur* dying, *Homar* took upon him the Title of King, and possessing himself of his Brother's Lands, confin'd him at *Sultania*; but he corrupting some of his Guards, and killing others that would have stopp'd him, broke Prison, and ranging about *Persia*, gather'd a considerable Number of Men, with whom he march'd against his Brother; and *Homar* being defeated, fled towards *Karason*, to his Uncle *Mirzah Scharok*, who gave him *Strabut* and *Mazandaron* to live on; but he being of a restless Temper, made War on his Benefactor *Scharok*, by whom he was also overthrown; and flying through *Samarkand* towards *Morgab*, was kill'd by the way, in the Year of the *Hegira* 809, of CHRIST *Ann.* 1406. 1406.

Tamarlan's Race in Persia Extinct.

Mirzah Abubakar, Brother to *Homar*, Son to *Mirom Scha*, and Grandson to *Teymur*, by his Brother's Death, remain'd peaceable in *Tauriz*, and was a very brave Commander, but unfortunate; for being invaded by *Kara Issuf*, the *Turk*, who fled from *Mezere*, or *Cairo* in *Egypt*, he was twice defeated by him, near the River *Euphrates*, and his Father kill'd the first Time, *Abubakar* thus routed, in the Year of the *Hegira* 810, of CHRIST 1407, went away to *Kermon*, and then to *Siston*, and returning thence the next Year with a considerable Army, he was kill'd by the way. In him ended the Successors of *Chinguis Kan*, and *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, the *Tartars*, who govern'd *Persia*, which we will now again speak of more particularly.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Turkiſh *Family of* Kara Kuyonlu, *that is, the Hord or Tribe of the* Black Sheep, *who were Sovereigns of* Perſia.

WHEN *Sultan Weys Helcony* was Governor of *Bagdat*, *Kara Mahamed*, the *Turk*, was employ'd in his Service, and for his great Merit by him appointed Chief or Commander of his Hord or Tribe of *Kara Kuyonlu*, that is, of the *Black Sheep*, which it is likely was their Enſign or diſtinctive Mark, and they themſelves were call'd Black, for that is the meaning of *Kara*, by way of difference from the others, whoſe Enſign or Emblem was a white Sheep, as ſhall be obſerv'd hereafter. It is to be obſerv'd, that much about the ſame Time, that the Factions of the *Neri* and *Bianchi*, or the Black and White, divided *Italy*, thoſe ſame Names, and the Conſequences of them, were predominant in *Perſia*. *Kara Mahamed* being, as was ſaid, conſtituted Chief of his Hord, or Tribe, and having ſo continu'd as long as he liv'd, that Poſt at his Death devolv'd to his Son *Kara Iſſuf*, who in Requital for the Favour beſtow'd on his Father and himſelf, aſſaulted *Bagdat*, and took it from *Sultan Weys*, on whom *Tamerlan* had beſtow'd it, he being then gone into the Country of *Rumeſtan* againſt *Bajazet*; but at his Return, being inform'd of the Treachery of *Kara Iſſuf*, he ſent his Grandſon *Abubakar* againſt *Kara Iſſuf*, who recover'd and reſtor'd it to *Sultan Weys Helcony*; yet he enjoy'd it not long, being

Kara Mahamed Chief of the Turks of the Black Sheep.

Kara Iſſuf ſucceeds him.

ing expell'd again by *Mirom Scha*, who gave it to the same *Abubakar*, his Son.

Kara Issuf was fled for Safety into *Egypt*, where the King secur'd him, and he continu'd confin'd till News was brought that *Tamerlan* was dead. Upon this News *Kara Issuf* found means to Escape, and making towards *Persia*, gather'd an Army, with which he durst attack *Abubakar*. *Helcony*, who being dispossess'd of *Bagdat*, hover'd about at hand, waiting for some Opportunity to recover it, would not let this slip, but whilst *Abubakar* was marching towards *Kara Issuf*, drew near to *Bagdat*, and took it. At the same time, *Kara Issuf* and *Abubakar* met at *Nakxoan*, where *Issuf* got the Day, and the City *Tauriz*, which having well provided with all Necessaries for its Defence, he mov'd against *Kara Osman Bayandury*, then possess'd of the Country of *Diarbek*, which he abandon'd and fled. *Issuf* plac'd Garrisons there, and return'd to *Tauriz*, whence he march'd his Army against *Helcony*, whom he slew in Battle, and took the City. After this, in the Year of the *Hegira* 815, of CHRIST 1413, he went to *Schirvan*, and entring the Country of *Gurgestam*, slew *Constantin*, the King of that Nation, in Battle, and brought away *Scheque Ebrahem*, King of *Xirvan*, Prisoner to *Tauriz*, who afterwards ransom'd himself for a great Sum of Money. *Kara Issuf* also took *Sultania*, *Casbin*, and *Tarom*, and in the Year of the *Hegira* 821, of CHRIST
Ann. 1420. 1420, march'd to *Anteb*, a City in *Syria*, near *Aleppo*; but *Mirzah Scharrok* coming against him from *Karason*, he desisted from that Enterprize, and went to meet him. Before they
His Death. could meet, *Kara Issuf* died at *Ojon* near *Tauriz*; and having no Son nor Kinsman with him,

nor

nor ſo much as a true Friend, for Tyrants never have any, the Soldiers after plundering his Tent, left him unburied, ſtripp'd to his Shirt, and his Ears cut off, to take the Jewels he wore in them. Thus he lay in the Field for ſeveral Days, till being afterwards found by ſome that knew him, they in Compaſſion carry'd and interr'd him at *Ergis*. He enjoy'd the Title of King Fourteen Years, and died in that of the *Hegira* 823, of CHRIST 1421. He had Six Sons, the Eldeſt of them *Pyr Budad Kan* died before his Father; the Second was *Amir Scander*; the Third *Mirzah Joon Scha*; the Fourth *Scha Mahamed*. This laſt had the Government of *Perſia* Twenty three Years, and in that of the *Hegira* 833, of CHRIST 1431, was kill'd by *Hamed Hamadony*; the Fifth Son was *Amir Apſal*, who died alſo before his Father; the Sixth was *Abuſayd*, kill'd by his Brother *Amir Scandar*, of whom we ſhall ſpeak next.

Amir Scandar, Second Son to *Kara Iſſuf*, ſucceeded his Father, in the Year of the *Hegira* 824, of CHRIST 1422, and continu'd the War againſt *Mirzah Scharrok*, by whom he was overthrown in *Meſopotamia*. He retir'd towards the River *Euphrates*, and *Scharrok* return'd to *Tauriz*, where they would not admit him, both for Love and Fear of *Scandar*; and therefore thinking his Stay would be to little Purpoſe, he went to *Karaſon*, and *Scandar* to *Tauriz*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 824, of CHRIST 1426, he Depos'd and put to Death. *Amir Schamzadin* King of *Kalat*, and in 830, or 1428, he did the ſame by *Sultan Hamed Curd*, Governor of the Province of *Curdeſtan*. Two Years after he took *Sultania*, turning out *Mirzah Scharrock*'s Garriſon, who being in-

Amir Scander *ſucceeds* Iſſuf. *Ann.* 1422.

form'd of it, march'd again to *Tauriz*. *Scandar* and his Brother *Joon Scha* went out to meet him, and found him at *Salmas* not far from *Tauriz*, where they ingag'd: *Scandar* was routed, and retir'd in that Condition into the Provinces of *Rumeſtan*. Yet could not *Scharrok* this Time neither make himſelf Maſter of *Tauriz*, but returning to *Karaſon*, and recruiting his Army, march'd to the City *Rey* and took it. There *Joon Scha*, Brother to *Scandar* attended, and was reconcil'd to him, and *Scharrok* gave him the City of *Tauriz*. Upon this Conſideration, *Joon Scha* arm'd againſt his Brother *Scandar*, and obtain'd a Victory over him. *Scandar* withdrew into *Kala Aleniak*, where *Joon Scha* beſieg'd him; and during the Siege, *Schakobad*, a Son of *Scandar*'s, tir'd with his Father's ill Fortune, murder'd him. This happened in the Year of the *Hegira* 841, of CHRIST 1438, and of his Reign the Sixteenth. He had during his Life kill'd his Brother *Abuſayd* upon ſome Suſpicion conceiv'd.

His Death. Ann. 1438.

After the Death of *Scandar*, his Brother *Joon Scha* poſſeſs'd himſelf of all that had been his, and when well eſtabliſh'd on the Throne, march'd againſt the King of *Gurgeſtam*, and took him; then moving about to ſeveral Parts of *Perſia*, reduc'd them all under his Obedience, expelling from ſome of them the Garriſons plac'd in them by *Mirzah Mamud*, the Son of *Bayſangor*, who was dead; all which he perform'd in the Years of the *Hegira* 856 and 857, of CHRIST 1453 and 1454, when he alſo ſubdu'd *Kermon*. In 861, which is 1458, he march'd towards *Karaſon*, and the next Year made War on *Mirzah Ebrahem*, the Son of *Aladaolet*, whom he defeated. In this Battle

Joon Scha *ſucceeds him.*

Battle *Ami Zadaka Zagatay* was kill'd. *Sultan Abuſayd* then reigning at *Balk*, mov'd againſt *Joon Scha*, who made up Matters peaceably with him, becauſe he had receiv'd Advice, that one of his Sons had rebell'd in *Tauriz*, whither he return'd, and ſeizing that rebellious Son, cloſely confin'd him. No ſooner was this Inſurrection quell'd, but *Pyr Budak*, another of his Sons, who was Governor of *Bagdat*, revolted. *Joon Scha* march'd thither; and after having held him a Year beſieg'd, ſome well-minded Perſons interpoſing, they agreed. When all Things were adjuſted, *Mahamedy*, Brother to the Rebel, murder'd him, without the Father's Knowledge. *Joon Scha* return'd to *Tauriz*, which he was Sovereign of; as alſo all *Aderbaion*, *Hyerak*, *Perſia*, *Kerman*, and a great Part of *Syria*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 872, of CHRIST 1468, he *Ann.* 1468. march'd his Army againſt *Ozun Azembek*, Governor of *Diarbek*, but was forc'd home again by the Severity of the Winter, and took the Field again the next Summer. *Joon Scha*, either to Sleep the ſounder, and lay aſide all Care, or becauſe he delighted in it, was wont to make himſelf drunk every Night, and then Sleep till far in the Day. This being his conſtant Cuſtom, the Army march'd, and he follow'd afterwards, attended by about 1000 Horſe of his Guard. *Ozun Azembek* had Intelligence of it, and taking along with him 5000 choſen Men, lay in wait for and attack'd him ſo ſeaſonably, and in ſo proper a Place, that before any Relief could come, he was kill'd, and two of his Sons taken. *Mahamed Mirzah*, the Eldeſt, was immediately put to Death, and *Iſſuf Mirzah* had his Eyes put out. *Joon Scha* reign'd Thirty two Years, *His Death.*

liv'd Seventy, and was the wickedeſt and lewdeſt of all the Princes in thoſe Parts, at that Time.

Aceſm Aly *laſt of the Race.*

Acem Aly, Son to *Joon Scha*, inherited his Father's Kingdom, and all his Treaſures, which being very great, and he not over Wiſe, he rais'd 200000 Horſe and Foot, and gave them a Year's Pay before-hand; moſt of whom having receiv'd it went over to *Sultan Abuſayd*, King of *Karaſon*, who was then marching againſt him. He flying from this Enemy, fell upon *Ozun Azembek*, who defeated and kill'd him; and in him ended the Sovereignty of the Family or Hord of *Kara Kuyonlu*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 873, of CHRIST 1469.

Ann. 1469.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the Turkiſh *Family, or Hord of* Akuyonlu, *which is, the Tribe of the* White Sheep, *by another Name, call'd* Bayonduryah, *who were Sovereigns of* Perſia.

THE *Bayonduris*, or *Turks* of Hord *Bayonduriah*, took the Name of *Akuyonlu*, that is, the Hord or Tribe of the White Sheep, in Oppoſition to thoſe of the Black Sheep, ſpoken of above in the laſt Chapter; and the White prevailing againſt the Black, made themſelves Maſters of *Perſia*, their Dominion beginning in *Ozun Azembek*, as follows.

Ozun

Ozun Azembek, the Son of *Alybek*, the Son of *Osmonbek*, the Son of *Cotolukbek*, was a *Turkyman*, and so expert and fortunate in War, that he subdu'd the best Part of *Persia*. This is he whom we generally call *Usun Cassan*. *(What is here commonly writ* Bek, *is otherwise* Bey, *or* Beg, *and signifies Lord, being the Addition to the Proper Name.)* It has been already mention'd, that *Osmon*, or *Otmonbek*, Grandfather to *Ozun Azembek*, was possess'd of the Country of *Diarbek*, and expell'd it by *Kara Iſſuf*, upon whose Death, *Persia*, in a second Descent, falling under his Son *Joon Scha*, *Ozun Azembek*, who had succeeded his Grandfather, after recovering his own Lands, slew him at an Attack, and then possessing himself of *Tauriz* and *Aderbaion*, kill'd *Mirzah Sultan Abusayd*, who had march'd against him out of *Karason*. When *Joon Scha* was kill'd, as was said above, he had two Sons with him, one whereof was slain with his Father, the other call'd *Mirzah Iſſuf* remain'd alive, but had his Eyes put out, and in that Condition retir'd to *Xyraz*, where he continu'd as Sovereign. *Ozun Azembek* march'd against him, and entring the City by Force, kill'd blind *Iſſuf*. Thence he proceeded to *Kermon*, which he also made himself Master of, as he afterwards did of *Bagdat*; and when he had subdu'd *Hyerak*, *Aderbaion*, *Pars*, and other Provinces in *Persia*, *Sultan Mahamed*, King of the *Rumes*, or Great *Turk*, made War on him, in the Year of the *Hegira* 876, of CHRIST 1472, overthrew him at *Arzenion*, killing his Son, *Zeinel Bek*, who was Governor of *Casbin*, since the Court of *Persia*. *Azembek*, after his Defeat, fled to *Tauriz*, and the *Turks* return'd to *Constantinople*. *Azembek* having reign'd Eleven Years, died in

Ozun Azembek, *or* Usun Cassan.

His Death. Ann. 1478. in that of the *Hegira* 882, of CHRIST 1478; as did *Ogorlu Mahamed*, the Eldeſt of Seven Sons he had, the Second of which was *Sultan Kalil*, the Third *Yamb Mirzah*, the Fourth *Maciah Mirzah*, the Fifth *Iſſuf Mirzah*, the Sixth *Makſudbek*, who ſlew his Brother *Sultan Kalil*, and the Seventh *Zeynelbek*, who was kill'd in the War with the *Turks*.

Sultan Kalil *ſucceeds.* *Sultan Kalil*, or *Hhalil*, aſcended the Throne upon his Father's Death, and immediately ſent his Brother *Yamb Bek* to govern the Country of *Diarbek*. One *Moradbek* rais'd War againſt *Kalil*, who routed and made him fly to the Fortreſs of *Feruzkuk*, where one *Ozembek Gelony* was Commander, who having admitted *Moradbek*, ſent him Priſoner to *Kalil*, and he order'd him to be put to Death in *Karaſon*, where he then was. In the mean while, *Yambbek*, then Governor of *Diarbek*, revolted, and march'd his Army to *Tauriz*, attended by his Brother *Makſudbek*. *Kalil* haſted thither, they *Is kill'd.* fought, and he was routed and kill'd by his Brother *Makſudbek*, when he had Reign'd but Six Months.

Yamb Bek *ſucceeds.* *Yamb Bek*, the Son of *Ozun Azembek*, having ſlain his Brother, poſſeſs'd himſelf of the Crown. A Commander of his, call'd *Buyandurbek*, rebell'd againſt him, in the Year of the *Hegira* 886, of CHRIST 1482, but was by him defeated and kill'd, at *Savah* near *Kom*. This ſame Year *Sultan Mahamed*, the Son of *Sultan Murad*, died at *Conſtantinople*, and was ſucceeded in the Empire by his Son Sultan *Bajazeth*. At this Time, *Sultan Aydar* from *Ardavel* made War on the Country of *Gurgeſtam*, and as he march'd by the way of *Xirvan* to poſſeſs himſelf of that Kingdom, he was prevented by *Farrok Yazor* the King of it, who having made

Appli-

Application to *Yamb Bek* for Succour, and receiv'd it, under the Command of *Seleymon Bek Bigan*, one of his Generals, routed and slew *Aydar* at *Tabasaron*, taking two young Sons of his, the Eldest call'd *Aly Mirzah*, the other *Scha Ismael*, who were secur'd in the Castle of *Sterkfaz*, and of whom we shall speak hereafter. *Yamb Bek* having Reign'd Twelve Years and Ten Months, died at *Harabage* near *Tauriz*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 896, of CHRIST 1492, being but Twenty eight Years of Age. *Dies.* *Ann.* 1492.

Bayfangor Mirzah, the Son of *Yamb Bek*, succeeded his Father in the Throne, and being very young, was under the Tuition and Government of *Sufy Kalil Musulu*, one of his Generals. There were great Commotions and Troubles upon his Accession to the Throne, because those of the Hord of *Bayonduryah* were for Enthroning of *Maziah Mirzah*, Uncle to the Infant King, and Brother to his Father; and joyning with him, made War on *Sufy Kalil*, who presently took the Field, and coming to a Battle, *Maziah* was defeated and kill'd, and his Nephew *Rostom Bek*, Son to his Brother *Maksud*, taken and sent to the Fortress of *Aleniak*. At this Time, *Soleymon Bigen*, who we said had routed and slain *Xeque*, or *Sultan Aydar*, advanc'd from *Diarbek* against *Kelil*, in Defence of *Farrok Yazor*, King of *Schirvan*, whom *Kalil* overthrew and kill'd at *Woan*. In the mean while, *Hayde Sultan Bayondur*, who had the Command of some Troops, assaulted *Aleniak*, where *Rostam Bek* was Prisoner, and rescuing him, he was proclaim'd King. He march'd away with them, and many more that joyn'd with him, towards *Tauriz*, in quest of *Bayfangor*, who abandonning the Country fled away with *Kalil* to *Diarbek*. *Rostam* sent some Troops *Bayfangor succeeds.*

Troops after them, which took and put *Kalil* to Death. *Bayſangor* eſcap'd that Time, and *Roſtam Beg* remain'd poſſeſs'd of the Kingdom, in the Year of the *Hegira* 397, of CHRIST 1493.

Is expell'd.

Ann. 1493.

Roſtam *ſucceeds.*

Roſtam Bek, the Son of *Makſud*, and Grandſon to *Ozun Azembek*, being rais'd to the Throne, as ſoon as he came into *Tauriz*, releas'd *Aly Mirzah*, or *Aly Patza*, and *Scha Iſmael*, two Sons of *Aydar*, that were in Priſon, and taking the Field with *Aly Mirzah*, ſet out after *Bayſangor*, who came to meet them at *Guania* and *Bardah*, but was there by them routed and ſlain. After this Victory, *Roſtam* return'd to *Tauriz*, and *Aly Mirzah*, with his Leave, went away to *Ardâvel*, his native Country, and Abode of his Father *Xeque Aydar*. *Roſtam* repented he had let him go, fearing his Preſence and the Memory of his Father might occaſion ſome Commotion, where he preſently ſent after him, and tho' he ſtood upon his Guard, he was kill'd. His Brother *Scha Iſmael* made his Eſcape, and got Safe to *Gueylon*, where *Karkya Mirzah Aly* then reign'd, to whom *Roſtam Bek* ſent Embaſſadors, demanding to have him deliver'd up to him, which *Karkya* refus'd. In the Year of the *Hegira* 902, of CHRIST 1498, *Hamed Bek*, the Son of *Ogorlu Mahamed*, and Grandſon to *Ozun Azembek*, march'd from *Diarbek* againſt *Roſtam*, whom he engag'd near *Tauriz*, and obtain'd the Victory. *Roſtam* fled to *Gurgeſtam*, where he was kill'd, when he had Reign'd Five Years and Six Months.

Ann. 1498.

Is kill'd.

Hamed *King.*

Hamed Bek having expell'd *Roſtam*, aſcended the Throne. He gave the Government of the Kingdom of *Kermon* to *Haybe Sultan*, and that of *Perſia* to *Kazambek Pernaque*. Theſe two conſpir'd together, and made War upon him,

him, and after ſome Encounters he was ſlain in a Battle he loſt near *Iſpahan* in the Province of *Hyerak*. There now remain'd of all the Race of *Ozun Azembek*, only three Youths, his Grandſons, *viz. Sultan Morad*, the Son of *Yamb*, in *Xirvan*; *Alwan Bek*, the Son of *Iſſuf Bek*, in *Aderbaion*; and *Mahamed Mirzah*, Brother to the latter, at *Yazd*; and among theſe three were divided all the Dominions of *Perſia* that had been in the Poſſeſſion of the Hord of *Akuyonlu*.

Alwan Bek, the Son of *Iſſuf Bek*, and Grandſon to *Ozun Azembek*, was ſaluted King of *Perſia*, by *Kazembek Pernaque* and *Gazybek Bayondur*, his Generals and Kinſmen, who were joyn'd at *Tauriz* by *Haybe Sultan*, who came from *Kermon*. *Mahamed Mirzah*, Brother to *Alwan*, who was at *Yazd*, took alſo upon him the Title of King of *Iſpahan*, or *Hyerak*, againſt whom *Alwan* march'd his Army, and he withdrew, without making any Oppoſition, into the Fortreſs of *Stha*. *Ozem Quiah Geloky* was Governor of it, who joyning *Mahamed*, they both advanc'd towards *Alwan*, who was then upon his return, and meeting, they came to a Battle, which *Alwan* loſt, and retir'd to *Tauriz*, whither *Mahamed* purſu'd. *Alwan* ventur'd out again, and was again routed, with the Loſs of *Haybe Sultan*, and he fled himſelf to *Diarbek*. During theſe Confuſions, the Brothers of *Haybe Sultan* declar'd *Sultan Morad*, who was at *Xirvan*, King of *Hyerak*, and conducting him thence with a good Army, mov'd in queſt of *Mahamed Mirzah*, whom they met near *Iſpahan*, and ingag'd, where *Mahamed* was routed and kill'd, when he had Reign'd a Year, in that of the *Hegira* 905, of CHRIST 1500.

Alwan Bek *reigns.*

Is outed by Mahamed.

He is ſlain by Morad.

Ann. 1500.

Sultan

Sultan Morad, the Son of *Yamb Bek*, by the Death of *Mahamed Mirzah*, obtain'd the Kingdoms of *Pars* and *Hyerak*, and *Alwan* remain'd poſſeſs'd of *Tauriz* and *Aderbaion*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 906, of CHRIST 1501, they both rais'd Forces, and taking the Field, met at *Casbin*. There without Blows, by the Interpoſition of ſome Perſons, they agreed that each ſhould hold what he had. This was a miſerable Time throughout all *Perſia* for Robbing, Violence, Famine, Peſtilence, and univerſal Confuſion. In the Year of the *Hegira* 907, of CHRIST 1502, *Scha Iſmael*, the Son of *Scheque Aydar*, march'd with his Army from *Nakxoam* to *Tauriz*, where *Alwan* reſided, who abandonning the Country, fled to *Bagdat*, and thence to *Diarbek*, where he afterwards died. Thus *Tauriz* fell under the Dominion of *Scha Iſmael*, who the next Year, which was 1504, made War on *Sultan Morad*, who advanc'd from *Schiras* to meet him. They fought at *Amadon*, where *Morad* loſt the Day, fled back to *Schiras*, and thence to *Bagdat*, where *Baribek* was Governor, who receiv'd and protected him; but the following Year *Scha Iſmael* came upon him, and both *Baribek* and *Morad* left the Place, and fled to *Karamon*, or *Karamania*, whence *Morad* return'd to *Diarbek*, where the *Kazel Backs* kill'd him, in the Year of the *Hegira* 920, of CHRIST 1515, and in him ended the Sovereignty of the Hord of *Akuyonly*, or of the White Sheep, in *Perſia*.

End of this Race. *Ann.* 1515.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of Chinguyskan's *Succeſſors, who Rul'd in* Usbek *and* Maurenahar.

WHILST, what has been ſaid above happen'd in *Perſia*, the Progeny of *Tuxykhon*, the Son of *Chinguis Kan*, reign'd in *Usbek*. *Schaybek Kan*, the Son of *Budah Sultan*, being Sovereign of thoſe great Dominions, march'd out of *Usbek*, with mighty Numbers of Men, in the Year of the *Hegira* 900, of CHRIST 1496, and ranging the Provinces of *Maurenahar* and *Karaſon* for four Years together, poſſeſs'd himſelf of the greateſt Part of them, expelling the Succeſſors of *Teymur Langk* or *Tamerlan*. In the Year 1508, *Sultan Ocem Mirzah* dying, as he was going to meet *Schaybek-Khan*, from *Herat* to *Maurenahar*, where he rul'd, his Son *Pady Azamon Mirzah* ſucceeded him, who not being able to withſtand him, fled to *Kandar*, whence he return'd with what Force he was able to make againſt *Schiabek*, was by him defeated, and oblig'd to fly into *Perſia*, to the Protection of *Scha Iſmael Safy*, who treated him honourably. In the Year of the *Hegira* 916, of CHRIST 1511, *Scha Iſmael* march'd againſt *Schaybek*. They met at *Marwo*, where *Schaybek* was kill'd in Battle, when he had Reign'd Twelve Years.

Kuchengy Kan ſucceeded *Schaybek* in *Maurenahar*. In the Year of the *Heigra* 918, of CHRIST 1513, *Scha Iſmael*, King of *Perſia*, plac'd *Nagemy Sony* at the Head of a good Army, and ſent him into *Maurenahar*, where he was joyn'd by *Babor*, King of *India*, and they both together fought the *Usbeks* at *Gagidaon*,

and

and were by them defeated, *Nazemy Sony* being kill'd, and *Babor* flying back into *India*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 935, of CHRIST 1530. *Kuchengy Kan* march'd with his Victorious Army into *Persia*, at the Time when *Scha Thamas*, the Son of *Scha Ismael*, rang'd there successfully. They met and came to a Battle, which the *Usbek* lost, and retir'd to *Maurenahar*; whence he again return'd to *Marwo*, and would have again broke into *Persia*; but a Treaty of Peace was set up between him and the *Persians*, which took effect; so that *Kuchengy Kan* went back to *Maurenahar*, where he died that same Year, when he had Reign'd Twenty.

His Son *Abusayd Kan* Reign'd after him Four Years, and died at the End thereof, without doing any Thing remarkable, in the Year of the *Hegira* 939, of CHRIST 1533.

Obeyd Kan, Cousin-German to the aforesaid *Abusayd*, Son to *Mahamed Kan*, the Brother of *Schaybek*, was declar'd King. This Prince marching his Army out of *Maurenahar* into *Karason*, intended to have enter'd *Persia*, but was prevented by *Scha Thamas*, before whom he fled, without seeing him, abandoning the Country of *Karason*. When *Scha Thamas* was gone home, he return'd a second Time, and very much harrass'd that Country, till the Year of the *Hegira* 946, of CHRIST 1540, when he died at *Bokara*, having Reign'd but little above Six Years.

Abdula Kan, the Son of *Kuchangy Kan*, succeeded *Obeyd Kan* in the Throne, which he enjoy'd but Six Months, and then died.

Adelatife Kan, the Son of *Abdula Kan*, reign'd after his Father, till the Year of the *Hegira* 948, of CHRIST 1542, when he died; and in him ended the Sovereignty of the Successors of *Chinguis Kan* over *Maurenahar*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Scha Iſmael Sufy, *King of* Perſia, *his Origin, and Progeny to this Time.*

I Will now, with my uſual Brevity, give an Account of *Sha*, or *Sheque Iſmael Sufy*, or *Sofi*, and his Succeſſors. He was the Son of *Sheque Aydar*, the Son of *Sultan Juneyd*, the Son of *Sheque* or *Xeque Ebrahem*, the Son of *Xeque* or *Sheque Aly*, the Son of *Xeque* or *Sheque Muza*, the Son of *Scheque Sufy*, and in ſhort, the Thirtieth Deſcendant from *Morts Aly*, Nephew and Son-in-Law to *Mahomet*. When *Teymur Langh*, or *Tamerlan*, return'd into *Perſia* Victorious over the *Turk Bajazeth*, he carried away with him great Numbers of People Captives of ſeveral Families, out of *Caramania*, all whom he intended to put to Death, upon ſome remarkable Occaſion, and with this Reſolution he enter'd *Ardevel*, where he continu'd ſome Days. At that Time, there liv'd in that City, one *Xeque* or *Sheque Safy*, reputed by thoſe People a Saint, and as ſuch, much honour'd and reſpected. The Fame of his Holy Life and Virtue mov'd *Tamerlan* to covet his Friendſhip, and therefore he ſeveral Times viſited him in Perſon; and when about to depart *Ardevel*, took his Leave, offering to grant him any Favour he ſhould ask. *Xeque Safy*, who had been inform'd of *Tamerlan*'s Deſign to put the Captives to Death, laying hold of that Opportunity, made it his Requeſt, that he would ſpare them. *Tamerlan* deſiring to oblige him, not only granted their Lives, but deliver'd them up to him, to diſpoſe

of them as he thought fit. *Scheque Safy* receiv'd them all, and having made the beſt Proviſion of Cloaths and other Neceſſaries that he was able, diſmiſs'd them to return to their own Homes. This general Benefit ſo far gain'd the Hearts of thoſe People, that both they and the reſt that had been left in their Country, to ſhow their Gratitude, often came to viſit *Safy*, bringing him Gifts and Preſents; and this ſo frequently, that few Days paſs'd, on which he was not viſited by many; and this ſort of Acknowledgment their Poſterity continu'd to the Race of *Safy*, till the Days of *Sultan Juneyd*, his Third Grandſon, who liv'd in the Days of *Joon Xa*, or *Sha*, the Son of *Kara Iſſuf*, above ſpoken of. This Man, conſidering how thoſe Viſits were continu'd, the Multitude of thoſe that made them, both a Foot and a Horſeback, the great Authority *Juneyd* began to be in, and growing jealous of all thoſe Circumſtances, order'd him not to receive the Viſits of ſuch a Multitude of People. *Juneyd* reſented this heinouſly, and to avoid a ſecond more diſagreeable Command, went away with his Devotees from *Ardevel* towards *Diarbek*. *Ozun Azembek*, who then reign'd there, receiv'd him favourably, and gave him to Wife a Siſter of his own, call'd *Kadiia Katun*, who bore him a Son, whom they call'd *Aydar*. *Xeque Juneyd* was wont to make ſome Excurſions thence into *Gurgeſtam*, under Colour of Zeal for his Sect, compelling thoſe he made Priſoners to embrace it; and thus he continu'd to do, till once entring the Kingdom of *Trabizond*, and killing the King, he poſſeſs'd himſelf of that Country, and plac'd his Son *Aydar* on the Throne, who held it after his Father's Death. It happen'd afterwards, that *Azembek* ſlew *Joon Scha*, as has been

been said; whereupon *Aydar* remov'd to *Ardevel*, where he marry'd *Alemxa*, the Daughter of *Azembek*, his own Cousin-German, by whom he had *Aly Patxa*, and *Sha Ismael*, who was born in the Year of the *Hegira* 892, of CHRIST 1488, and he took the Name of *Sufy*, or *Sofi*, for the Reason given in the First Book. Scha Ismael *born.* *Ann.* 1488.

The following Year, *Aydar* entring the Kingdom of *Schyrvan*, was kill'd by *Farrok Tassar*, King of that Country, who routed and slew him, with the Assistance of *Tamb Bek*, as was observ'd before; and his two Sons *Aly Patxa* and *Scha Ismael* were taken; the latter whereof afterwards *Sultan Rostam Bek* set at Liberty, when he had put to Death *Aly Patxa* the Eldest. *Scha Ismael* went away into *Gueylon*, where he staid Six Years; and then seeing *Persia* was all in Confusion, with the Troubles occasion'd by those of the Hord of *Akuyonlu*, he remov'd into *Arzenion*, and having there gather'd 7000 *Caramanians*, devoted to *Safy*, of the Tribes, or Families of *Estayalu*, *Xambu*, *Takaluh*, *Versatlu*, *Rombu*, *Zulkaderlu*, *Auxar*, *Kayar*, *Sufiah*, *Karayadak*, and many others that follow'd him, when he was but Fourteen Years of Age, in the Year of the *Hegira* 906, of CHRIST 1501, he invaded *Schirvan*, and ingaging *Farrok Tassar*, who had slain his Father *Aydar*, overthrew, kill'd, and possess'd himself of his Kingdom. The next Year he made War on *Alwan*, in *Nacxon*, whence *Alwan* fled, and *Ismael* took *Tauriz*. Having obtain'd this Victory, he instituted the *Tage*, which is the Turbant, or great red Cap, with Twelve Edgings round it, which he gave his Followers as a Mark of Distinction, in Memory of the Twelve Sons of *Ozem*, the Son of *Aly*, whom they reckoned as Saints, *Gains the Crown.* *Ann.* 1501.

and he boaſted himſelf to be Deſcended from them; and thence that new Soldiery had the Name of *Cazel Baſch*, which ſignifies *Red Heads*, from *Baſch*, a Head, and *Cazel*, Red. This done, he went away to *Arzenion*, and march'd his Army into the Kingdom of *Zulkador*; but as ſoon as he had turn'd his Back, *Alwan* return'd to *Tauriz*, to the Relief whereof *Iſmael* haſted, and *Alwan* fled from him to *Bagdat*, and thence into *Diarbek*, where he died two Yeas after. This was in the Year of the *Hegira* 908, of CHRIST 1503. *Iſmael* ſtaid at *Tauriz*, but ſent his Forces into *Perſia*, againſt *Morad Bek*, who being defeated by him, with the loſs of 10000 Men, in the Year 1504, abandon'd to him *Perſia* and *Kermon*, which all fell under the Dominion of *Iſmael*, who went to winter at *Kom*, and thence ſent *Elias Bek* with an Army againſt the City *Rey*: *Ozem Bek Gelohi*, General to *Kabat Feruz Kuk*, lay in the way to meet him, and coming to a Battle, defeated and kill'd him. *Iſmael* being inform'd of this Overthrow, ſet out immediately in queſt of *Ozem Bek Gelohi*, who retir'd to *Feruz Kuk*, a Place ſtrong by Art and Nature. *Iſmael* beſieg'd, and finding no other way to reduce him, cut off his Water, which was convey'd from without by Aqueducts, the want whereof oblig'd the Beſieg'd to ſurrender within a Month. As little while as this War laſted, there died in it 30000 Men. Having quell'd this Commotion, *Iſmael* ſet out for *Karaſon*; but as ſoon as he was gone, one *Reiſh Mahamed Karraby*, with ſome Forces, poſſeſs'd himſelf of *Yazd*. *Iſmael* turn'd back upon him; and tho' he defended himſelf Bravely, the City was at length taken, as was *Karraby*, whom *Iſmael* caus'd to be burnt, in the Year

Year of the *Hegira* 911, of CHRIST 1506. He mov'd thence to *Schiras*, where he put out a Proclamation, ordaining, That every Man who had been in the War againſt his Father *Aylar* ſhould be put to Death; upon which Edict between 30 and 40000 Men periſh'd. In the Year of the *Hegira* 914, of CHRIST 1509, whilſt he was wintering at *Turon*, *Sultan Ozem Mirzah*, King of *Karaſon* died, and *Schabek Kan*, the *Usbek*, poſſeſs'd himſelf of his Dominions, the dead King's Sons flying to *Hyerak*.

Iſmael march'd his Army into the Country of *Rumeſtan*, or the *Turks*; and having given the Government of *Diarbek* to *Mahamed Kan Eſtayalu*, in the Year of the *Hegira* 916, of CHRIST 1511, advanc'd to *Bagdat*, where *Barheyk* govern'd, who left that City to him and fled to the *Turks*; and he poſſeſs'd himſelf of it, notwithſtanding the Loſs of Men he ſuſtain'd in paſſing the River *Tygris*, as was mention'd in the Firſt Book. Hence he proceeded to *Kuſiſtam*, which is the ſame as *Suſter*, the City *Suſa*, or *Sus*, where *Ahaſhuerus* and *Eſther* liv'd, and it ſtill flouriſhes, which Place he took, and in the Depth of Winter march'd his Forces to *Schirvan*, *Bahu*, and *Darband*, and took them. In the Year of the *Hegira* 914, of CHRIST 1512, he mov'd into *Karaſon*, againſt *Schaybek Kan*, who hearing of his Approach, retir'd to *Marwo*. *Iſmael* provok'd him to take the Field: He did ſo, they came to a Battle, which *Schaybek Kan* loſt, together with his Life, and *Karaſon* fell under the Dominion of *Iſmael*.

This Year died *Bajazeth* the Second, King of the *Rumes* or *Turks*, and his Son *Selim* ſucceeded him in the Throne. In the Year of

Selim, *Grand Signior.*

the *Hegira* 919, of CHRIST 1514, was born *Xa*, or *Sha Thamas*, the Son of *Scha Iſmael Sufy*, or *Sofi*; and the next Year *Selim* march'd his Army to *Arzenion*. *Iſmael* was then at *Iſpahan*, the Capital of the Province of *Hyerak* in *Perſia*, whence he remov'd to *Chalderon*, where the two Armies met and fought; and *Iſmael* being routed, with the loſs of 5000 Men, retir'd to *Tquriz*, and thence to *Gazin*. *Sultan Selim* enter'd *Tauriz*, where he ſtaid but a Fortnight, and then return'd to *Amaſiah*. This Year the *Cazelbax*'s ſlew *Sultan Morad* in *Diarbek*, and brought his Head to *Scha Iſmael*; and the next Year *Selim* took the important Fortreſs of *Kemak*, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of the Lands of *Alaolet* and *Zulkader*, and of *Aleppo* in *Syria*. In the Year of the *Hegira* 923, of CHRIST 1518, he ſubdu'd *Diarbeck*, which is *Meſopotamia*, and dying in 1521, was ſucceeded by his Son *Soliman*. *Sha Iſmael Sufy*, or *Sofi*, having been King of all *Perſia* Twenty Years, died in 1525, at the Age of Thirty eight. He was reſolute in War, formidable and undaunted; rather harſh and cruel, than mild. He was wont to ſay, That as there is but one God in Heaven, ſo there ought to be but one King upon Earth; and his inſatiable Ambition made him aſpire to be the Man. He was much reſpected, and honour'd by his Subjects, as a religious and holy Perſon; and ſometimes his barbarous Troops would have attributed to him ſome ſort of Divinity; but as haughty as he was, he always rejected it. This he did moſt ſignally one Time; when after gaining a coſtly and moſt important Victory, ſome ſaluted him by the Title of a Prophet, others of an Angel, and others of a God; and not being able to diſſwade them from it, he caus'd

Scha Iſmael *dies. Ann.* 1525.

caus'd a mighty Pit of a great Depth to be dug, and throwing one of his Shooes into it, order'd the Man that lov'd himſelf beſt to go fetch it out. No ſooner was the Word out of his Mouth, than ſome Thouſands leap'd in, and the Moment they were down all the Earth that had been dug out of it was thrown upon them; and thus their Ignorance and Barbarity was chaſtiz'd by being Buried alive. He had four Sons, *Scha Thamas* the Eldeſt, the Second *Aleas*, or *Elias Mirzah*, the Third *Som Mirzah*, and the Fourth *Barbon Mirzah*. *His Iſſue.*

Scha Thamas, Eldeſt Son to *Scha Iſmael Sufy*, or *Soſi*, ſucceeded him in the Kingdom of *Perſia*, and was ingag'd in ſome Wars, the moſt conſiderable of them with the *Turks*. He reign'd Fifty three Years, and died in the Year of the *Hegira* 983, of CHRIST 1576, leaving two Sons, *Scha Iſmael*, and *Mahamed* the Blind. Scha Thamas *ſucceeds him.*

Scha Iſmael, Eldeſt Son to *Scha Thamas*, inherited his Father's Kingdom of *Perſia*, and held it but one Year and Ten Months, at the end whereof he died, and left the Crown to his Blind Brother *Mahamed*, in the Year 1578. Scha Iſmael,

Scha Mahamed, Second Son to *Scha Thamas*, and Brother to *Scha Iſmael*, upon his Death aſcended the Throne, and tho' Blind, govern'd the Kingdom Seven Years, at the end whereof he died. Scha Mahamed,

Scha Abas, Son to Blind *Mahamed*, by his Death inherited the Crown of *Perſia*, and is ſtill reigning, having rul'd Thirty three Years, during which Time he has undertaken ſeveral Expeditions, the moſt remarkable whereof were into *Gueylon*, which had rebell'd, and by him reduc'd, with eminent Danger to himſelf and Forces, as was ſaid in the Firſt Book. He march'd to *Balk*, in *Usbek*, which he held Scha Abas.

ſome Months beſieg'd, and was at laſt forc'd to riſe without taking it, after ſuſtaining ſome Loſs. He deſtroy'd the Kingdom of *Lar* in *Perſia*, the King whereof was taken and put to Death, for offering Violence to, and robbing the Caravans that paſs'd that Way. He recover'd the City *Tauriz* from the *Turks*, who were in Poſſeſſion of it ſince the Days of his Grandfather *Scha Thamas*, from whom they took it, on which Account the *Turks* continue the War in *Perſia*. I write no more Particulars of this King, or his Predeceſſors, thinking what I have ſaid ſufficient to anſwer my Undertaking, to give an Account of the Kings of *Perſia*, and the Succeſſion of them till our Days, leaving a more ample Relation to ſuch as have more Ability, Leaſure and Curioſity, and praiſing God, for that he has been pleas'd to permit me to put an End to this Abridgment.

Thus far our Author Teixeira; *we ſhall now add a Brief Account of the Kings of* Perſia, *who have Reign'd from that Time till our Days.*

THE

THE SUPPLEMENT TO *Teixeira's* Hiſtory of *Perſia*.

TO what has been above ſaid concerning *Sha Abas*, in the Thirty third Year of whoſe Reign *Teixeira* concluded his Hiſtory, we may add what follows. He was cāll'd the Great for his many conſiderable Actions, having reduc'd all the great Monarchy of *Perſia* under his Obedience by Force of Arms, tho' but an inconſiderable Part of it own'd him at his firſt Acceſſion to the Throne. Beſides his many warlike Exploits, he is famous for having built a noble *Caravanſera*, or Houſe for Entertainment of Strangers, and moſt Magnificent Moſque, and the Royal Palace at *Iſpahan*; but the greateſt of his Works was cutting through Mountains, to render the River, which runs by that City, Navigable. Nor was he only remarkable for his Succeſs in War and Structures, his prudent Government gain'd him no leſs Renown, and he was look'd upon as a juſt Prince. One cruel Action has left a Stain upon his Reputation. Of all his Sons he had only one left, call'd *Sephi Mirza*, a Prince Scha Abas.

Prince excellently qualify'd and expert at all Weapons. The People had a great Eſteem for him, which gave his Father ſome Jealouſie, as fearing he might not wait for his Death to aſcend the Throne. His Jealouſie was increas'd by this Accident. *Sephi Mirza* happen'd to let fly the firſt Arrow at a wild Boar in his Preſence, which is a Capital Crime in *Perſia*, no Man being permitted to ſhoot before the King. However, *Scha Abas* did not expreſs his Reſentment; the Reaſon why he then ſuppreſs'd his Anger, being that Prince's having no Children; but he ſoon after getting a Son on a young Woman Slave, he had taken a Fancy to, as *Scha Abas*'s Affection increas'd towards the Infant, ſo the Jealouſie he had conceiv'd of his Son advanc'd, till being no longer able to conceal it, he caus'd that Prince's Eyes to be put out. Nor would that ſatisfie him, for being ſtill afraid of him, Blind as he was, he order'd a great Man of the Court to bring him his Head. That Nobleman, ſurpriz'd at ſuch a Command, refus'd to obey it, ſaying, He would rather loſe his own Head than embrew his Hands in his Prince's Blood. The King, offended at his Diſobedience, Baniſh'd him, and the next Day having enjoyn'd another Prime Man to do the ſame, he immediately put it in Execution, and brought him his Son's Head in a gold Baſon. That diſmal Object brought him to himſelf, and not being able to forbear ſhedding Tears at ſuch a Melancholy Spectacle, turn'd out that Executioner with many Reproaches, ſeiz'd all his Eſtate, and allow'd him only a *Mamoudi*, that is, about Nine-Pence a Day to ſubſiſt on. The other Nobleman, who had ſo generouſly refus'd to obey the cruel Command, was ſoon after re-

Kills his only Son.

call'd,

call'd, and had one of the beſt Governments in the Kingdom beſtow'd on him as a Reward for his Loyal Diſobedience.

Ever ſince then, all the Male Children of the Blood Royal are kept ſhut up in the *Haram*, or Women's Apartment, with two or three Eunuchs, who teach them to Read and Write, and to ſhoot with a Bow. They alſo ride about the Gardens on an Aſs, but never a Horſeback, nor are they ſeen by the People. Thus it was that *Scha Abas* bred his Grandſon. He reign'd upwards of Forty Years, and died in the Year of our Lord 1628. Before his Death, he order'd himſelf to be buried in ſome Place that might be altogether unknown to all Men; that his Grandſon ſhould be immediately upon his Demiſe ſeated on the Throne, and that he ſhould be call'd *Scha Sephi*.

Dies. Ann. 1628.

As ſoon as *Scha Abas* had expir'd, the Generals of the Horſe and of the Musketiers, who had receiv'd his laſt Orders, haſted to the Palace at *Iſpahan*, where being attended by many more of the Nobility, they brought out the young Prince, and proclaim'd him King; taking off the Veſt he had on, and tearing it, which is a ſign of Mourning in *Perſia*, and putting him on another plain one, which he wore till Midnight. Then was he Clad in the Royal Robes, ſeated on the Throne, and complimented by all the Nobility, as was done the next Day by the Commonalty. He continu'd ſome Years very unskilfull in the Art of Reigning, as well by Reaſon of his tender Years, as becauſe his Grandfather had in his Infancy ſtupify'd him, by taking too much Opium; for which Reaſon, the Phyſicians adviſ'd him to drink Wine, to warm his Blood and

Scha Sephi.

and chear his Spirits. At length, with theſe Helps, he came to himſelf; and the firſt remarkable Thing he did, was ſtriking off the Head of *Alî Couli Kan*, who had conquer'd the Kingdoms of *Lar* and *Ormus* for his Grandfather. He alſo caus'd three of that General's Sons to be beheaded; as alſo ſeven other Prime Men of the Court after his Return to *Iſpahan*; and ſo by Degrees took the Government into his own Hands. The Occaſion and Manner of the Death of thoſe great Men was thus.

It was thought that *Scha Abas* had left a private Order with the Sultaneſs and *Mirza Tahe*, enjoyning them to take off thoſe Noblemen as ſoon as *Scha Sephi* was well ſettled on the Throne, and had appointed ſuch Governors in all Parts as he could rely on. Thoſe Gentlemen having got the wind of that Order, and concluding that the Time drew near for putting of it in Execution, prevented *Mirza Tahe*, by murdering of him one Morning at his Levee, which they immediately acquainted the King with themſelves, in a very preſumptuous Manner. *Scha Sephi* diſſembled his Reſentment, and told them, They had done very well. It is to be obſerv'd, That the Sultaneſs and *Mirza Tahe* held their private Councils at Night, he being cut Cloſe, and diſappointed all that thoſe great Men us'd to project in the Day. The Sultaneſs therefore contriv'd their Death. Eight or nine Days after they had committed the Murder, thoſe Perſons ſitting in Council with the King, an Eunuch came in, which was the Signal for the King to riſe; and as ſoon as he withdrew, the Room was fill'd with Eunuchs, who fell upon *Jani Kan* and his Accomplices, and ſtruck off their Heads; which, with

with their Bodies, were immediately expos'd to the View of the People in the *Meydan*, or Great Square of *Ispahan*; and the People in *Persia* never presuming to examine what the King does, most of them kick'd the Heads about, saying to one another, *These are the Heads of the Dogs, who have displeas'd the King.*

Having said, that *Mirza Tahe* was cut Close, which gave him the Liberty of entring the *Haram*, or Women's Apartment, it may not be amiss to mention how he came so. Being Governor of *Giulan*, under *Scha Abas*, he abus'd one of his Pages in the unnatural Way. The Youth rode Day and Night till he came with his Complaint to the King, who gave him the Government of *Giulan*, with Orders to send him *Mirza Take*'s Head. That Governor missing his Page, and concluding he was gone to complain, which would be his inevitable Ruin, resolv'd to prevent it by punishing himself, which he accordingly did, cutting off all the Part wherewith he had committed the Crime. In that Condition he caus'd himself to be carried to Court in a Horse-Litter, with an able Surgeon attending; and getting to *Ispahan* along an uncommon Road, was convey'd in that Condition to the King, to whom he presented the undeniable Testimonials of his Repentance, begging Pardon for his Offence, which was granted, upon Consideration that he had receiv'd a sufficient Punishment, and he sent back to his Government, ther Satisfaction being made to the Page. This Man *Scha Abas* thought worthy to be mad *Athenat Doulat*, or Prime Minister, after his Death, which cost him his Life, as was said above.

Punishment of Sodomy.

Scha

Notable Story of Abi Merdan Kan.

Scha Sephi being rid of thoſe dangerous great Men above mention'd, was deſirous to have the Head of *Ali Merdan Kan*, Governor of *Candahar*, of whom he had conceiv'd much Jealouſie, on Account of his prodigious Wealth, all his Service being of Gold, and his Houſhold as Magnificent as the King's. But he could never compaſs it; for that Governor, being preſs'd to come to Court, and ſuſpecting it was to undergo the ſame Fate with the others, deliver'd up the Province of *Candahar* to the *Mogol*, by whom he was much honour'd and careſs'd. His Wealth was not acquir'd by himſelf, but came by Inheritance; for he was deſcended from the ancient Kings of *Candahar*, who were of the *Tartar* Extraction. The *Mogol* could not honour *Ali Merdah Kan* more than *Scha Sephi* did his two Sons, whom he had in his Power, and whom all Men expected he would have put to Death. This Policy of *Scha Sephi* was afterwards very advantageous to his Son *Scha Abas* the Second, when he laid Siege to *Candahar*, with 50000 Men; for the *Mogol's* Army being moſtly compos'd of *Perſians*, they call'd to Mind how kind *Scha Sephi* had been to *Ali Merdan Kan's* two Sons, and therefore made little Oppoſition againſt the King of *Perſia*, who, accordingly ſoon recover'd *Candahar*. The *Mogol* being concern'd at that Loſs, one Day ask'd *Ali Merdan Kan*, how he might recover *Candahar*, who anſwer'd, It would be an eaſie Matter, if he could find out ſuch another Traitor as himſelf.

The Reign of *Scha Sephi* was tyrannical, whereof I will here give but one Inſtance. Returning one Day from the Houſe of the *Kelonter*, who is as it were Mayor of the Town,

Town, at *Zulfa*, where he had been making merry and drank Wine to Exceſs, as ſoon as he came to the Palace, he ſent for his Sultaneſs; ſhe, being inform'd that he had drank hard, made no haſte to him, ſo that he fell aſleep. Awaking ſoon after, and not finding the Queen, he ſent for her a ſecond time, and ſhe came. As ſhe came into the Room ſhe perceiv'd he was fallen aſleep again, and expecting him to awake again, went into a Nich, or ſort of Cloſet cover'd by the Hanging, us'd to lay by the Quilts and Bedding. The King awaking again, and ſtill miſſing the Queen, ask'd in a Paſſion, why ſhe did not come. The King's Mother, who was no other than a *Georgian* Slave, and mortally hated the young Sultaneſs who was Daughter to the King of *Georgia*, becauſe little Account was made of her, being then in the Room, laid hold of this Opportunity to incenſe the King againſt her, and made a Sign with her Hand, to ſhow the young Queen was in the Nich. The King then ſtarting up in a Rage, ſtabb'd that unhappy Princeſs five or ſix times, and without any Concern laid him down to ſleep again. The next Morning having only a confuſed Notion of what he had done over Night, he ask'd for the Queen, and being told what had happen'd, he was much concern'd, and immediately ſent Orders throughout all the Kingdom, that no Wine ſhould be drank; directing all Governours to ſtave all Veſſels in which any ſhould be found; which was accordingly done in all Places, except the Houſes of the *Engliſh*, the *Dutch* and the *Capucins*. However this Regulation was of no long Continuance, for the next Year Wine was made and drank as before.

Drunken Cruelty.

Another

Another time having been entertaind by a private Perſon, call'd *Gorgia Sultenon*, at *Sulfa*, and drank very hard, the next Day he was much out of Order, and fell into a violent Fever, which had like to have carry'd him off. Some Enemies of that *Armenian* told him he had made that Entertainment to poiſon the King, who was dangerouſly ſick, and if he happen'd to die, he muſt look to himſelf. The *Armenian* was in ſuch a Fright at it, that he poiſon'd himſelf, and dy'd in two or three Hours after. There was ſome Show made of enquiring who had put him into that Fright; but great Men at Court being concern'd in it, all was huſh'd up. This King reign'd 14 Years, and dy'd in 1642, of exceſſive drinking, which he was much addicted to.

Scha Sefy *Dies.* *An.* 1642.

His Son *Scha Abas* the Second was enthron'd at *Casbin* with the uſual Ceremony about the latter end of the ſame Year, and made his ſolemn Entry into *Iſpahan* the Beginning of the next. The Day for his Entry being appointed, all the Inhabitants were under Arms, and made a Lane along the Road, without the City, which with abundance of Horſe and Foot from all Parts, and other People coming, extended five Leagues in Length. All the Way for two Leagues was cover'd with Brocards of Gold or Silver, Silks and other rich Stuffs, which coſt the King nothing, the *Scha Bander*, or Chief of the Merchants, obliging every one to furniſh his Part for that Solemnity. The *European* Merchants were alſo order'd to attend the King, and being preſented to him, kiſs'd his Boot. None rides on the Silks above mention'd but the King, and as ſoon as he is paſs'd, the Mob ſcrambles for them. When the King was arriv'd in the City, there were

Scha Abas II.

were curious Fire-works in the *Meidan*, as alſo Illuminations, and all other Sorts of Rejoicings.

The next Year, 1643, the Prince of the *Usbecks* came to *Iſpahan*, to crave Succour of the *Perſian* King, againſt his Sons, who were in Rebellion, and had defeated him in two Battels, in the laſt of which he had loſt an Eye. *Scha Abas* went out himſelf to meet and receive him with the greateſt Honours, giving him the Left Hand, which in *Perſia* is the moſt honourable. After having friendly entertain'd him for ſome Time, he aſſiſted him with 15000 Horſe, 8000 Foot, and 6000 *Tomans* in Mony, being about 200000 Pounds Sterling, with which he recover'd his Dominions. *His Generoſity.*

Scha Abas was a brave and generous Prince, and a great Lover of Strangers. He underſtood Drawing, and was nice in all Sorts of curious Workmanſhip, but he lov'd Wine, like his Father, and having drank to Exceſs was guilty of ſome Actions, which would be thought cruel in *Europe*, and yet in *Perſia* they are look'd upon as juſt Puniſhments for diſobeying the Prince. It is an eſtabliſh'd Principle among thoſe People, that they ought to obey the King as they would God, whom he repreſents, and when a *Perſian* ſwears by the King's Head, that he will do any thing, he infallibly performs it, and that out of hand. *Loyalty of Perſians.*

Scha Abas having one Day drank to Exceſs in his *Haram*, or Apartment of the Women, he commanded three Ladies to drink. They excus'd themſelves, alledging, that they intended ſhortly to go on Pilgrimage to *Mecca*; but the King repeating his Command two or three Times, and they ſtill refuſing to obey, he order'd them all to be bound, a great Fire to be lighted, *Drunken Cruelty.*

lighted, and them to be caſt into it, where they were burnt.

At another Debauch, the King again deſir'd a Lady to drink Wine, and ſhe refuſing, he ſtarted up and order'd the Chief of the Eunuchs to burn her, as had been done by the other three. He was about performing it, but the Lady prevail'd with her Prayers and Tears to ſpare her, hoping the King would relent, when the drunken Fit was over, becauſe he had an extraordinary Affection for her. The King awaking, ask'd the Eunuch, whether he had fulfilled his Commands, and he anſwering, he had thought himſelf oblig'd to reſpite the Execution, that Prince was ſo highly offended, that he caus'd the Eunuch to be immediately burnt, and pardon'd the Lady.

Death of Scha Abas, 1664.

Scha Abas reign'd above 22 Years, and dy'd at a Place call'd *Tehzon*, in the Year 1664, of an Inflamation in the Throat, occcaſion'd by exceſſive drinking, after the Example of his Father. His Body was convey'd to *Kom*, where he had built his Monument.

As ſoon as he was dead, the General of the Muſketeers, and the chief of the Aſtrologers, repair'd to the *Haram*, or Women's Apartment, where they ſaluted the Prince, King. He proſtrated himſelf at the Gate of the *Haram*, and then ſitting on his Heels, one of them that brought him the News of his Acceſſion to the Throne, according to Cuſtom, put on his Sword, ſaying, *Your Majeſty may be pleas'd to remember, that your Slave has had the Honour of girding on this Cymiter.* Having ſo ſaid, he withdrew to go order the Trumpets to ſound and the Drums to beat as uſual, and all the People hearing that Noiſe, reſorted in the Morning to the *Meydan*, or great Square, crying

ing before the Palace Gate, *Patſcha Salamelek*, that is, *I ſalute you Emperor.* This is all the Ceremony of Enthroning a King of *Perſia*, only the Cap of the *Sophis* is ſet on his Head, but there is no Crown, or Coronation.

Scha Seſi *the Second, or* Soliman.

This Monarch was call'd *Scha Seſi* the Second, and having been always of a weakly Conſtitution, fell dangerouſly ill, preſently after his Advancement. It is the Cuſtom, upon ſuch Occaſions, for all the great Men of the Court, and the Governors of Provinces, as ſoon as they have Notice of the King's Indiſpoſition, to ſend each of them a Sum of Money to Court, according to their Ability, or Generoſity. It is generally in Gold, and is put into a Gold Baſon, adorn'd with precious Stones, which is wav'd three times over the King's Head, uttering theſe Words at the ſame Time, *Patſcha bachena courbon olſon*; that *This Money is a Sacrifice for the Health of the King's Head.* If the King recovers, all that Money is given to the Poor, with much more added by him and all the *Haram*; but if he happens to die, it is all put into the Treaſury, and the Poor have nothing. The 20th of *Auguſt*, 1667, his Diſtemper was at the higheſt, and it was thought he would not have liv'd till the next Day. All the great Men of the Court, ſeeing him in that Condition, repair'd to the Moſque call'd *Babaron*, without the City, to pray for his Health, and all of them together gave near 1000 *Tomans* in Charity to the Poor; being near 4000 Pounds. The next Day all the *Armenian* Chriſtians were commanded to pray for the King's Health, and they all, as well Clergy as Laiety, went to offer up their Devotions, on the Bank of the River, which is between

Prayers for him.

Iſpahan and *Zulpha*. They alſo ſent their *Kelonter*, or Chief, with 50 *Tomans* in Gold, to be wav'd over the King's Head; but that is not done with the ſame Words that are expreſs'd when they wave the Money ſent by thoſe who profeſs the Law of *Ali*, for they then only utter theſe Words, *Berrai ſe ſadduk*, that is, *Deſign'd for Alms*.

Superſtition. The King, a few Days after, was out of Danger, but the Matter was, to reſtore him to perfect Health. Having been always in a languiſhing Condition, and his Phyſicians never able to diſcover the Cauſe of his Diſtemper, he ſuſpected that their Ignorance retarded his Recovery, and two or three of them were therefore ill treated. At Length, the other Phyſicians, fearing it might be their own Turn next, bethought themſelves, that *Perſia* being at the ſame time afflicted with a Scarcity of Proviſions, and the King's Sickneſs, the Fault muſt be in the Aſtrologers, who had not choſen a favourable Hour when the King was ſet upon the Throne, and therefore perſwaded him, that the Ceremony muſt be perform'd again, and he change his Name in a more lucky Minute. The King, and his Council, approving of their Notion, the Phyſicians, and Aſtrologers together, expected the firſt unfortunate Day, which, according to their Superſtition, was to be follow'd in the Evening by a propitious Hour. Among the *Gavres*, or original *Perſians*, Worſhipers of Fire, there are ſome, who boaſt their Deſcent from the *Ruſtans*, who formerly reign'd over *Perſia* and *Parthia*. On the Morning of the aforeſaid unlucky Day, they took one of thoſe *Gavres*, of that Blood-Royal, and having plac'd him on the Throne, with his Back

Back againſt a Figure that repreſented him to the Life; all the great Men of the Court came to attend him, as if he had been their King, performing all that he commanded. This Scene laſted till the favourable Hour, which was a little before Sun-ſetting, and then an Officer of the Court came behind, and cut off the Head of the Wooden Statue with his Cymiter; the *Gaure* then ſtarting up, and running away. That very Moment the King came into the Hall, and the *Sofy*'s Cap being ſet on his Head, and his Sword girt to his Side, he ſat down on the Throne, changing his Name for that of *Soliman*, which was perform'd with the uſual Ceremonies, the Drums beating, and Trumpets ſounding, as before. It was requiſite to act this Farce, in order to ſatisfie the Law, which requires that in order to change his Name, and take Poſſeſſion of the Throne again, he muſt expel a Prince that has uſurp'd it upon ſome Pretenſions; and therefore they made Choice of a *Gaure*, who pretended to be deſcended from the Ancient Kings of *Perſia*, and was, beſides, of a different Religion from that of the Government. The King continuing to recover his Health from that Day, and the Price of Proviſions abating, the Phyſicians retriev'd their Credit, and all the Aſtrologers were diſgrac'd, except 2 or 3, look'd upon to be the ableſt of them.

Scha Soliman, before his Acceſſion to the Throne, had ſcarce ſeen any thing but Women, and black Eunuchs, among whom he had no Opportunity to learn the Art of Government, and was only educated in Cruelty, and Laſciviouſneſs. Being led by his bloody Temper, the firſt Part of his Reign was extraordinary ſevere and rigid, of which we. *Cruelty.*

have a conſiderable Inſtance in what he did by one of his Concubines. It is a Cuſtom among the Kings of *Perſia*, to marry their Concubines to Men of low Condition, and accordingly *Scha Soliman* gave one he was moſt fond of, to a Scowrer of Cloth; but his Kindneſs ſtill continuing, he took her again into the *Haram*, ſending her Husband into ſome remote Parts, with an honourable Employment, after ſhe had Six Children by him. The King being curious, or rather jealous, ask'd her one Day, which of the two ſhe lov'd beſt; and ſhe anſwering undauntedly, that it was her Husband, becauſe he had her in a lawful Manner; he, in a Paſſion, order'd her to be thrown into the River; but his Affection returning upon him, he forgave her, as he did afterwards, having order'd her to be burnt alive, and ſhe continu'd in the *Haram* after his Death.

He practis'd his Cruelty a long Time, puting to Death many great Men of the Court, upon ſlight Occaſions; but giving himſelf up afterwards to Drunkenneſs and Women, he ſeem'd to bear only the Title of a King, leaving the whole Adminiſtration of the Government to *Mirza Taher*, his prime Miniſter. This Man was a downright Knave, and not regarding his great Age, which was about 80 Years, becauſe ſtill of a hail Conſtitution, he regarded only the higheſt Bidder, and ſometimes was ſo mean as to take a Crown. It was reported of him, that being one Day ask'd by the King, how many Children he had, he anſwer'd, he did not remember the Number, but that, when he went home, he would ſend it him in Writing.

Lewdneſs.

Scha

Scha Soliman being ſometimes urg'd to declare War againſt the *Turks*, upon an extraordinary favourable Opportunity, anſwer'd, that having once concluded a Peace, as requeſted of him, he ought not to break his Word; and being farther told, that the Grand-Seignior would certainly make War on him, as ſoon as he was at Peace with the Chriſtian Princes, he reply'd, he ſhould be contented as long as *Iſpahan* was left him.

However, he had War with *Sultan Colican*, King of the *Usbecks*, and was a Loſer by it. The Occaſion of it was, that the ſaid King's Brother going in Pilgrimage to *Mecca* with the Queen, attended by 3000 *Tartars*, *Scha Soliman* would permit only 200 of them to come into *Iſpahan*, and a Casket of Jewels being by them left in his Cuſtody, till the Return of thoſe Princes; he underſtanding that the Queen return'd without her Brother-in-Law, who had dy'd by the Way, made her go by the Way of *Sciras*, and not by *Iſpahan*, refuſing to reſtore her Jewels.

To conclude with this King, his Reign was not remarkable for any honourable Actions, and therefore it will be convenient to come to the end of it. On *Wedneſday*, the 21ſt of *July*, 1694, the King was taken ill, or rather grew worſe of his Diſtempers, occaſion'd by Exceſs of Wine; being apprehenſive of the Danger of his Life, he the next Day order'd 3700 *Tomans* to be diſtributed among the Poor, and Directions to be ſent to all Governors of Provinces, to diſcharge all Priſoners throughout the Kingdom. Nothing avail'd, for he dy'd the 28th of the aforeſaid

Month, at 53 Years of Age, when he had reign'd 30.

Scha Oſſen, 1694. The next Day his Son, *Scha Oſſen*, was ſeated on the Throne, and being adviſ'd to take the Name of *Scha Iſmael*, he anſwer'd, he had already a Name of his own, and ſo kept it. One of his firſt Actions was, to forbid the Uſe of Wine, upon pain of Death; breaking all the Veſſels in the Palace, wherein it had been kept for his Father. He was 25 Years of Age when his Father dy'd, and is ſtill living; but of his Actions, we have hitherto no particular Account, only, that he did not Murder, or put out the Eyes of his Brothers, long after his Exaltation, according to the barbarous Cuſtom of that Country, and it is believ'd that he may abrogate it.

The End of the Hiſtory of PERSIA.

A

BRIEF ACCOUNT

Of the moſt

Remarkable PROVINCES,

And which have continu'd longeſt under the Dominion of *Perſia.*

By PETER TEIXEIRA, *Author of the Hiſtory of* PERSIA.

PERSIA, by the Natives call'd *Pars*, or *Agem*, and thence the Natives *Parſi*, or *Agemy*, being one of the greateſt and moſt renowned Monarchies in the World, cannot be aſſign'd any certain Boundaries, by reaſon of its various Extent under ſeveral Poſſeſſors, whoſe Dominion ſometimes extended over more, and ſometimes over fewer Kingdoms and Provinces, of which I will mention thoſe that continu'd longeſt under its preſent Government, and were leaſt ſubject to change, taking Notice of the principal Towns in them, for the more Perſpicuity, leaving a more particular Deſcription to Geographers.

PARS

PARS

Is one of the Provinces of that Kingdom, but not of the largeſt, whoſe Capital is *Schiras*, a great and noble City. It abounds in Corn, Fleſh, and Fruit, yields great Quantities of Roſe-Water, and Hides, and has a conſiderable Trade with all the Kingdoms ſubject to the Crown of *Perſia*. They here wear ſome Silks of their own Product. Here is alſo the City *Lar*, by the *Portugueſes* call'd *Lara*, which gives Name to the *Laris*, an extraordinary pure Silver Coin, well known and current throughout all the Eaſt. This City is Metropolis of a Kingdom, and in it the beſt Bows they have in *Perſia* are made. In the Year of our Lord 1593, and in the Month of *September*, there happen'd ſuch a dreadful Earthquake in this City as overthrew above 1200 Houſes, ruin'd moſt of the Walls, ſpoilt many Ciſterns, for they have no other Water but what they ſave when it Rains, and kill'd 3000 of the People. There are beſides in this Province of *Pars*, the Towns and Cities of *Tarom*, *Jaharom*, *Kazru*, *Laſtam*, where the *Ingo*, that is, the *Aſſa Fatida* grows, *Stahabanon*, where the *Pagnis* graze which have the Bezoar Stones, and the Natives are all Bald; *Neriz*, whoſe Mountains are full of Mines of excellent Steel, where they make good Arms, and many Curioſities; *Pazah* and *Dar-Aguerd*, renown'd for abounding in Proviſions, freſh and dry Fruit, and Roſe Water, beſides many other Places of leſs Note.

HY-

HYERAK

Is another large and conſiderable Province of *Perſia*: Its Metropolis is *Hiſphaon*, or *Iſpæhan*, a very populous City, ſometimes the Reſidence of the *Perſian* Kings, has a great Trade, and is plentifully ſupply'd with all Neceſſaries. Here is alſo the City *Yazd*, not ſo famous for its Bigneſs, as the delightful Situation, and for the many rich Carpets made in it, which are the beſt in all the World, much Silk, and excellent Roſe Water. *Kaxon* is noted for the great Quantity of Silk wove in it, and for the Fertility of its Soil for all Sorts of Fruit, among which the Quinces are known by the Name of *Kaxon*, as being the moſt delicious. Here are alſo, *Kam*, *Saoah*, *Kazbin*, the Court of the Kings of *Perſia*, after they loſt *Tauriz*, *Amedom*, *Nahaoand*, *Targazin*, *Damaoand*, *Taharon*, *Rey Scharear*; where there is much *Manna*, but not of the pureſt; and many other Towns of leſs Note.

ADERBAION, or *AZARBAION*,

Is another great Province, its Capital the famous City *Tauriz*, the Court of the *Perſian* Kings, before it was taken by the *Turks*. This Country abounds in all Things neceſſary, and drives a great Trade with *Ruſſia*, *Poland*, *Muſcovy*, *Circaſſia*, *Gurgeſtam*, and all the Provinces of *Perſia*. It produces ſome Silver, and a great Quantity of Allom, and Madder for dying. The Natives are commonly call'd *Calonges*. The other Towns are *Xyrvan*, *Nakxoan*, *Hordobat*, *Ardauel*, or *Ardeuil*, &c.

GUEY-

GUETLON, or *GUILON*,

Is another Province ſubject to *Perſia*, of a great Extent, containing much excellent Land, and lyes along the *Caſpian* Sea, which has its Name from it, for the *Perſians* call it *Daryah Gueylany*, the Sea of *Gueylon*. It is divided into five Governments, the Capitals whereof are the Cities of *Raxt*, *Laion*, *Gaxkhar*, *Langarkanon* and *Kudam*. They generally call *Gueylon*, by the Name of *End Safet*; that is, *White India*, becauſe it is a pleaſant, temperate and fruitful Country. It borders on *Muſcovy*, which the *Perſians* call *Moſcau*.

There follow along near the Caſpian *Sea*,

Mazandaron, *Strabat*, *Boſtam*, *Sabzabah*, *Nicabar*, where the *Turky* Stones are found, and other Places, all of them formerly the Capitals of Kingdoms and Provinces, now reduc'd to particular Governments of *Perſia*, but ſtill populous Cities.

KARASON,

The *Portugueſes* generally call it *Coraſon*, another Province ſubject to *Perſia*, containing very conſiderable Towns and Cities. The chief of them all is *Mexed*, a great and populous City, where the *Perſian* Kings, ever ſince *Scha Iſmael Sufy*, or *Sofi*, have their Place of Burial. Here is alſo the City *Thun*, large and abounding in rich Silks; *Tabos* very famous; *Kahem*, fruitful in Saffron; *Hrey*, yielding much

much excellent Manna, the Walls of it waſhed by the delightful River *Habin*; *Marwo*, *Herat*, and others ſufficiently known. They alſo export from this Province Carpets, *Aſſa fetida*, *Surma*, and other Commodities. It has plenty of Proviſions, and tho' it always belong'd to the *Perſian* Kings, yet a great Part of it is now ſubject to the *Uzbeks*, who finding thoſe Kings engag'd in War with the *Turks*, invaded their Lands and poſſeſs'd themſelves of many they have in this Province.

KERMON,

Another *Perſian* Province, lyes between it and *Karaſon*, and takes its Name from a great City, ſo call'd; it has many other Towns, but not very conſiderable, and yields Roſe-Water, Carpets, Tutty, Wormſeed and *Surmah*, a Stone good for ſore Eyes, and us'd there to make them black.

The other Provinces of Perſia *are*

Sagiſtam, *Tabarſtam*, *Rableſtam*, *Nim-Ruz*, *Stha-Har*, *Siſtom*, *Curdeſtam*, *Loreſtam*, and ſeveral others of leſs Note, which I omit, to avoid being tedious. *Perſia* for the moſt part abounds in Corn, Fleſh, new and dry Fruit, both of the *European* Sorts, and ſeveral others, all at very reaſonable Rates. The Natives are Fair, Beautiful and well faſhion'd; their Habit is the *Turkiſh*, and their Sect, that of *Morts-Aly*, which differs a little from that of *Mahomet*. They generally fight a Horſeback, with Spears, Bucklers, Bows, Arrows, Cymeters, Battle-Axes,

Axes, Coats of Male, and they ride with ſhort Stirrups. In War they are brave, and endure much Hardſhip; in Peace, much addicted to Reading, and value themſelves upon it; being particularly affected to Poetry, in which ſome among them have gain'd Renown, and they have many learned Pieces in it. They are very amorous, and acquainted with all ſpeculative Sciences, which their Profeſſors diſcourſe of very judiciouſly; only their Law has no more Volumes, than only that of their Sect, by which they are wholly govern'd, committing the Adminiſtration of Juſtice to Perſons of Integrity. The Men are jealous, and the Women not over Chaſte. In ſhort, *Perſia* is one of the polite Monarchies of the World, and none of the leaſt. Mighty Caravans uſually reſort from all Parts of *Perſia*, to *Harmuz* or *Ormuz*, to trade with the *Portugueſes*, and other Chriſtians, Heathens, and *Mahometans*, reſiding in that Place, and barter their Commodities, which are Gold, Silver, raw and wrought Silk, Brocades, Carpets, Horſes, Madder, Allom, Tutty, Rheubard, Roſe-Water, and ſeveral others, for very fine Cloth, and Muſlin, Cloves, Cinnamon, Pepper, Cardamon, Ginger, Mace, Nutmeg, Sugar, Tin, Sandal, or Sanders, *Sapom*, that is *Brazil* Wood, China-Ware, Musk, Amber-Greeſe, Lignum Aloes, precious Stones, Seed Pearl, Indigo, Lake, *&c.* The *Perſians* ſail upon no Sea, but the *Caſpian*, and ſome that go into *India*, take their Paſſage in *Portugueſe* Ships, or others, with their Leave. *(Obſerve this was writ, when the* Portugueſes *were Maſters of* Ormuz, *ſince which that Matter is alter'd.)* All the Natives of *Perſia* are either

Schyay

Schyay Mahometans, which are much the greater Number, or Heathens, call'd *Gaor Yazds*, or *Gauris*, who worſhip Fire, and theſe tho' numerous, are but few in Compariſon of the others; or elſe *Jews*, who enjoy their Liberty throughout all the Provinces of *Perſia*, and there may be between eight and ten thouſand Families of them; beſides a good Number of *Armenian* and *Neſtorian* Chriſtians.

MAURENAHAR

Is the Name of thoſe Countries, which lye beyond the River *Gehun*, that divides them from *Karaſon*, and it contains *Koarrazm* and *Gaznehen*, and then follow *Turkeſtam*, *Uzbek*, *Tatar*, *Ketao Kotan*, and very many more no leſs wealthy and plentiful than warlike.

U Z B E K

Is a Province of vaſt Extent, and tho' formerly always ſubject to *Perſia*, is now not only independent, but makes War on that Kingdom, and has gain'd ſome Lands from it. This Province, as it is ſo large, contains ſeveral Towns and Cities of great Note. The Metropolis of it is *Balk*; beſides which there are *Samarkand*, where *Tamerlan* was born; *Damarkand*; *Bohara*, the Place of *Boaly*, or *Avincen*'s Birth; *Kaxghar*, and *Axkhar*, whence we have the beſt Rhubarb, and many more. The Natives are Warlike, and fight a Horſeback, with Bows and Arrows, Spears, Swords, Bucklers, and Battle-Axes, always flying, and they have in our Days much extended their Dominions. Among the reſt, they have poſſeſs'd them-

themſelves of the Kingdom of *Kandar*, or *Kandahar*, the King whereof went away to implore the Aſſiſtance of the *Mogol*, putting himſelf under his Subjection; and yet he, tho' ſo potent, was not able to reſtore him. The *Uzbeks* have no King by Inheritance, but when their Commander in Chief dies, they chuſe another. Their Faces and Beards reſemble the *Chineſes*, their Bodies large and ſtrong, they ſpeak a little through the Noſe, like the *Chineſes*, and have much of them in their Habit, Countenance and Pronunciation.

A Chronological Table,

Of the Sovereigns of PERSIA, *till the* Arabs *enter'd that Country, according to* Mirkond.

The Years of their Rule are taken from the ſame Hiſtorian. Thoſe diſtinguiſh'd by a G, *are Governors, though ſome call them Kings. Such as are link'd together thus,* ⸠ *are the King, and thoſe who govern'd under him. Where there is no Number of Years, the Time that thoſe Perſons govern'd is uncertain.*

		Years.	Mon.	Days.
Contemporaries.	RAyumarras	40	00	00
	Syamek	00	00	00
	Ouxangh	50	00	00
	Thamures Divband	30	00	00
	Jambxed	00	00	00
	Zoahk	00	00	00
Abraham.	Fraydhun	00	00	00
	Manucher	120	00	00
Moſes.	Naudar	7	00	00
	Afraſiab	12	00	00
	Zaab, *or* Bazab	5	00	00
	Kay Kobad.	103	00	00

		Years.	Mon.	Days.
Solomon.	Kay Kaus	150	00	00
	Kay Khozrao	60	00	00
	Loraſp, *or* Loraſeph	120	00	00
	Guſtaſp, *or* Guſtaſeph	120	00	00
	Bahaman Daras Daſt *or* Ardſchir	112	00	00
	Homay, *a Queen*	30	00	00
	Darab	12	00	00
	Darab *II.*	14	00	00
	Scander, *or* Alexander	14	00	00
	An Interregnum	72	00	00
	Schapur	60	00	00
	Ardſchir Babakhon	50	00	00
CHRIST	Schapur Zabel Ketaf *G.* Ardſchir Farzand Hormoz	30	00	00
	Shapur	60	00	00
	Baharon Kermon Scha	15	00	00
	Yazd Gerd	22	00	00
	Kezere Khozrao	00	00	00
	Baharon Gur	00	00	00
	Narſy, *or* Narſa *G.*	00	00	00
	Baharon Gur	00	00	00
	Narſy, *or* Narſa, *G.*	00	00	00
	Baharon Gur	23	00	00
	Yazd Gerd	00	00	00
	Narſy, *G.*	00	00	00
	Yazd Gerd	00	00	00
	Yazd Gerd	21	00	00
	Hormoz Farzand	1	00	00
	Feruz	00	00	00
	Sufara, *G.*	00	00	00
	Feruz	00	00	00
	Sufara, *G.*	00	00	00
	Feruz	26	00	00
	Belax	5	00	00
	Jamaſp, *G.*	00	00	00
	Kobad	43	00	00

Keſere

	Years.	Mon.	Days.
Kesere Anuxiron, *or* Nauxirvan	48	00	00
Hormoz	12	00	00
Baharon Chuby	00	00	00
Khozrao Parvez	38	00	00
Kobad Schyruyhe	00	08	00
Scharear	1	00	00
Joon Schyr	1	00	00
Turon Dokt, *a Queen*	1	04	00
Jaranceda	0	00	06
Azarmy Dokt, *a Queen*	0	06	00
Kesere	1	00	00
Feroghzad	0	01	00
Yazd Gerd	20	00	00

Next follow the Califs of Bagdad *who were Sovereigns of* Persia, *after the* Arabs *broke into it.*

Homar	1	00	00
Osman, *or* Otman	11	06	00
Morts Aly	4	06	00
Acen	0	06	00

Of the Horde or Family of Ben Humya.

Mawya	20	00	00
Yezid	3	00	00
Mawya *II.*	0	01	10
Marwan	1	00	00
Abdel Malek	21	01	00
Oelyd	9	08	00
Soleymon		06	00
Hamar, *or* Homer	2	05	00
Yezyd *II.*	4	08	00
Oschon	19	08	00
Oelyd *II.*	1	02	00

	Years.	Mon.	Days.
Yezyd *III.*	0	06	00
Ebrahem	0	02	00
Marwan *II.*	5	00	00

Of the Hord or Family of Eben Abas.

Safa	4	09	00
Abu Jafar	23	01	00
Mahady Bila	11	00	00
Elady Bila Muſa	1	03	00
Arraxid Bila Harun	23	07	00
Mahamed Amin	4	07	00
Mahamun	12	00	00
Abu Ezach Matazon	8	09	00
Wazek	5	00	00
Almotowakul Bila Jafar	12	00	00
Montacer	0	06	00
Abul Abas Hamed	5	09	00
An Interregnum	0	00	00
Moſtahkin	1	04	00
Almotez Bila	3	06	00
Motady Bila	0	11	00
Almat Hamed Bila Hamed	23	00	00
Motazed Bila Hamed	9	09	00
Moktafy Bila	4	00	00
Moktader Bila	7	00	00
Jafar	20	00	00
Kaher Bila Mahamed	1	06	00
Razy Bila Mahamed	4	00	00
Moktafy Bila Ebrahem *II.*	4	00	00
Moſtachfy Abdala	4	04	00
Mutya Bila Fazele	29	06	00
Tahya Abel Karim	17	02	00
Kader Bila Hamed	41	04	00
Kakem, *or* Alkakem Beamaryla Abu Jafor Abdula	44	04	00

Almok

	Years.	Mon.	Days.
Almoktady Bila	19	05	00
Almoſtazer Bila	25	06	00
Almoſtarzed Bila Fazele	17	02	00
Raxet Bila	2	00	00
Almoktafy Bila	24	00	00
Almoſtanget Bila Iſſuf	11	00	00
Almoſtanzy Benur Elah Azen	9	08	00
Nacer, *or* Nacere Ladiula	47	00	00
Alzaker, or Altaker Bila Mahamed	00	09	00
Almoſtanzer Bila Manſer	17	00	00
Almoſtacem Bila Abdula	15	07	00

Mogols, *or* Tartars, *that were Sovereigns of* Perſia, *deſcended from* Chinguis Khan.

Chinguis Khan	1	00	00
Otkay Khan	13	00	00
Sayurk Khan	1	00	00
Manchu Khan	13	00	00
Ulaku Khan	6	00	00
Haybak Khan	17	00	00
Hamed Khan, *or* Nicudar Oglan	2	02	00
Argon Kahn	3	00	00
Baydu Kahn	1	00	00
Gazun Khan,	8	09	00
Alyaptu King, *afterwards called* Sultan Hahed	12	09	00
Sultan Abuſayd Bahader Khan	19	00	00

Mogols, *or* Tartars, *deſcended from* Tamerlan, *who were Sovereigns of* Perſia.

Teymur Langh, *or* Tamerlan	36	00	00
Mirzah Scharrock	43	00	00
Ologh Beg	2	00	00
Mirzah Abdelatife	0	06	00

	Years.	Mon.	Days
Mirzah Abdula	1	00	00
In Maurenahar, Mirzah Sultan Abuſaid	18	00	00
Mirzah Sultan Hamed	28	00	00
Mirzah Babor	38	00	00
Mirzah Hyadigar	2	00	00
In Karaſon, Mirzah Sultan Ozen	58	04	00
Bahady, *or* Pedy Azamon, *and* Muzafa Mirzah, *Brothers, jointly*	1	00	00
Myron Scha	0	00	00
Mirzah Abubakar	0	00	00

Turkymans *of the Hord of* Kara Kuyonlu, *that were Sovereigns of* Perſia.

Kara Iſſuf	14	00	00
Amir Scandar	16	00	00
Joon Scha	32	00	00
Acen Aly	1	00	00

Turkymans *of the Hord of* Akuyonlu, *that were Sovereigns of* Perſia.

Ozun Acen Beg	11	00	00
Sultan Kalil	0	06	00
Yacub Beg	12	10	00
Bayſangor Mirzah	1	00	00
Roſtambek	5	06	00
Haymed Beg	1	00	00
Alwan Beg	1	00	00
Morad Beg	1	00	00

Scha Iſmael Sophy, *and his Race, Sovereigns of* Perſia.

Scha Iſmael Sophi	20	00	00
Scha Thamas	53	00	00

Scha

	Years.	Mon.	Days.
Scha Ismael	1	00	00
Scha Mahamed, *the Blind*	7	00	00
Scha Abas	40	00	00
Scha Sephi	14	00	00
Scha Abas *II.*	22	00	00
Scha Sephi *II.*	30	00	00
Scha Ossen, *now living.*			

A

Brief Account

Of the Kingdom of Harmuz, *or* Ormuz, *and of its Kings, 'till it was ſubdu'd by the* Portugueſes, *extracted from the Hiſtory written by* Torunxa, *King of that City.*

TOrunxa, King of *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*, having compos'd a Book in his *Perſian* Tongue, both in Proſe and Verſe, which he calls *Scha Noma*, that is, a Relation of the King or Kings, and wherein he treats of the firſt Original of that Kingdom, and the Kings his Predeceſſors, he begins his Hiſtory at *Adam*. For my Part, I ſhall reduce to a few Leaves the Subſtance of what he ſwells out to a conſiderable Volume, and with my uſual Brevity ſpeak of the firſt founding of that Kingdom, the Number of Kings, their orderly Succeſſion, and whatſoever more may be of Uſe, and not to be omitted.

Torunxa gives two very different Relations of the erecting of that Kingdom of *Harmuz*, and the Creation of its firſt King, leaving every Man to chuſe that he likes beſt. He tells us that an *Arabian* Prince, whoſe Name was *Mahamed*

Mahamed Dram Ku, lineally deſcended from the ancient Stock of the Kings of *Sabah*, a Province in *Arabia*, where the Queen that went to viſit *Solomon* reign'd, being ambitious to extend his Dominions, as generally Monarchs are, departed his own Lands; and ranging about with arm'd Force, ſubdu'd thoſe about him, without ſtopping, 'till he came to the Shore of the *Perſian* Gulph, by the *Portugueſes* call'd the Gulph of *Ormuz*, and there perſwaded his Men to croſs over the Sea with him, aſſuring them of Succeſs on the *Perſian* Side, where he intended to build a *Bandel*, or Sea-port Town, which ſhould be more renown'd, and of greater Trade, than that of *Soar*, a Port on the Coaſt of *Arabia*, upon the ſame Gulph, then much frequented by Merchants, and tho' now by the Injury of Time reduc'd to an inconſiderable Place, yet the Conveniency of its Situation, and the Ruins ſtill remaining, do teſtifie it was formerly a Place of Note, and ſuch I believ'd it to have been, when I ſaw it.

Having fixt this Reſolution, he mov'd with all his Men to *Kalayat*, a Port in *Arabia*, on the *Perſian* Gulph, near Cape *Rozalgat*, where having provided all Neceſſaries, he embark'd with all his Followers, and croſſing the Gulph, arriv'd at *Jaſques*, a Place well known on the Coaſt of *Perſia*, and running along it to the Northward, put into *Koſtek*, another Port there. *Scha Mahamed* had left a Son of his at *Kalayat*, attended by a *Wazir*, or Vizier, a diſcreet Man, with Orders, that in caſe any Misfortune befel him on the other Side, he ſhould ſecure that Port for his Retreat. He landed his Men at *Koſtek*, and ſeeking about for ſome proper Place to ſettle on, was informed

form'd that a little further up, there was one very fit and commodious for his Design. He march'd thither, and having maturely consider'd and liking it, stay'd there, mark'd out and founded a City, divided the Land, which was not very populous, as he thought fit, and coin'd Mony, whence he had the Name of *Dram Ku*. He had with him a Son call'd *Soleymon*, through whose Industry the City increas'd and prosper'd very much, and there *Scha-Mahamed* resided, governing in Peace and Justice, and being a Man of good Temper, wise and brave, the Governours of *Schiras* and *Kermon*, his Neighbours, maintain'd a strict Amity with him. Some Years after the building of *Harmuz*, *Scha Mahamed* dy'd, leaving that City in a prosperous Condition to his Son *Soleymon*.

The other Account *Turon Scha* gives of the Original of this Kingdom of *Hormuz* is thus. When *Scha Mahamed*'s Father was King in *Arabia*, being at War with another, he lost a Battle, and not thinking himself safe in *Arabia*, cross'd the *Persian* Gulph, and landing at *Mogostan* in *Persia*, settled there, with his Son *Mahamed*, who had bore him Company. At that time a tyrannical Prince reign'd in those Parts, who besides the other Wrongs he did his Subjects, oblig'd them to give him the first Night's Lodging with every Maid that was to be marry'd. *Mahamed*, tho' young, had a great Spirit, and a generous Soul, and therefore taking Compassion on the Oppression of those People, he offer'd to deliver them, tho' it cost him his Life, which he perform'd after this Manner. He pretended to marry a Maiden of Quality, out of the Town, and being himself handsome, and as yet beardless,

cloath'd

cloath'd himſelf in a Woman's Habit, but well arm'd underneath, and thus diſguis'd and well attended, they brought him in the Evening to the King, who ſuppoſing him to be the Maid he expected, ſhut himſelf up with him in a Room, little thinking what he did. *Mahamed* pretending to be baſhful, endeavour'd to gain Time the beſt he could, 'till a fair Opportunity offer'd, which he laid hold of, and ſtabb'd him dead. Then haſting out of the Chamber, he acquainted thoſe who waited for him with what he had done, and they immediately proclaim'd Liberty. This Service was ſo acceptable to all thoſe People, that in Return they agreed to confirm on him the Dignity and Title of the murder'd Tyrant. Thus *Mahamed* was declar'd King, and took the Stile of *Scha Mahamed*, ſignifying King *Mahamed*, adding the Name of *Dramku*, on account of the Mony he preſently coin'd. Being thus created King, the better to improve his Dominions, he founded the City *Harmuz*, in a Plain of the ſame Name, whence all the Kingdom was ſo call'd, and behav'd himſelf, as was ſaid above, 'till his Death. This is the moſt likely Original, the Reader may chuſe which he pleaſes.

Upon the Death of *Scha Mahamed Dramku*, firſt King of *Harmuz*, his Son *Soleymon* ſucceeded, and was the ſecond King. He was affable, and well belov'd of all Men for his Virtue and Juſtice, which gain'd him great Renown, and having reign'd many Years in Peace, he dy'd and left the Crown to his Son *Iza*, the Third King, who prov'd a good Prince, and under him his People enjoy'd Peace and Proſperity. He made his People

apply

apply themselves to Tillage, and planting of Palm-Trees, being himself very assisting to them, by his Goodness and Favour; and they, in Gratitude, sometimes hazard'd their Lives and Fortunes to serve him, so that he considerably extended his Dominions, and dying was succeeded by his Son

Laxkary, the fourth King, as good as his Father, a Lover of Justice, and Protector of the Poor, by which Means he gain'd the Affections of his Subjects. Among the rest he had a Son, call'd *Kaykobad*, to whom for his excellent Qualities, he resign'd the Crown, and retir'd himself from Court, to lead a solitary Life, where he dy'd some Years after.

Kaykobad, the Fifth King, no way degenerated from his Predecessors, but was a Lover of Justice, supported the Needy, curb'd the Great Ones, and dying left the Throne to his Son,

Iza, the Sixth King, and second of that Name, who was a martial Man, undertook some Warlike Expeditions, which prov'd successful. The Kingdom of *Harmuz* prosper'd under him, and at his Death devolv'd to his Son,

Mamud, the Seventh King, a good Prince, and had many Children. It was the Custom of the Kings of *Harmuz*, for their own greater Security, and to prevent Commotions, to place all their Kindred, who might aspire to the Crown, in Forts and other Places, remote from their Residence, where they continu'd 'till farther Orders from the King. For this Reason, *Mamud*, of whom we here treat, had plac'd a Nephew of his, call'd *Mir Schabadin Molongh*, in the Fortress of *Gat*, which is in *Persia*, and in the Lands of *Brahem* and *Mostagam*,

Mostagam, as were several others possess'd by the Kings of *Harmuz*, and subject to the *Portugueses* in *Persia*. *Mamud* was inform'd, that his Nephew contriv'd to kill him, and order'd him to be secur'd, designing to put him to Death, if the Treason were prov'd; but *Mir Schabadin Molongh* understanding it, fled to the Fortress of *Scugon*, where he was well receiv'd and caress'd by the Governour, who also marry'd him to a Daughter of his own, by whom *Schabadin* had a Son, call'd *Nocerat Regbdar*, and a Daughter nam'd *Setalkatum Schahadin*. In the mean while *Mamud* dy'd at *Harmuz*, and his Son

Schaxanxa succeeded him, being the Eighth King. He persecuted *Molongh*, but notwithstanding all his Endeavours could not get him into his Hands. After some Years, great Numbers of Men came out of the Lands of *Hyr*, making an Irruption into those of *Harmuz*. *Schaxanxa* march'd out to oppose them, tho' with a Force much inferior to theirs. *Mir Schabadin Molongh* understanding the ill Condition his Uncle was in, and thinking this a proper Opportunity to be reconcil'd to him, with his Father-in-Law's Leave, gather'd all the Forces he could, and join'd *Schaxanxa*. After kissing his Foot, he fell back and follow'd him, attended by his Troops, but the Uncle made him come up to his Side, with Tokens of much Affection. Being come up with their Enemies, they engag'd, and in the Battle *Schaxanxa*, King of *Harmuz* was slain, whereupon

Mir Schabadin Molongh was proclam'd King, being the Ninth. He prosecuted the War against the People of *Hyr*, whom he entirely defeated, and then return'd to *Harmuz*; where

he

he rul'd, to the general Satisfaction of the People. He marry'd his Daughter *Set Alkatun Schabadin* to *Amir Seyfadin Ben Azar*, Son to his Brother *Aly*, King of the Island of *Keys*. Soon after this Match, *Aly* dy'd, and the People of *Keys*, at the Instanee of *Mir Schabadin*, King of *Harmuz*, receiv'd *Amir Seyfadin* for their King, who immediately repair'd thither, with his Wife. Not long after dy'd *Mir Schabadin Molongh*, King of *Harmuz*, and one *Rex Scharear*, his *Wazir*, or Vizier, usurp'd the Kingdom. The People of *Keys*, as soon as they heard of the Death of *Molongh*, and the Revolt of *Scharear*, depos'd *Amir Seyfadin* from the Throne, and he fearing they might also take his Life, made haste out of the Island, and went away for *Harmuz*, where he was well receiv'd by all Men. *Scharear*, who had usurp'd the Crown, was then in the Fortress of *Kareqm*, whither *Seyfadin* hasted. *Scharear*, who was in the Place, with ten of his Kindred, took up Arms, and bid every Man shift for himself, and sell his Life dear; but he and they were all kill'd, and *Seyfadin* remain'd possess'd of the Throne, and was the Tenth King.

The first thing he did was the marrying of three Daughters, *Rex Scharear* left, to three of the prime Men in his Court. Then calling to Mind, how he had been us'd by the People of *Keys*, he made War on them, carry'd over his Forces into their Island, and overthrew them, killing many and taking some of the Heads, whom he carry'd away with him; and putting into the Island of *Gerun*, now called *Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*, then not inhabited, slew them there on a Mountain, thence call'd *Kery Kostoron*, that is the Mountain of the Slain, which Name it preserves to this Day.

He

He went thence to *Harmuz*, where he ſpent the reſt of his Life in Peace, and was ſucceeded by his Nephew,

Schabadin Mamud, the Eleventh King, and Second of the Name, Son to *Iza*, who enjoy'd Peace all his Days, and did nothing remarkable; but at his Death left the Crown to his Nephew,

Amir Roknadin Mamud, the Twelfth King, under whom *Harmuz* proſper'd very much. He kept numerous and good Forces, which gain'd him conſiderable Victories, and enlarged his Dominions, extending them as far as *Zafar*. He reign'd 35 Years, and dy'd in that of the *Hegira*, 676, of CHRIST, 1278. His Son,

Amir Seyfadin Nocerat, the Thirteenth King, aſcended the Throne, and was oppos'd by two Brothers of his own, call'd *Amir Kodbadin Thabatan*, and *Amir Moehzadine Fulad*, or *Pulad*; and tho' moſt of the Troops favour'd *Nocerat*, yet could he not prevail againſt his Brothers, who oblig'd him, and his Mother *Babi Banek*, to fly the Kingdom. *Babi Banek* went away to *Kermon*, which Province was then govern'd by *Sultan Gelaladin Surageť Mex*, who gave her a very honourable Reception, and ſuch a Supply of Forces, as reſtor'd her Son *Nocerat* to the Throne. However his Brothers did not give over moleſting of him, but he took *Amir Moehzadin Fulad* and put him to Death. *Mir Kodbadin Thakanſon*, the other Brother, being ſupported by one *Malek Seyfadin Abubakra Haony*, invaded *Hormuz*, and coming to a Battle with *Nocerat*, at *Denu*, defeated him, and he fled to *Komzara*, and thence in a *Tarranqui*, which is a light Boat, paſs'd

paſs'd over to *Lapht*, a Port and Town in the Iſland *Broct*, by the *Portugueſes* generally call'd *Queixome*. When *Nocerat* was departed the Kingdom, the two Companions vary'd ſo much, that *Malek Seyfadin* kill'd *Kobadin*; and the People and Soldiers diſappoving of *Malek*'s Proceedings, call'd home *Amir Seyfadin Nocerat*, and reſtor'd him to the Throne, expelling *Malek*. *Nocerat* being thus again poſſeſs'd of the Kingdom, two other of his Brothers, call'd *Amir Maſand* and *Amir Turkon Scha*, aſpiring to the Crown, murder'd him baſely, and with him, his Siſters, *Bibi Banek* and *Bibi Neyty*. *Amir Seyfadin Nocerat* reign'd Twelve Years, and died in that of the *Hegira* 689, which was of CHRIST 1291.

Maſand, having kill'd his Brother, poſſeſs'd himſelf of the Kingdom, as 14th King. He was of a martial Temper, and brave; but ſo cruel and ſtern, that he was ſoon ſenſible he had incurr'd the Hatred of all Men, which made him afraid of his Perſon, and therefore he put to Death many of the Nobles and Commons; whereupon moſt of the Men of Note repair'd to *Amir Bahadin Agaz Seyfin*. This Man had been Slave to *Nocerat*, the late King, who repoſing much Confidence in him, had in his Life-time made him *Wazir* or Viſier of *Kalagat*, a Port in *Arabia* above ſpoken of. He pitying the Sufferings and Calamities of the Kingdom of *Harmuz*, rais'd Forces, and tranſporting them over the Gulph of *Perſia*, march'd towards *Amir Maſand*, whom he fought and defeated. *Maſand* fled to *Kermon*, and remov'd thence to *Syrion*, where he died ſeveral Years after, having Reign'd but Three.

Mir

Mir Bahadin Ayaz Seyfin, who, as has been ſaid, had been a Slave to *Nocerat*, having routed *Maſand*, took upon him the Government, as 15th King, and went about to Reform and bring Things into better Order, but was hinder'd by the Troubles that enſu'd; for *Mir Turkan Scha* and *Mir Saliak*, two Brothers to the baniſh'd *Maſand*, held Correſpondence with him, deſigning to reſtore him to the Throne. *Ayaz* being inform'd of it, ſeiz'd them, and chopt off their Heads, by which Means he had ſome Quiet. But in the Year of the *Hegira* 700, which was of CHRIST 1302, great Swarms of *Turks* coming out of *Turkeſtan*, poſſeſs'd themſelves of many Lands in *Perſia*, and breaking into the Kingdom of *Kermon*, came down from thence to that of *Harmuz*, deſtroying all as they went; and yet would that have been tolerable, had not the Wealth they found in thoſe Parts invited them to come ſo often, that the *Harmuzians* no longer able to bear that Oppreſſion, reſolv'd to abandon thoſe Lands, as they did. The Iſland of *Queixome*, or *Broſt*, lies near to the Continent of *Perſia*, divided from it by a narrow Arm of the Sea, being about 25 Leagues in Length, and two or three in Breadth. Thither *Ayaz* order'd the *Harmuzians* to paſs over, which they readily obey'd, taking along with them all they had ſav'd from the Fury and Violence of the *Turks*. When they were got over unto the Iſland, after ſome Days reſt, *Ayaz* went out again, and ranging about the Gulph of *Perſia*, ſought for ſome convenient Iſland among thoſe there are in that Sea, where he might ſettle with his People. He came to one that was Deſart, two Leagues diſtant from that of *Queixome*, on a Point whereof was an old

Man, whoſe Name was *Gerun*, with his Wife, and liv'd there upon Fiſhing, furniſhing the Ships that ſail'd from *India* to *Keys*, or from *Keys* to *India*, with what he caught; and they giving him in return, Rice, Cloth, and other Things, for Cloathing and Suſtenance. This *Gerun* underſtanding to what End *Ayaz* was looking for an Iſland, adviſ'd him to go over thither, becauſe he would find no other ſo fit for his Turn. *Ayaz* having view'd it, he reſolv'd to beg it of the King of *Keys*, to whom it belong'd, as did all the others in the Gulph of *Perſia*. *Keys*, ſo call'd by the *Arabs* and *Perſians*, and by the *Portugueſes*, *Quays*, is a ſmall Iſland, ſeated in the midſt of the Gulph of *Bazora*, well wooded and water'd, once the Head of a Kingdom, tho' now not inhabited, ſince the Trade is fallen off, for fear of the *Noutaquis* and *Nichelus*, two ſorts of Pyrates, continually infeſting that Sea. It formerly had all the Trade that has been ſince remov'd to *Ormuz*, having loſt all by the Wars, and ſcarce retain'd its Name. The Iſland of *Gerun* was ſubject to *Neyn*, then reigning in *Keys*. Whilſt *Ayaz* was there, there came over a *Mulah*, or ſort of Religious Man, call'd *Scheque Iſmael*, born in a Village near the City *Lar* in *Perſia*, who us'd every Year to go all about thoſe Iſlands, a begging for himſelf and for the Poor of his Village. *Ayaz* diſcours'd him, and finding he was ſufficiently qualify'd, thought fit to employ him to the King of *Keys*, to obtain of him that Iſland, either given, or ſold, that he might go over to it with his People, promiſing the *Mulah* a conſiderable Reward for his Pains. He undertook it, and manag'd ſo well, that the King would have given him the Iſland *Gratis*, which

which he would not accept of, but that it ſhould be ſold for a certain Sum of Money. For this Service, it ever after remain'd an eſtabliſh'd Cuſtom for the Kings of *Harmuz* every Year to give the Deſcendants of that *Mulah* ſome certain Acknowledgement, which I my ſelf have ſometimes ſeen them come to demand. Having obtain'd the Iſland of *Gerun*, *Ayaz* and his People went over to Live there, and remembring their Native Country, they gave it the ſame Name of *Harmuz* or *Ormuz*, tho' the *Perſians* and *Arabs* generally call it *Gerun*. However, the ancient *Harmuz* on the Continent loſt not its Name, but retains it to this Day. Thoſe who Sail the *Indian* Seas generally divide the Gulph of *Perſia* into two Parts. The one they call the Gulph of *Harmuz*, which commences at *Guadel* in *Perſia*, and Cape *Rozolgate* in *Arabia*. The other is the Gulph of *Bazora*, which is from *Harmuz*, or *Gerun*, upwards, as far as the City of *Bazora*, which is at the bottom of the Gulph, where the two famous Rivers, *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, being united, fall into the Sea. In the midſt between theſe two, tho' the Diſtance be not equal, for the firſt is about One hundred Leagues in Length, and the other near Two hundred, lies this Iſland of *Harmuz*, or *Gerun*, as a Boundary, being betwixt Six and Seven Miles in Compaſs. It is Five Miles from the neareſt Part of *Perſia*, which is *Dozar*, and Nine Leagues from the Coaſt of *Arabia*; this Side is not ſo clean for great Ships as the *Perſian*, but yet Navigable. This ſmall Iſland has ſome Things very remarkable, ſome whereof I will briefly recount for the Reader's Satisfaction. Formerly, this Iſland *Gerun* was on Fire, which left it ſo un-

couth, that it is amazing to thoſe that behold it. In it is a high Mountain, that croſſes it from Sea to Sea, running Eaſt and Weſt. From the Foot of it to the North Point, where the City and Fort ſtand, being about a Mile, is a Plain ſomewhat more Level than the reſt, but beyond the Mountain there is nothing but horrid Hills, Clifts, and Rocks. It yields abundance of very tranſparent Mineral Salt, and extraordinary pure Sulphur; ſome Mines whereof were diſcover'd whilſt I was there, and a conſiderable Quantity taken out. During the Winter Seaſon, which ſome Years laſts long, the Water runs down from the Mountain, and ſpreads over all the Plain about the City, which afterwards in the Summer, the Sun being there exceſſive Hot, is naturally converted into Salt. It is wonderful, that this City, which is in Twenty ſeven Degrees and a half of North Latitude, ſhould in Summer be ſubject to ſuch prodigious Heats, that they are almoſt intolerable; and the extremity is ſuch, that it will ſcarce be believ'd but by ſuch as have had Experience of them. There are in this Iſland three over-flowing Springs, guſhing from ſeveral Parts at the Foot of the Mountain, which make three ſeveral Rivulets of pure clear Water, but as Salt as that in the Sea; and of this in the very Stream, the Sun makes Salt, which grows ſo hard, that I have ſeveral times gone a Horſeback on it, without breaking it, the Water running underneath. Both the Mineral Salt, which is palpably found to grow, and the other Sort, are very Medicinal, but only that which is made of the Water by the Heat of the Sun is us'd for Seaſoning of Meat; becauſe the Mineral is ſo ſharp, that inſtead of preſerving Fleſh, it corrodes and

ſpoils

ſpoils it, or any other Thing it is us'd with. However, ſome Ships, and particularly thoſe that come from *Cochin*, take in their Ballaſt of it to carry to *Bengale*, where for want of other, it is worth Money, for there is none made in all thoſe Parts, except in the Iſland of *Sundiva*. It is likely many Provinces in *China* ſuffer the ſame want, the Salt there being the King's chief Revenue, and therefore moſt of the Gammons the *Portugueſes* carry thence into *India* are ſalted or preſerv'd with Allum. Leaving the Salt, leſt we become inſipid; the Iſland of *Gerun* or *Harmuz* has two *Bandels*, or Bays, one to the Eaſt and the other to the Weſt, both of them ſo form'd that they terminate together in a ſandy Point, where is now the *Portugueſes* Fort, *(Note the Time when the Author writ, as we have obſerv'd elſewhere)* and it is one of the beſt in the Eaſtern Parts, and of moſt Conſequence. There formerly liv'd the old Man *Gerun*, from whom the Iſland had its Name. It has no freſh Water, but what is gather'd from the Rain in Ciſterns, whereof there are many, and they are a great Relief to the Poor People in Summer. Only at *Torunpuque*, which is a Peice of white Salt Clay Ground, at the end of the Iſland, there is a little freſh Water, made uſe of to water the King's, and the *Wazir*'s, or Vizier's Orchards, each of them having one there, which produce whatſoever is planted in Perfection, contrary to all the reſt of the Iſland, where there is neither Tree nor Plant, unleſs in the Plain ſome prickly Shrubs bearing a Fruit like Haws, green all the Year about, which they call *Conar*, and ſome few Mallows on the Ground, in the Spring; alſo ſome purging *Senna*, which they call *Senna Moki*, that is

Senna of Moka. Of the ſalt Clay, they make drinking Cups, and Pots to hold Water, which when become freſh, keep the Water cool and give it a curious Taſte. I remember, that when I was at *Harmuz*, in the Year 1596, *Ferragut Scha*, the King then reigning, who was ancient enough, fell in Love with the Wealth of one *Biſatima*, an old Woman, Widow to one *Rex Bradadin*, his Subject, who had been *Wazir*, or Vizier in the Country of *Mogoſtan*, on the Continent of *Perſia*. She was reported to be worth a vaſt Sum of Mony, whereupon he offer'd to take her to Wife, but ſhe to divert him from thoſe Thoughts, anſwer'd, ſhe would marry him when he had made a new Garden, and found another Spring at *Turunpuque*; looking upon it as impracticable. However the old Man incited by Avarice, loſt no Time, but planted a better Orchard than the other he had there before, and diſcover'd a good Stream of freſh Water; and yet he got not the Money. Near this Place of *Torunpuque*, among ſome Rocks, at a ſmall Diſtance from the Sea, guſhes out ſome brackiſh Water, which the Native *Harmuzians* call *Abdormon* ſignifying medicinal Water, which drank has a purging Quality, carrying off all Foulneſs; and abundance of People, at a certain time of the Year, repair thither, and drink it as often as they think convenient, and when they think they are well cleans'd, to be full convinc'd of it, they eat a little Orange or Lemmon, and if they immediately void the Seeds, or Kernels of it downwards, they conclude they are ſufficiently purg'd, and then eat. The Iſland affords much Game, as *Gazelles*, Creatures like Wild-Goats, *Adibes*, which are a Sort of Foxes,

Foxes, Patridges, Turtle-Doves, and other Sorts of Fowl, and it is wonderful, that the Iſland affording no freſh Water, but what has been mention'd, it is not yet known where theſe Creatures drink. Some pretend that being exceſſive thirſty, they drink ſalt Water, and others have invented no leſs unlikely Fables. The City is not very large, tho' it once was, but the beſt and nobleſt Part of it was blown up, to make a ſpacious Place of Arms, before the Fort. The Houſes are well built, of a Stone, which is not very hard, found in the Iſland, and of that taken out of the Sea, as has been ſaid before, becauſe it is light, and beſt to withſtand the Earthquakes the Iſland is ſubject to; and with Mortar made of a fine white Lime, whereof there is great Plenty on the Continent, which they call *Gueche*. There is another Red Sort in the Iſland, but not ſo good. They make uſe of another Cement for Buildings, whoſe Foundations lye in the Water; or that are to ſtand againſt it, which being very ſtrange to us, I will give a ſhort Account of. They call it *Charu*, and it is made of the oldeſt rotten Dung that can be found in the Dunghils, and having taken off the ſuperficial Part, they make up the reſt into round Cakes, which they dry in the Sun, and when thoroughly dry they make a Heap of them and ſet Fire to it, letting it burn for a certain Time, and what remains is preſerv'd. Then taking a Quantity of it, they lay it on a Floor that is hard and clean; and ſeven or eight *Arabs*, who make that their Profeſſion ſtand about with each of them a Staff, or Beater in his Hand, with which they beat it, laying on all at once, one of them at every Stroke, reckoning in a Tune-

able Voice, from one to a certain Number, all the others at every Blow anſwering in the ſame Tone. Thus they work it to a proper Pitch, and then they uſe it immediately about the Structure; for if it grows cold, and is kept 'till the next Day, it ſpoils, and becomes unſerviceable. This Cement has a particular Virtue for withſtanding of the Water, and continues firm many Years under it. Moſt of the *Harmuzians* are fair and well ſhaped; the Men polite and genteel, the Women beautiful. They all ſpeak the *Perſian* Tongue, tho' not in Perfection; and are all *Mahomentans*; but ſome are *Scbyays*, who follow *Haly*; other *Sunneys*, Followers of *Mahomet*, and the King is of theſe. Beſides them there are many *Portugueſe* Chriſtians, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Jacobies*, and *Neſtorians*; as alſo Heathen *Baneans* of *Bengala* and *Cambaya*, and about 150 Families of *Jews*. And tho' the Iſland of it ſelf yields nothing, it is very plentifully ſupply'd from abroad, and all Things are ſold at moderate Rates and by Weight. The Air and Climate is healthy, and there is ſeldom any Diſtemper in Summer; for the terrible Heat conſumes all peccant Humours with exceſſive Sweat; but in Autumn they pay for all Diſorderss committed in the Summer. To conclude, *Gerun* is a free Mart and Fair, for all the World, where there is continually a Trade for all Commodities that can be deſir'd, convey'd thither from ſeveral Parts, with a mighty Concourſe of Merchants of ſeveral Nations, which I do not particularize, that I may return to my Account of the Foundation of *New Harmuz*, which happen'd, as was ſaid above, in the Year of the *Hegira* 700, and of CHRIST 1302; taking its Name from the

the old *Harmuz*, which it ſtill retains, and in 200 Years throve ſo faſt, as to extend its Dominion over the greateſt Part of *Arabia*, much of *Perſia*, and all the Gulph, as far as *Bazora*. So it continu'd 'till ſubdu'd by the *Portugueſes*, ſince which Time it began to decline, by reaſon of the Oppreſſion and Inſolencies of the *Portugueſe* Governours and Officers, they being remote from any that can curb them.

Ayaz Ceyſin reign'd ten Years in *Harmuz* or *Gerun*, at the End whereof ſome ſay he dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 711, which was of CHRIST 1312. Others ſay, that in the ſame Year, having ſettled the Affairs of that new State, he reſign'd the Crown to *Amir Ayzadin Gordon Scha*, the Son of *Saldor* and of *Biby Zeyneb*, Grandſon to the former Kings, and he return'd to his *Wazir*, or Vizierſhip at *Calagat* in *Arabia*, where he ſome Time after dy'd in Peace. The Title of *Bibi*, which I have ſometimes mention'd, in the *Perſian* Tongue ſignifies the ſame as Lady, or Madam among us.

Amir Ayzadin Gordon Scha, the ſixteenth King of the Number of the old, and ſecond of the *New Harmuz*, or *Ormuz*, as ſoon as he aſcended the Throne, thought of ratifying the Peace and Amity with *Neim*, the King of *Keys*, of whom *Ayaz* had the Iſland. To this End he ſent Embaſſadors, but propos'd ſuch Terms and Conditions, that the King of *Keys* perceiving he intended to alter the Poſture of Affairs, reſolv'd to prevent him. To this End, he rais'd Forces to invade him, and for the more Surety, made uſe of the Aſſiſtance of *Malek Ayzadin*, Governour of *Schiras*. The principal Motive, among others, the King of *Keys* alledg'd to juſtifie his making War

War on *Gordon Scha* was, that he detain'd the Ships at *Harmuz*, which were bound from *India* to *Keys*, and by that Means wrong'd him of his Duties and Cuſtoms. Being join'd by the Governour of *Schiras*, with a good Number of Men, they both made towards *Harmuz*, whence *Gordon Scha* ſet out with his Army, and went out to meet them at *Sirmion*, a Village in the Iſland *Broct* or *Queixome* deſigning to cut off their Water. Whilſt he lay there, News was brought him, that ten Sail bound from *India* for *Keys*, richly laden, were paſſing between *Harmuz* and *Larek*, an Iſland four Leagues to the Southward of *Harmuz*, towards *Arabia*. He ſet out with his Fleet to meet them, and after an Engagement took and carry'd them to *Harmuz*. About this Time the Forces of *Keys* and *Schiras* ſailing along in 120 *Terrada*'s, which are ſmall Veſſels, all full of Men, and well provided, were near *Sirmion* ſurpriz'd by a dreadful Storm, which are ſometimes very dangerous in that Gulph, and the whole Fleet ſhatter'd, and the ten Ships that eſcap'd, put into the little Iſland of *Augem*, which being very cloſe to that of *Broct*, they both together form a ſpacious and ſafe Harbour. Here the King of *Keys* was inform'd of *Gordon Scha*'s having taken the Ships coming from *India*, and being incens'd with this News, he landed his Men, deſigning, the next Night, to go over to *Harmuz*. *Gordan Scha* having Intelligence of his Deſign, diſpos'd his Forces, being about 12000 Men, poſting above one Third of them on the Shore, about one thouſand Paces from the City, at a Place call'd *Karú*, proper for the Enemy to land, who accordingly deſign'd it, but were repuls'd, with the Loſs of many

Men

Men and Ships, and putting off to Sea they propos'd a Peace, which the *Harmuzians* would not conſent to; but on the contrary, *Gordon Scha*, following the Advice of *Sangor Roknadin*, his General, reſolv'd to fall upon his Enemies by Surprize, who hearing of it fled, yet not ſo timely, but that the *Harmuzians* made much Slaughter among them. Thus roughly handled, they return'd to *Keys*, whence in the Year of the *Hegira* 714, which was of CHRIST 1315, they return'd to invade *Harmuz* with a greater Number of Men and Ships, which beſet the Iſland for the Space of four Months ſo narrowly, that had not *Gordon Scha* provided for it in time, he muſt have been oblig'd to ſurrender; but ſo great a Quantity of Proviſions had been brought into the Iſland, that there was never any want, nor did the Price riſe. The King of *Keys* perceiving how little he prevail'd, propos'd a Peace again with a double Meaning, it was hearken'd to, and the ſaid King and *Gordon Scha* agreed to have a Conference on the Shore, to which the King of *Keys* came in a ſmall Boat, and leaping a-ſhore, he of *Harmuz* went to embrace him, when the other who was ſtrong and able laid hold of and forc'd him into the Boat, and thence into his Ship, and immediately ſet Sail with all his Fleet, the *Harmuzians* being no way able to obſtruct him; and thus he carry'd him away to *Keys*. *Bibi Sultan*, Wife to *Gordon Scha*, ſeeing what had happen'd, order'd *Malek Guayaradin Dinar*, Son to her Brother *Schanxa*, to take upon him the Government. Five Months after, the King of *Keys* return'd again towards *Harmuz*, bringing King *Gordon Scha* Priſoner with him, in one of his Veſſels.

When

When he was about half way, there aroſe ſo violent a Tempeſt, that the whole Fleet was diſpers'd into ſeveral Parts, and moſt of the Ships caſt away; that wherein *Gordon Scha* was Priſoner being ſav'd upon the Shore of *Harmuz*, whither a Multitude of People reſorting, they conducted them with much Joy to the City. *Malek Guayaradin Dinar*, who had taken upon him the State of a King, would not ſubmit to him; and therefore *Gordon Scha* took up in the Houſe of one *Konia Mamed Kaleb*, his Secretary; but not thinking himſelf ſafe there, he went over that very Night to the Continent of *Perſia*, and ſtay'd in the Fort of *Minab*, which ſignifies *Enamel*. *Dinar* was apprehenſive of his Return, and perceiving that all Men forſook him, and went over to *Gordon Scha*, he left the Iſland and went away to the Lands of *Makron*, a Kingdom lying between *Perſia* and *India*; and *Amir Ayzadin Gordon Scha* return'd to *Harmuz*, where he made his Entry and was peaceably receiv'd, and two Years after, being that of the *Hegira* 717, and of CHRIST 1318, he dy'd, leaving the Throne to his Son

Amir Mobarezadin Baharon Scha, who was the Seventeenth King. The Garriſons in the Forts on the Continent, at the ſame time proclaim'd his Brother *Scha Kodbadin* King, and as ſuch conducted him from the Fortreſs of *Barkamin*, where he then was, to that of *Minab*. *Baharon Scha* hearing of theſe Commotions, made the neceſſary Preparations, and ſet out in queſt of, and found him with another of his Brothers call'd *Malek Nazomadin*, both whom he defeated, and return'd victorious to *Harmuz*: His Commanders in Chief were *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf*, and *Mir Taiadin Zanguy-*

Amir

Amir, the one by Sea and the other by Land. Theſe two fell at Variance about their Prince's Favour, diſturbing the Country, whereupon the King ſeiz'd them both. At this Time the King of *Keys* again invaded *Harmuz*; but without any better Succeſs than before, and return'd home diſſatisfy'd. Upon this Occaſion, the Ring of *Harmuz* had releas'd thoſe two Commanders out of Priſon, and *Mir Schabadin Iſſuff*, thinking himſelf wrong'd, meditated Revenge. The King was deſirous to put an End to the Troubles rais'd by his Brothers, who ſtill moleſted him; to this Purpoſe he embark'd with ſome Forces, to paſs over to the Continent, and being hinder'd by contrary Winds, went back to lye in his own Houſe that Night. In the Dead of it *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf*, with ſome Horſe and Foot, came to the Palace Gate, calling out for him to come out, becauſe *Bibi Sultan Salgos* was landed on the Iſland, with an arm'd Force. The King came out upon this Uproar, believing what he heard had been true, and was follow'd by his Mother and his Brother *Nazomadin Agen Scha*, who had been reconcil'd to him. *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf* ſecur'd them all, and took upon him the Title of King, in the Year of the *Hegira* 718, and of CHRIST 1319.

Hereupon the *Harmuzians* were divided, one Part following *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf*, and the other *Mir Kodbadin*, Brother to the Priſoner King, who had defeated him, as was ſaid, on the Continent. *Malek Dinor*, who we ſaid had fled towards *Makron*, return'd thence towards *Harmuz*, with a good Body of Men, giving out that he came to aſſiſt *Mir Scha Kodbadin*; but when he came to the Iſland, perceiving that *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf*'s Party prevail'd,

prevail'd, he made Friends with him. *Bibi Sultan*, Siſter to *Dinor*, and *Bibi Nazmalek*, Wife to *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf*, undertook to reconcile theſe Differences; but *Schabadin*, to ſecure himſelf, cut off the Heads of the Priſoner King, his Mother, and Brother: *Scha Kodbadin* went over to *Kalayat*, with *Bibi Marian*, Wife to *Agaz Ceyſin*. *Schabadin Iſſuf* being now inform'd, that the Forces of *Keys* were ſailing towards him, went out to meet them; but when out, return'd home in a Fright. Neither did the People of *Keys* make any more of it this Time than they had done before. A Year after, *Scha Kodbadin* came from *Kalayat*, with *Malek Gelaladin Queyzy* and *Koaja Famaladin Neym*, and falling on *Harmuz* unexpected, took it, and ſecur'd *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf*.

Mir Scha Kodbadin, the Son of *Gordon Scha*, having made himſelf Maſter of the Iſland and Kingdom of *Harmuz*, immediately put to Death *Mir Schabadin Iſſuf*, his Wife *Bibi Nazmalek*, and his two Sons *Mir Emadadin Ozen* and *Amir Acen*, who had been Priſoners in the Fortreſs of *Gat*. Not long after, *Malek Geladadin Queyzy* and *Koaj Gemaladin Neym*, who had reſtor'd *Scha Kodbadin* to the Throne, deſign'd to kill him, and ſecure to themſelves the Throne; *Kodbadin* being inform'd of it, would have ſeiz'd them, but they fled. *Gemaladin Neym* was drown'd, croſſing the Sea, the other with a few Followers retir'd to *Keys*. After this, *Kodbadin* and his Kingdom enjoy'd Peace for Ten Years. *Malek Guayazadin* had ſucceeded on the Throne of *Keys*, upon the Death of the former King. This Man, whilſt *Kodbadin* was in *Mogaſtam*, that is, the Continent of *Perſia*, paſſing the Summer Heats, which

which are inſupportable at *Harmuz*, invaded the Iſland with a good Navy, and had made himſelf Maſter of it had it not been defended by *Mahamed Sorkab* and *Ebrahem Salgor*, two of *Kodbadin*'s Porters, to whom he had committed the Guard of it, and who oblig'd the Enemy to retire againſt their Will. *Scha Kodbadin* being inform'd of it, went over to the Iſland, and fitted out a Fleet with great Expedition, wherewith he ſail'd for *Keys*, aſſaulted it, and made himſelf Maſter of the Iſland, killing many of the People, and taking King *Malek Guayazadin* and ſome of his Relations, whom he afterwards put to Death. Then leaving a good Garriſon at *Keys*, he return'd towards *Harmuz*, by the way ſubduing the Iſland of *Barhen*, much talk'd of throughout the World, as well for the precious Pearls found in its Sea, as for the never failing Springs of freſh Water that riſe under it; of both which, ſince we are come to the ſaid Iſland, it will be proper to give a ſhort Account.

Baharem Iſland deſcrib'd.

The Iſland of *Barhen*, or *Baharem*, lies in the Gulph of *Bazora*, between that City and the Iſland of *Gerun* or *Harmuz*, 100 Leagues diſtant from each of them, and but little remov'd from the Coaſt of *Arabia*, oppoſite to the Port of *Katifa*, which is in the Government of *Lachk*, one of thoſe the *Turk* is poſſeſs'd of in thoſe Parts. It is inhabited by *Arabs*, only the Garriſon and *Wazir*, or Governor, being *Perſians*, having belong'd to the Kingdom of *Harmuz*, but ever ſince the Year 1602 poſſeſs'd by the King of *Perſia*. The Land is pleaſant, and abounds in Fruit, eſpecially Dates, whereof it produces great Quantities, but little Wheat, and ſome Barley. Rue, which is the moſt common Food, next

to

to Dates, is carried thither from *Harmuz*, of what that Place receives from *India*. It has ſeveral Waters, rather brackiſh than freſh, the beſt whereof is that of *Nanyah*, being a Parcel of extraordinary deep Wells in the midſt of the Iſland. The next is that which they take under the Sea, after this manner. *Manama*, a Town ſeated on the Sea Coaſt, is the chiefeſt in the Iſland. In the Sea before this Place, at about three Fathom or three Fathom and a half Depth, there guſh out certain Springs of pure freſh Water, free from any ill Quality. There are Men, who live by bringing it up in Skins, with much dexterity and eaſe, Diving down, and ſell it very cheap. Having enquir'd into the Reaſon of it, ſome of the oldeſt *Mahometans* in the Iſland, with whom I diſcours'd about it, told me, That thoſe Springs, in former Times, were upon the Land, remote from the Sea, which having broke in, had overwhelm'd them, as they now are; and hence I have Reaſon to believe the Iſland had the Name of *Barhen*, which in *Arabick* ſignifies two Seas, from *Bar*, which is, the Sea, and *Hen*, two; as it were to expreſs, a freſh and a ſalt one; tho' it might alſo be taken from two conſiderable Streams which croſs the Iſland; but the firſt ſeems to be the better. The Iſland of *Barhen* is famous for the many and precious Pearls taken up in the neighbouring Seas, which I will briefly ſpeak of, becauſe ſo univerſally known. There are two conſiderable Pearl Fiſheries in the Eaſt; the one in the *Perſian* Gulph, which is this of *Barhen*; and the other at *Manar* in *India*, in the Channel that runs between the Iſland of *Ceylon*, and the Continent we call *Tuto Kory*, or more properly *Tutan Kory*, which is Cape *Cory*, ſo call'd by

Freſh Springs under the Sea.

by the Natives, and by the *Portugueses*, *Comory*, on the Coast of *Coromandel*, or *Coro Bandel*, signifying, the Port of Rice, because of the great Quantities shipp'd off there for other Ports. The Pearl Fishery at *Barhen* begins some Years in *June*, but generally in *July*, and lasts all that Month and *August*. There joyn together about 200 *Terradas*, or Vessels of theirs, 100 of *Barhen*, 50 of *Julfal*, and 50 of *Nikhelu*. They generally go a Fishing to *Katar*, a Port on the Coast of *Arabia*, 10 Leagues to the Southward of the Island *Barhen*. As soon an Oyster is brought up, they open it, and take out the Pearl. The Pearls of this Sea surpass all others in Goodness and Weight, I say in Weight, because two Pearls, one of this Place and one of another, being weigh'd, tho' equal in Size and Shape, that of *Barhen* will always be found heaviest. The Pearls publickly sold in this Island every Year amount to 500000 Ducats, besides the Value of 100000 more smother'd for fear of the *Wazir*, or Governor's Extortions. The Trade of this Island was worth to the *Portuguese* Governor of *Harmuz* above 4000 Ducats a Year, besides his own Dealings. In Selling and Buying, the Term of Dealing is by *Querates*, which we call Carats, and by *Abas*, three of which make a Carat; as also by *Meticales*, each of them being 24 Carats; and by this they sell the Seed Pearl, after the Rate of 20, 30, 40, &c. to a *Metica*. The *Barhenians* fish with a Stone, which carries them down from 12 to 15 Fathom in Depth. Besides this general Fishery at *Katar*, at the Time above mention'd, there are others of less Note in *September*, at *Nikhelu*, *Barhen*, and *Julfar*; as also at *Mascate*, *Teue*, and *Rozalgate*, all within the Gulph of *Harmuz*; but

Pearl Fishery in Barhen.

theſe laſt are of little Value, tho' ſometimes conſiderable enough for the Undertakers.

Pearl Fiſhery at Chilao, or Manar.

The Pearl Fiſhery at *Chilao*, ſo they call the ſecond I nam'd at firſt, becauſe formerly perform'd in a Port of that Name, in the Iſland of *Ceylon*, which was ſo call'd for this Reaſon, becauſe *Chilao*, in the *Chingala* Language, which is that of the ſaid Iſland, ſignifies, Fiſhery. This falls out in *April* and the beginning of *May*, a Month or two before that of *Barben*, being the time when the Sun firſt begins to draw near to the Equinoctial, and conſequently the Summer begins there ſooner, and the Sea is then calmer. Between 4 and 500 Veſſels meet, each of them carrying from 60 to 90 Men; one third of them are Fiſhers, whom they call *Harvas*, that is, Divers; the others they call *Mandecas*, that is, Helpers, two for each Diver. The Veſſels are all diſtributed to certain Parts, call'd *Peitacas*, where every Diver lays the Oyſters he fetches up apart; the Oyſters they call *Chipo*, which are not to be open'd till a Day appointed by thoſe who Govern there, which is after the Days of the Fiſhery, being generally two *Balyos*, and every *Balyo* is 8 Days. They every Day compute how much has been taken at 100, or 200, or 1000 *Chipos*, or Oyſters for every Veſſel, to know when they have done enough, becauſe they will not far exceed the uſual Proportion, to keep up the Value of Pearl; and when two *Balyos* do not ſuffice, they allow one, or a half more. The Fiſhers or Divers have Wages, beſides that all they take is their own, bating that every Day they give the Owner of the Veſſel one Draught, which is to be at the ſaid Owner's Choice, and at the End of the Week they all give him a whole

Day

Day. The *Nayque* of *Madureb*, who is Lord of the Country they inhabit, has one Day of the whole Fiſhery. They alſo us'd to give another Day, for Pin-Money, to the *Portugueſe* Governor of *Manar*'s Wife, he having the Command of that Sea, but this was taken away by the *Jeſuits* who govern'd all there. They Fiſh from ſix to eight Fathom deep, Diving with a Stone. Two *Portugueſe* Galliots us'd to guard this Fiſhery, becauſe ſome *Malabar* Veſſels had ſome times diſturb'd the Fiſhers. The People that reſort thither, which among Merchants, Servants, Officers and Fiſhers, may amount to between fifty and ſixty thouſand Men, form a Camp, which is pitch'd where the Fiſhery is carry'd on; for that is not always in the ſame Place, but ſometimes in one and ſometimes in another. What is taken every Year amounts to above a Million and a half of Gold. When the Fiſhery is over, Proclamation is made to open the *Chipo*, or Oyſters, which being done, and the Fiſh thrown away and the Pearl ſav'd, they go over to *Tutan Cory*, where the Fair is kept, beginning about the middle of *June*, and laſting *July*, *Auguſt* and *September*, and ſometimes all *October*. The Pearl is bought and ſold in the *Patare*, which is like a Cuſtome-houſe, by Brokers appointed by the *Nayque*, who has four *per Cent* of all that is bought there of the Seller; for the Buyer is free; and he has 48 Hours after the Purchaſe, to return the Goods, if they do not pleaſe him; all which is perform'd with much Eaſe and Integrity. The conceal'd Pearl that is privately ſold out of the *Patare* is conſiderable, and free from Duty, or the Liberty of Return. The Method and Weight is by *Chegos*, very eaſy, but ingenious and ſharp.

There is ſome Pearl in *China*, but not fine, being only rough and miſhapen, which ſome *Portugueſes* have got Eſtates by. So much has been writ concerning Pearl, that there remains little to add to it. However, with Submiſſion to thoſe who have treated of it, I cannot but ſay, it ſeems to me very unreaſonable to believe and aſſert, that the Pearl is form'd of Dew, becauſe there are very many Objections againſt it; as the Oyſter it ſelf, which being weighty and void of all Motion, cannot riſe above the Water to receive the ſaid Dew; much leſs can it receive any pure at the Bottom, ſince it muſt paſs through ſo much Salt Water. Beſides, Experience teaches us, that the Oyſters which are taken out of the deepeſt Water have generally the moſt and the greateſt Pearls, and thoſe in the ſhalloweſt the leaſt and ſmalleſt; which would not be ſo, were they form'd of the Dew; for then thoſe neareſt the Superfices would receive moſt and the pureſt of it, and the Sun would have the greater effect on them; for his Power, as an Agent, would be more effectual on what was nearer than what was remoter, whereas we find the contrary. My Opinion is confirm'd by what I have often ſeen and try'd by my ſelf, and in the Company of Chriſtians, Mahometans and Heathens, all of them very knowing in what relates to Pearls, having taken from the Oyſter Shells, with Inſtruments made for that purpoſe, Pearls growing from thoſe very Shells, which either for want of Time, or the Diſpoſition of the Matter, or of Nature, or for ſome other Cauſe, were not arriv'd to Perfection, but were ſtill incorporated in the ſaid Shell, of whoſe Subſtance they were form'd; and when taken out, poliſh'd and wrought, they appear'd as if they had been produc'd perfect

fect by Nature, and sold at very high Rates. This makes me certainly conclude, that they proceed and are form'd from the very Substance of the Shell, and not from any outward Thing, this being very probable, whereas the other Opinion is liable to many Contradictions. This is much confirm'd by the likeness there is in Substance and Colour between the Pearl and the Oyster Shell. Besides, it has been observ'd, and is most certain, that the Flesh of all the Oysters which have Pearl is bruis'd and crush'd, as it might be where there are any greater or lesser Excrescencies in the Shell, whereas those which have no Pearl are found and entire, as those may be which have it, but extremely small, which is no small Argument to back my Opinion, yet I submit it to able Judgments. However, I cannot but admire at those Physicians, who to this Day, in their Recipes, order Pearls that are drill'd, or not drill'd, making much Account of that Difference, whose Mistake is unpardonable, since they cannot be excus'd by Ignorance, which cannot be in this Case, or by Custom, which is not allowable; since it is well known that all Pearls are alike for the use of Physick, whether whole, or drill'd by Art, for none have Holes naturally.

Let us now go on with *Scha Kodbadin*, who having, as we said above, possess'd himself of *Phen*, took also *Katifa*, *Karga*, and *Derab*, and subdu'd all the Coasts of *Persia* and *Arabia*, whence he receiv'd a considerable Yearly Income. *Scha Kodbadin* had a Brother, call'd *Nazomadin*, whom he lov'd and honour'd in a great Degree, and he in Return contriv'd to Murder him. *Kodbadin* went over to the Continent to Hunt, and being at that Sport at *Rudxur*, *Nazomadin* and all his Confederates pre-

tending to follow a Hare towards *Moridon*, got themſelves far from the King, and came to the Shore of the *Dozar*, a Rivulet on the Continent of *Perſia*, oppoſite to *Gerun* or *Harmuz*, 5 Miles diſtant from it, and embarking there, with others that lay ready for him on *Tarranques*, a ſort of ſmall Veſſels, went over to the Iſland, which being deſtitute of the Prime Men, who were gone over with the King, was eaſily ſubdu'd; and as ſoon as poſſeſs'd of it, he ſtil'd himſelf King. *Scha Kodbadin* being inform'd which way his Brother was gone, purſu'd him full Speed; but when he came to the Side of the River *Dozar*, his Brother was landed on the Iſland; ſo that being unable, at that time to proceed any farther, he ſtaid on the Continent, and withdrew to *Kolongo*, whence he ſent Expreſſes to all his Dominions, demanding Men and other Aſſiſtance to reduce his Brother. This happen'd in the Year of the *Hegira* 745, of CHRIST 1345.

Malek Nazomadin having poſſeſs'd himſelf of the Iſland of *Harmuz*, and ſtil'd himſelf King, ſent immediately Advice thereof to all the Dominions of that Crown, requiring the *Wazirs*, or Governors to own and ſubmit to him, and promiſing great Rewards to ſuch as comply'd. However, none anſwer'd his Expectation, except ſome Towns of *Kirakiſtan*, and theſe as ſoon as the Summer came on, ſent to ask ſome Forces of him, to defend their Palm-Tree Groves againſt the Troops of *Kodbadin*, which infeſted them, ſo that they could not gather their Dates, which are the main Support of all thoſe Lands; giving him to underſtand, that if he delay'd, they ſhould be oblig'd to ſubmit themſelves to *Kodbadin*. *Nazomadin*, conſidering the Condition of thoſe People, reſolv'd to go over to the Con-

Continent; but first he sounded the Intentions of the *Wazirs* and Prime Men about *Kobdadin*; however, all his Practices had no Effect on any of them, except one *Homer Soiadin*, who was *Kodbadin*'s Chief Porter, and a Colonel in his Army. *Nazomadin* having gain'd this Man, went over into *Persia*, and advanc'd towards *Kolongon*. *Kodbadin* advanc'd to meet him, they ingag'd, and in the Heat of the Action, *Homer Soiadin* went over to *Nazomadin* with most and the best of the Army. *Scha Kodbadin* perceiving it, immediately retir'd towards *Jazquez*, a Town on the Coast of *Persia*, 40 Leagues from that where he lost the Battle, and crossing the Gulph, went over into *Arabia*, and landed at *Kalayate*, where he continu'd a Year; and by his Presence, that Port throve amain, the Ships coming from *India* to *Harmuz* stopping there. Here he receiv'd Advice, that *Nazomadin* was dead, and had ordain'd in his Will, that the eldest of his two Sons, *Schambe* and *Schadi*, should immediately go over to *Kalayate*, and kissing *Scha Kodbadin*'s Foot, resign the Kingdom into his Hands, because it was his Due; but the young Man did quite contrary. *Kodbadin* being inform'd of his Brother *Nazomadin*'s Death, seem'd to be much concern'd, and perform'd his Obsequies, after their Manner, with extraordinary Pomp, putting himself and all his Followers into Mourning, and writ very loving and consolatory Letters to his Nephews, offering to look upon them as his own Sons. They little regarding him, behav'd themselves after such a Manner in the Government, that the whole Kingdom was scandaliz'd at their Follies and Cruelties. *Kodbadin* hearing of the Disorders of his Nephews, prepar'd to invade them, and as he was sailing over to *Jaquin*, a Town

in *Perſia*, inhabited by *Arabs*, as many others there are, there met him a great Number of *Terradas* or Veſſels ſent by his Nephews in warlike Manner; he ingag'd and defeated them, deſtroying abundance of the Men. Having obtain'd this Victory, he held on his Voyage to *Coſtah*, whence came out to meet him, one *Amir Aieb Schamzadin*, a Commander of his, who brought a good Number of Men to ſerve him from old *Harmuz*. Sailing thence, he made for *Gerun*, or *Harmuz*, and came to an Anchor at *Karu*, on the Coaſt of that Iſland, where he landed, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of it. His Nephews perceiving they were undone, and could neither defend themſelves, nor fly, deliver'd themſelves up to their Uncle, ſome Perſons of Note interpoſing, and contenting themſelves with ſome moderate Allowance for their Support. The King condeſcended, and gave them the Iſland of *Barhen* to live in, with their Followers. *Kodbadin*'s Return conſiderably advanc'd the Affairs of *Gerun*, or *Harmuz*, which had ſuffer'd very much under the Government of the two Brothers. Peace reſtor'd, Juſtice was adminiſter'd, the Price of Proviſions fell, which till then had been very high; and thoſe who had fled, or been baniſh'd by the Uſurpers, were reſtor'd to their Houſes and Eſtates. The two Brothers *Schamſe* and *Schadi* were gone to *Barhen*, where, being of a reſtleſs Nature, they began to raiſe Men, and gather Veſſels, in order to invade *Ormuz*. King *Kodbadin* being inform'd of it, imbark'd to oppoſe them, with the greateſt Force he could make. Being come to *Keys*, where *Hady* then was, he landed his Men; but meeting with much Oppoſition, he proceeded ſlowly. Thoſe in the Iſland were very much ſtreightned, and

the

the King's Men incens'd that they held out ſo long; and being willing to put an End to that Enterprize, ſome of them, without Orders, provok'd *Schady* to engage, which he did not refuſe, as having the Advantage, and accordingly obtain'd the Victory, killing many of the *Harmuzians*, the King, with ſuch as eſcap'd, retiring to the Sea, whence he immediately made away for *Harmuz*, and having there recruited his Forces, return'd to *Keys*. *Schady*, not thinking himſelf ſafe there, abandon'd the Iſland, and went away to that of *Barhen*, where his Brother was. The King coming to *Keys* found no Reſiſtance, and having given the Plunder of it to his Soldiers, and left a good Garriſon there, return'd to *Gerun* or *Harmuz*, intending to ſet out again to reduce his Nephews that were at *Barhen*. They, as ſoon as he was gone, gather'd all the Force they could, and went over to *Keys*, in Hopes to recover it; but when they were half way, moſt of their Commanders and Soldiers deſerted them, and went over to the King. Among the reſt were *Schamcadin Mamud*, *Kamaladin Iſmael*, and *Naceradin Mocelek*, all Men of the firſt Rank and Quality. They paſſing by *Keys*, gave Notice to *Mir Miggah*, who govern'd the Iſland for King *Scha Kodbadin*, of the coming of the two Brothers *Schady* and *Schambe*, that he might be prepar'd to receive them. Then call'd at *Lapht*, a Port in the Iſland *Broct* or *Queixome*, where *Sabekadin* was in Garriſon; they took him with them to *Harmuz*, leſt being ſuddenly attack'd by the two Brothers he ſhould come to ſome Misfortune, having but a ſmall Force with him. *Schambe*, and *Schady* were not mov'd by the Deſertion of their Officers and Soldiers to deſiſt from their Enterprize; but paſſing by *Keys*, where

where they were not admitted, arriv'd at *Broct*. The King having been timely advertis'd of their coming, had ſent his Forces to *Broct*, which took up their Quarters at *Dargahon*, a Town near *Lapht*. There they had Intelligence of the Arrival of the Enemy, and being reſolv'd to attack them, immediately went to Arms, and having waited for them all the Night, at length engag'd them at Break of Day. The King's Party gallantly oppos'd and repuls'd them both by Sea and Land, ſo that they return'd to *Barhen*, with conſiderable Loſs. The two Brothers being come to their Iſland, fell at Variance among themſelves, each charging the other with the late Diſappointment, and the Difference ran ſo high, that *Schah* impriſon'd *Schambe*, and would have put him to Death, but was hinder'd by his Mother, who reconcil'd them, and caus'd *Schambe* to be ſet at Liberty. He being again looſe, departed *Barhen*, went over into *Perſia*, and ſettled near *Schiraz*, in a Village call'd *Fal*, whence the *Reizes*, *Sharafs*, *Noradins*, and *Bradadins*, *Wazirs* and Governours of the Kingdom of *Harmuz*, draw their Original. The Governour of *Schiras* being inform'd of *Schambe*'s Reſidence at *Fal*, and who he was, ſent for him, and ſhow'd him much Honour and Favour; on Account of the Friendſhip that had been between his Father and Anceſtors, and himſelf and his Progenitors. This was the Poſture of Affairs at *Harmuz*, when the Summer came on, which *Scha Kodbaden* reſolv'd to ſpend at *Nakeſtam*, a Place in *Mogoſtam*, on the Continent of *Perſia*, which is pleaſant and abounds in Water and Fruit, both of them wanting at *Harmuz*. He went over thither with his Followers, and

ſoon

ſoon after fell ſick and dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 447, of CHRIST 1347.

Turon Scha, Son to *Scha Kodbadin*, ſucceeded his Father in the Throne of *Harmuz*, and was the Man, who writ the Lives and Actions of the Kings his Predeceſſors, in the *Perſian* Tongue, in Proſe and Rhime, not ſo briefly as I do, but in a large Volume, whence I have collected this ſhort Account. He was a good King, lov'd and honour'd by his People. As ſoon as ſeated on the Throne he ſent one *Mamud Homer*, a Man of Valour and Experience, to govern the Iſland of *Keys*; and tho' *Schady*, who was at *Barhen*, knew him to be a good Commander, yet he did not deſiſt from his Deſign of invading *Keys*. Being come thither, after ſeveral Rencounters, and little done in them, he had ſome underhand Practices with a Kinſman of *Mamud Homer*, with whom he concerted to deliver him up, on the firſt Opportunity. Having form'd this Conſpiracy, *Schady* pretended to come to ſome Accommodation; and to that end demanded a Conference with *Mamud Homer*, who conſented to it more readily than he ought to have done. They had an Interview, *Schady* who had a Deſign in his Head, contriv'd to draw him at ſome diſtance from his Men, and then ſurprizing him before he could defend himſelf, put out his Eyes, or at leaſt blinded him; a Practice long before and ſince practis'd by the Kings of *Perſia* and *Harmuz* to ſecure themſelves againſt thoſe they might have cauſe to ſtand in Fear of, who were generally their own Kindred. There are ſtill at *Harmuz* on a Hill, near the Hermitage of St. *Lucy*, a little above a Mile from the City, the Ruins of certain Towers, where the Kings kept their Kindred, who had been blind-

ed

ed on this Account. The Manner of blinding them was this, they took a Copper Baſon, and making it violent hot at the Fire, paſs'd it along three or four, or more times cloſe before the Eyes of the Perſon that was to be blinded, and thus they loſt their Sight, without any other Harm, the Optick Nerves being quite ſpoilt by the Heat, and the Eyes as fair and clear to look at as before. *Mamud Homer* being blinded, *Schady* remain'd poſſeſs'd of the Iſland of *Keys*. The News of it being brought to *Turon Scha*, he preſently ſent out in Queſt of *Kady*, who had Notice ſo late, that tho' he would have fled and left the Iſland he could not, for *Turon Scha* beſet him cloſely by Sea. It was then Winter, and tho' the Sea was cloſely obſerv'd by the King's People, yet it being extreamly dark, *Schady* at length ſhip'd off in a *Tarranquin*, or ſmall Veſſel, and made to *Lapht*, a Port in the Iſland of *Queixome*. The King being inform'd of it, immediately purſu'd him, and caſt Anchor at *Dargahon*, a Town near to *Lapht*, in the ſame Iſland; they who were with *Schady* hearing of it, left him alone and fled to the King. *Schady* finding himſelf forſaken, got ſpeedily into his *Tarranquin*, and ſail'd towards *Barhen*, with ſuch Expedition, that tho' the King ſent the firſt Moment to ſeize him, he was gone. Being come to *Barhen*, *Schady* dy'd for meer Vexation, leaving a Son very young, on whom King *Turon Scha* beſtow'd his Father's Place. But *Schambe*, Brother to the late *Schady*, who we ſaid was fled to *Schyras*, hearing of his Brother's Death, haſted to *Barhen*, where finding a fit Diſpoſition of Affairs, he took bloody Revenge of all thoſe, who in the late Troubles between his Brother *Schady* and himſelf, had eſpous'd

the

the other Side, killing many of them, without ſparing the Infant, Son to his Brother; and many for Fear fled out of the Iſland. One *Mir Ageb*, a prime Man, reſenting ſo much Tyranny and Inſolence, with the Aſſiſtance of his Kindred and others that would follow him, aſſaulted *Schambe*'s Houſe, and plundering it, kill'd him. *Schambe* had impriſon'd one *Aly Mahamed Palaon*, a Commander of Note, who was immediately ſet at Liberty. *Mir Ageb* thought, with his Aſſiſtance, to have uſurp'd the Sovereignty of the Iſland; and he not only conſented, but taking along with him another *Arabian* Commander, of the Tribe, or Hord of *Ben Iſaſah*, call'd *Scheque Hamed Raxet*, went over to the Fortreſs of *Katifa*, on the Continent of *Arabia*, where *Scheque Mayed* was Governour, of whom *Palaon* demanded ſome Forces, to oppoſe *Mir Ageb*. The Governour ſuſpecting that theſe two intended to uſurp the Iſland of *Barhen*, did not only refuſe what they ask'd, but ſecur'd them, and ſent them over, in the Cuſtody of an Officer call'd *Aly Maxady* to *Harmuz*, to *Turon Scha*; who hearing what had happen'd, embark'd for *Barhen* and took them along with him. Being come to the Iſland, *Mir Ageb* demanded of him the Sovereignty of the Iſland in Return for the Service he pretended to have done him in killing of *Schambe*, which the King refus'd and reſolv'd to puniſh him. *Ageb* being inform'd of it, departed *Manania*, the principal Port in the Iſland, and retir'd to *Ithar*, another on the Back of it, where being found by the King's Party, he was brought before him, and had his Head ſtruck off; and finding the two Priſoners had not ſerv'd againſt him, he gave them their

their Liberty and Preferment. Having ſettled the Affairs of *Barhen*, *Turon Scha* had a Mind to ſee *Katifa*, which is ſeated on the Coaſt of the Continent of *Arabia*, oppoſite to the Iſland, and only parted from it by a narrow Arm of the Sea. He went over with his Forces, and was well receiv'd and entertain'd by *Scheque Maged*, and having diverted himſelf there ſome Days, return'd to *Barhen*, and thence to *Gerun* or *Harmuz*. Thus far is taken from the Hiſtory of this *Turon Scha*. He ſpent the reſt of his Life in Peace, and when he had govern'd 30 Years dy'd, in the Year of the *Hegira* 779, of CHRIST 1378.

Turon Scha's Sons ſucceeded him in the Kingdom of *Harmuz* after this Manner. *Maſſud* the eldeſt, who enjoy'd it peaceably during his Life.

Schabadin, the Second, in whoſe Time tho' there were ſome Commotions, they were not conſiderable, but eaſily quell'd.

Salgor Scha was the third, in whoſe Days there ſtarted up in *Perſia*, *Suphy Khalila*, mention'd by us in the Account of the Kings of *Perſia*, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of that whole Kingdom, to the very Coaſt, oppoſite to *Gerun* or *Harmuz*; whither he would fain have paſs'd over, but could not, for want of Shipping; and it is ſaid, that for meer Vexation he deſign'd to have level'd Mountains to fill up the Sea. It is reported, that *Salgor*, being inform'd of *Khalila*'s Concern and Trouble, went about the Iſland and City, ſinging in the Streets ſome *Perſian* Verſes in this Effect, *Dele Dur[illegible]bara man Kabab haſt, Ke aguerd Aguerd Man darial haſt*, the Meaning whereof is, My Enemy's Heart burns, becauſe he ſees I am encompaſs'd by the Seas. At laſt *Khalila* went away, without taking from him any thing but what he had on the Continent, where the Kings of *Harmuz* did and do ſtill poſſeſs,

tho'

tho' not so absolutely as before, seventy Leages along the Coast of the Gulph of *Persia*, and 28 up the Land, wherein are comprehended the *Amedizes* and *Gaules*, fierce and warlike Nations. I know not whether the Fiction of *Amadis de Gaul* was not deriv'd from hence. The Kings of *Harmuz* enjoy these Lands, paying those of *Persia* a certain Acknowledgment, which they call *Mokararias*, that he may not ravage them, as he does sometimes, when the Tribute is held back. It is to be observ'd that this *Sophy Khalila*, here spoken of, liv'd long before *Ismael Sophy*, who reign'd in *Persia*, when the *Portugueses* went to *Harmuz*. *Salgor* had no other remarkable War besides this, but spent his Days in Peace.

Schawes succeeded in the Throne, upon the Death of *Salgor*; under whom that Kingdom throve considerably, as enjoying Peace, no Disturbance happning during his Reign. *Schames* dying,

Seyfadin inherited the Crown of *Harmuz*, and was possess'd of it, when the *Portugueses*, under the Command of *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, in the Year of our Lord 1507, possess'd themselves of that Kingdom, still allowing the Native Kings to Reign from Father to Son, as they did before; with this difference, that what before they held independent of any Man, they now enjoy by Grant of the King, who bestows on them the Inheritance of the Crown, and they have all the Government of their *Mahometan* Subjects, and even that with some Restriction. The King may not go out of the Island without the *Portuguese* Governor's Leave, who for some Time us'd to grant it, but afterwards would not. They carry'd themselves in princely Manner, and had

had conſiderable Cuſtoms, the beſt Part whereof the *Portugueſe* Governours diverted to their own Uſe. I proceed no farther in the Affairs of this Kingdom after this Time, becauſe they are treated of at large in the Commentaries of *Alfonſo de Albuquerque*, and the Second Decade of *Ioao de Bayrros*. If any curious Perſon hapning to be in the Eaſtern Parts, ſhall have a Mind to enquire after the Actions of *Alfonſo de Albuquerque*, which are truly worthy of perpetual Fame, let him ask the *Mahometans* for *Malandy*, for they know him by no other Name, and that is it they give him, when they mention his Actions. I was ſome time puzzled about the Reaſon and Occaſion of that Name, 'till I was inform'd, that they call him ſo, becauſe he came from the Parts about *Melinde*, which they call *Maland*, and *Malandy* is a Man, or other thing that comes from thence; the Reader is deſir'd to be ſatisfy'd with thus much, and to pardon all Faults.

Here *Teixeira* ends his Hiſtory of the Kings of *Ormuz*, and indeed they had nothing left under the *Portugueſe* Government but the bare Title and ſome ſmall Revenue, being Priſoners confin'd to that Place, and for the moſt Part baſely treated by the Governours. That Iſland was long ſince taking from the *Portugueſes* by the *Perſians*, who continue Maſters of it to this Day.

FINIS.

00046260

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 16 June, 2016